

From: apf@lspace.org (Leo Breebaart)
Subject: The Annotated Pratchett File, v7a.0
Newsgroups: alt.fan.pratchett,alt.books.pratchett
Summary: BEING: THEE moft LEARNED and EDDYFYING COMPENDIUM intended for the
AMUSEMENT of the NOBLE and the INSTRUCTION of the VULGAR, pofted
on occaſion upon THEE NETTE and CONSISTING of an OSTENTATIOUSNESS
of COMMENTARIES and EXPLICATIONS by which ſhall be ſhewn the TRUE
MEANING of the LEGION and MANY JESTS, SAWS and WITTICISMS to be
FOUND in the MULTITUDINOUS WORKS of MISTER TERENCE PRATCHETT
ESQUIRE, ſcribe of thyſſe parifh. FEATURING a CAST of THOUSANDS
conſifing in PART of WIZARDS, WARRIORS, MONK^H^H^H^HAPES, DIURSE
ALARUMS and ONE THOUSAND ELEPHANTS.
BEWARE! Here be SPOILERS!
Organization: Unseen University
Followup-To: alt.fan.pratchett,alt.books.pratchett
Reply-To: apf@lspace.org

Archive-name: apf-7a.0
Last-modified: 23 August 1996
Version: 7a.0 (Patchlevel 9)
Edited-by: Leo Breebaart (apf@lspace.org)

*** Preface to the 7a-th edition

By now, most regular readers of this document will have managed to get used to the fact that new releases of the Annotated Pratchett File always arrive later than announced. This time, however, over 18 months have passed since the previous version, and that is a little extreme, even for me. This will not happen again, if I can help it -- and I think I can.

Rather than dwell on the various reasons for the delay (my military service, my PhD thesis -- still not finished, darnit -- the exponentially increased traffic on alt.fan.pratchett), I would like to focus instead on the present and the future.

The edition of the APF you now have before you is, as far as the contents and the structure of the file are concerned, basically an intermediate "more of the same" release. Apart from the 326 new annotations and many corrections to the existing text, not much has changed compared to APF v7.0.

Beneath the surface, however, considerable time and effort have gone into streamlining, enhancing, and automating many aspects of the editing and formatting process for all three major incarnations of the file (ASCII, PostScript, HTML). This should go a long way towards ensuring that work on the next version will be much faster and less difficult, and that for once I might even be able to meet the deadline, which for now I've set to the first quarter of 1997. We'll see...

In the meantime I hope you will enjoy the Annotated Pratchett File, and I look forward once again to receiving your comments, corrections and new annotations in my mailbox.

*** Introduction

You are now about to read the 7a-th edition (the 8th, really, but since this is the Discworld I'm not taking any chances...) of the Annotated Pratchett File, or APF for short.

One of the most popular pastimes on the Usenet newsgroup alt.fan.pratchett has always been discussing the many jokes, parodies and references that Terry Pratchett puts into his novels.

Since, as Terry once put it, "alt.fan.pratchett as an entity has the attention span of a butterfly on cocaine" it quickly became apparent that it would be a good idea to distill some of these discussions into something with a little more persistence and staying power than individual Usenet articles. So the _Annotated Pratchett File_ was born, and (because I was brave/foolish enough to volunteer) I became its editor.

The structure of the file is straightforward, with the books divided into two large groups: the Discworld related books, and all the other ones. Per book, the annotations are sorted in ascending page order. For each annotation I supply two page numbers: the first number is that of the paperback (usually the UK Corgi edition), the second number that of the hardcover (usually the UK Gollancz edition). Use these numbers as a rough guide for finding an annotation in your own particular edition of the book.

Each annotation is also prefixed by either a '+', denoting an annotation that is new or has been significantly updated in this version of the APF, or a '-', denoting an unchanged older annotation. This is handy for long-time readers who quickly want to scan for the new stuff.

The APF incorporates, in this edition even more than before, passages from articles that Terry himself has posted to alt.fan.pratchett. As an active contributor to the group, he often provides us with inside information on many aspects of his writing, and it would be a waste to let this first-hand knowledge just disappear into the vacuum of Usenet history.

The file ends with an editorial section, where various nuts & bolts of the APF editing process are discussed, and information is given to help you obtain the most recent version of the APF in whatever format you prefer.

One particular piece of information is so important I am putting it here rather than at the end, and that is the address to write to if you have any suggestions, questions, corrections, or new annotations -- without the enthusiastic reactions and input from its readers, the APF would never have survived. So please mail all your feedback to me at

apf@lspace.org

and look for *your* contribution in the next edition. I will now leave you to the annotations, and end this introduction with a thought that is a bit of a cliché but nonetheless true: I hope you will enjoy reading the APF as much as I have enjoyed putting it together.

*** Discworld Annotations

THE COLOUR OF MAGIC

+ [p. 7/7] "[...] He stares fixedly at the Destination."

This line is interesting not only because it foreshadows The Light Fantastic (as in fact the entire prologue does), but also because it is about the only time the narrator really commits himself to A'Tuin's gender without hedging his bets (as e.g. on the first page of The Light Fantastic). Note the capital 'H', which Death also rates in this book and loses in the later ones.

+ [p. 8/8] "For example, what was A'Tuin's actual sex?"

I have had e-mail from a herpetologist who has studied under one of the world's experts on turtles, and he assures me that in real life determining the sex of turtles is no easy task. Unlike mammals, reptiles don't have their naughty bits hanging out where they can be easily seen, and the only way to really tell a turtle's gender is by comparison: male turtles are often smaller than females and have thicker tails. Since there are no other Chelys Galactica to compare A'Tuin to, the attempts of the Discworld's Astrozoologists are probably futile to begin with.

- [p. 8/8] "[...] the theory that A'Tuin had come from nowhere and would continue at a uniform crawl, or steady gait, [...]"

Puns on the 'steady state' theory of explaining the size, origin and future of the universe. The best-known *other* theory is, of course, the Big Bang theory, referred to in the preceding sentence.

- [p. 9/9] "Fire roared through the bifurcated city of Ankh-Morpork."

Terry has said that the name 'Ankh-Morpork' was inspired neither by the ankh (the Egyptian cross with the closed loop on top), nor by the Australian or New Zealand species of bird (frogmouths and small brown owls, respectively) that go by the name of 'Morepork'.

Since I first wrote down the above annotation, there have been new developments, however. In The Streets of Ankh-Morpork and The Discworld Companion we are shown an illustration of the Ankh-Morpork coat of arms, which *does* feature a Morepork/owl holding an ankh. But from Terry's remarks (see next annotation) I feel it's safe to say that neither bird nor cross were explicitly on his mind when he first came up with the name Ankh-Morpork.

Finally, many readers have mentioned the resonance that Ankh-Morpork has with our world's Budapest: also a large city made up of two smaller cities (Buda and Pest) separated by a river.

+ [p. 9/9] "[...] two figures were watching with considerable interest."

The two barbarians, Bravd and Weasel, are parodies of Fritz Leiber's fantasy heroes Fafhrd and the Gray Mouser. The Swords series of books in which they star are absolute classics, and have probably had about as much influence on the genre as Tolkien's Lord of the Rings.

The Swords stories date back as far as 1939, but nearly sixty years later they have lost none of their appeal. Both The Colour of Magic and The Light Fantastic are, in large part, affectionate parodies of the Leiberian universe, although I hasten to add that, in sharp contrast to

many later writers in the field, Leiber himself already had a great sense of humour. Fafhrd and the Mouser are not to be taken altogether serious in his original version, either.

Given all this, I can perhaps be forgiven for thinking that Terry intended Ankh-Morpork to be a direct parody of the great city of Lankhmar in which many of the Swords adventures take place. However, Terry explicitly denied this when I suggested it on alt.fan.pratchett:

"Bravd and the Weasel were indeed takeoffs of Leiber characters -- there was a lot of that sort of thing in The Colour of Magic. But I didn't -- at least consciously, I suppose I must say -- create Ankh-Morpork as a takeoff of Lankhmar."

+ [p. 11/11] "[...] two lesser directions, which are Turnwise and Widdershins."

'Widdershins' is in fact an existing word meaning 'counter-sunwise', i.e. counter-clockwise in the Northern hemisphere, clockwise down South. A synonym for 'turnwise' is deosil, which helps explain Ankh-Morpork's Deosil Gate as found on the The Streets of Ankh-Morpork Mappe.

Widdershins is also the name of the planet where Dom, the hero from The Dark Side of the Sun lives.

+ [p. 12/12] "'Why, it's Rincewind the wizard, isn't it?' [...]"

The story behind Rincewind's name goes back to 1924, when J. B. Morton took over authorship of the column 'By The Way' in the Daily Express, a London newspaper.

He inherited the pseudonym 'Beachcomber' from his predecessors on the job (the column had existed since 1917), but he was to make that name forever his own by virtue of his astonishing output and success: Morton wrote the column for over 50 years, six times a week, until 1965 when the column became a weekly feature, and continued to the last column in November 1975.

Beachcomber/Morton used an eccentric cast of regular characters in his sketches, which frequently caricatured self-important and high-brow public figures. One continual theme was the silliness of the law courts, featuring amongst others Mr Justice Cocklecarrot and the twelve Red-Bearded Dwarves. In one sketch, the names of those dwarfs were given as Sophus Barkayo-Tong, Amaninter Axling, Farjole Merrybody, Guttergorm Guttergormpton, Badly Oronparser, Cleveland Zackhouse, Molonay Tubilderborst, Edeledel Edel, Scorpion de Rooftrouser, Listenis Youghaupt, Frums Gillygottle, and, wait for it: Churm Rincewind. Terry says:

"I read of lot of Beachcomber in second-hand collections when I was around 13. Dave Langford pointed out the origin of Rincewind a few years ago, and I went back through all the books and found the name and thought, oh, blast, **that's** where it came from. And then I thought, what the hell, anyway."

- [p. 12/12] "Since the Hub is never closely warmed by the weak sun the lands there are locked in permafrost. The Rim, on the other hand, is a region of sunny islands and balmy days."

A presumably knowledgeable correspondent tells me that actually, if you do the calculations, it turns out that it would be the other way around (on average, the sun is closer to the hub than the rim, so the hub would be warmer).

Do not feel obliged to take his word for it, though. 'Discworld Mechanics' is one of alt.fan.pratchett's favourite Perennial Discussion Topics, and I don't think that any two given participants in such a thread have ever managed to agree on anything definite about the way in which the Discworld might 'work'. See also the The Turtle Moves! section in Chapter 5 for more information about the physical aspects of the Discworld.

- [p. 16/16] "[...] found himself looking up into a face with four eyes in it."

On the covers of the first two Discworld books, Josh Kirby actually drew Twoflower with four physical eyes. Consensus on alt.fan.pratchett has it that Terry was trying to get across the fact that Twoflower was wearing glasses ('four-eyes' being a common insult thrown at bespectacled folks), but that Josh Kirby simply triggered on the literal text and went off in a direction of his own. Whether this action essentially shows Kirby's interpretative genius (the KirbyFan explanation) or his inability to get the joke / read very carefully (the NonKirbyFan explanation) is a matter still under discussion.

- [p. 18/17] The inn called 'The Broken Drum' gets burned down in this book. The later Discworld novels all feature an inn called 'The Mended Drum'. The novel Strata contains (on p. 35/42) an explanation of why you would call a pub 'The Broken Drum' in the first place: "You can't beat it".

This is probably as good a place as any to mention some intriguing information that I received from one of my correspondents: if you have ever wondered what it would be like to experience the atmosphere of an establishment like the Mended Drum, then the closest you can possibly come in our world is by paying a visit to Alexandria, where there exists a bar called the 'Spitfire', populated mostly by soldiers and sailors, and apparently a dead ringer for the Mended Drum. The story goes that when the owner of the bar passed away a few years ago, his body was kept in a freezer next to the toilets where, for all we know, it may still be today. If any of you ever happen to be in Alexandria, be sure to visit the 'Spitfire' and check it out for us.

+ [p. 22/20] "Some might have taken him for a mere apprentice enchanter [...]"

One of the few clues to Rincewind's age being younger rather than older, despite the tendency of every cover artist to depict him as at least sixtyish. No one ever draws him as looking like a weasel, either.

+ [p. 22/20] "[...] an alumnus of Unseen University, [...]"

The name of the Discworld's premier scientific institution resonates with that of the Invisible College, formed by the secret organisation of the Rosicrucians, whose members were called the Invisibles because they never dared to reveal themselves in public. The Invisible College was a

conclave of scientists, philosophers and other progressive thinkers which, in later times and under Stuart patronage, became the Royal Society.

In the Brief Lives arc of Neil Gaiman's Sandman comic, Dream visits the Invisible College, where a scientist is happily dissecting a dead orangutan. I don't think that scene was **entirely** coincidental...

- [p. 24/22] Terry has this to say about the name 'Twoflower': "[...] there's no joke in Twoflower. I just wanted a coherent way of making up 'foreign' names and I think I pinched the Mayan construction (Nine Turning Mirrors, Three Rabbits, etc.)."

- [p. 26/24] "'If you mean: is this coin the same as, say, a fifty-dollar piece, then the answer is no.'"

An American reader was puzzled by the fact that in Ankh-Morpork the unit of currency is the dollar, instead of, for instance, something more British, like the pound. Terry explained:

"The dollar is quite an elderly unit of currency, from the German 'thaler', I believe, and the use of the term for the unit of currency isn't restricted to the US. I just needed a nice easy monetary unit and didn't want to opt for the 'gold pieces' cliché. Sure, I live in the UK, but I haven't a clue what the appropriate unit of currency is for a city in a world on the back of a turtle :-)."

+ [p. 28/25] "'Barely two thousand rhinu.'"

A very old British slang word for ready money is 'rhino', which Brewer thinks may be related to the phrase 'to pay through the nose', since 'rhinos' means 'nose' in Greek.

+ [p. 30/27] "The Patrician of Ankh-Morpork smiled, but with his mouth only."

An interesting consideration is when Lord Vetinari became Patrician. Clearly this isn't him (Vetinari eating crystallised jellyfish? -- I don't think so. Besides, Interesting Times makes it quite clear that Vetinari does not know who Rincewind is). By the time Mort takes place, however, Vetinari had probably already risen to power. When some people on alt.fan.pratchett questioned whether Vetinari would really be the type of man to throw the kind of party described in Mort, Terry answered:

"I've always thought the Patrician is a party animal. Can you imagine waking up next day and remembering all those witty things you said and did, and then realising that he was listening?"

- [p. 44/39] "'_Reflected-sound-of-underground-spirits?_'"

Surprising as it may seem (or at least as it was to me), there are quite a few people who do not understand this cryptification of 'economics', even though it is explicitly explained by Terry a bit later, on p. 71/63: 'echo-gnomics'. Some of the confusion perhaps arises from the fact that we don't usually associate gnomes with spirits, as in: ghosts. But I think Terry here simply means spirits (as in: souls) living underground, with the emphasis on the word 'underground'.

- [p. 49/43] "Let him but get to Chimera or Gonim or Ecalpon and half a dozen armies couldn't bring him back."

The Chimera was a fire-breathing monster from Greek mythology (see the annotation for p. 171/154 of Sourcery). The name is also a pun on Cimmeria, Conan the Barbarian's mythical homeland, while 'Chimerical' has the general connotation of something mythical or imaginary as well.

Ecalpon is 'Noplace' spelled backwards. This is similar to Erewhon, which is 'Nowhere' spelled backwards (well, almost), the idealistic commonwealth described in Samuel Butler's eponymous novel. Also, 'Nehwon' is the universe where Fafhrd and the Gray Mouser have most of their adventures.

Go-Nim, finally, is the name of a Japanese board game similar to four-in-a-row.

+ [p. 62/55] "[...] I WAS EXPECTING TO MEET THEE IN PSEPHOPOLOLIS."

Death and Rincewind are replaying their own version of the well-known folktale Appointment in Samarra. Terry says:

"My mother told me the 'Appointment in Samarra' story when I was very young, and it remained. She says she read it somewhere, or maybe heard it...

I'd always thought it was from the 1001 Nights, although I never went looking for it. It's one of those stories that a lot of people vaguely know, without quite knowing why..."

For those who aren't familiar with the story, it concerns a servant to a rich Baghdad merchant who goes to the market and encounters Death there, who gestures at him. Convinced that this is a very bad omen indeed, the servant rushes back to his master in a great panic and begs him for a horse, so that he can ride to Samarra and escape whatever calamity will befall him should he stay in Baghdad. The kind master gives the servant a horse, and goes out to investigate for himself. When the merchant finds Death and asks him why he frightened the servant so, Death replies: "I wasn't trying to scare him, it is just that I was so very surprised to meet him here, because I have an appointment with him tonight in Samarra!"

Over the centuries, countless versions and re-tellings of this story have appeared in books, plays and poems in all languages and cultures. One of my correspondents was so intrigued by the tale that with the help of alt.fan.pratchett he set out to find the original, or at least the earliest known version. After much research, he now believes this to be When Death Came to Baghdad, an old ninth century Middle Eastern Sufi teaching story, told by Fudail ibn Ayad in his Hikayat-i-Naqshia ('Tales formed according to a design').

If anyone has a reference to an even earlier version, we would love to hear about it.

- [p. 73/65] "'Here's another fine mess you've got me into,' he moaned and slumped backwards."

This is a well-known Laurel and Hardy catchphrase. Hardy (the fat one)

always says it to Laurel (the thin one), who then usually responded by ruffling the top of his hair with one hand and whimpering in characteristic fashion.

People have been quick to point out to me that Hardy never actually said "fine mess", though, but always "nice mess".

- [p. 75/67] This is the first occurrence of the name 'Dunmanifestin' for the home of the Gods at the top of Cori Celesti. It is used again in several places throughout the other Discworld novels.

This is not only a reference to the many British placenames that begin with 'Dun' (a Gaelic word meaning castle or fort and hence town) but also a reference to the supposedly traditional name for a twee retirement bungalow in the suburbs. When people (especially the bourgeois middle classes) retire to the suburbs they always, according to the stereotype, give the house some 'cute' punning name. Since the Dun/Done association is well-known, one of the more common names (though it is a matter of discussion if anyone has ever actually seen a house with this name) is 'Dunroamin' -- that is "done roaming" -- i.e. the owners of the house have finished "travelling the world" and are now settled down to a life of the Daily Mail, golf and coffee mornings. From this, we get that a retirement home for gods not possessing much taste, might just be named 'Dunmanifestin'.

A correspondent tells me that 'Dun' is also an Old English word for hill.

- + [p. 76/68] "[...] Zephyrus the god of slight breezes."

Zephyrus was in fact the Greek god of the soft west winds. The interactions of the gods in 'The Sending of Eight' strongly bring to mind the Godshome scenes in Leiber's Swords series.

- + [p. 78/70] The Sending of Eight

Just as the first chapter of The Colour of Magic has many resonances with Fritz Leiber's Swords series, so can this chapter be regarded as a light parody of the works of horror author H. P. Lovecraft, who wrote many stories in a universe where unspeakable Evil lives, and where Ancient Gods (with unpronounceable names) play games with the lives of mortals.

- + [p. 92/82] "[...] the circle began to spin widdershins."

This entire section is a direct analogy to the workings of a normal electrical generator, with the Elemental Magical Force being the electromotive force we all know and love from high school physics lessons.

- [p. 98/87] "The floor was a continuous mosaic of eight-sided tiles, [...]"

It is physically impossible for convex octagons (the ones we usually think of when we hear the word 'octagon') to tile a plane. Unless, of course, space itself would somehow be strangely distorted (one of the hallmarks of the Cthulhu mythos). It is possible, however, to tile a plane with non-convex octagons (and Terry nowhere says or implies he meant convex tiles). Proof is left as an exercise to the reader (I hate

ASCII pictures).

- [p. 101/89] "[...] the disposal of grimoires [...]"

I don't think too many people will have missed that this section echoes the two main methods of nuclear waste disposal: sealing drums in deep salt mines, and dropping the drums into trenches at subduction zones. Of these two methods, the trench dumping has only been theorised about and not actually employed.

- [p. 114/101] "'I spent a couple of hundred years on the bottom of a lake once.'"

Reference to the sword Excalibur from the King Arthur legend. There's another reference to that legend on p. 128/113: "This could have been an anvil".

Some people were also reminded of the black sword Stormbringer, from Michael Moorcock's Elric saga.

- [p. 114/101] "'What I'd *really* like to be is a ploughshare. I don't know what that is, but it sounds like an existence with some point to it.'"

Swords and ploughshares have always been connected through a proverb originating in a famous phrase from the Bible, in Isaiah 2:4: "[...] and they shall beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more".

- [p. 117/103] "I'LL GET YOU YET, CULLY, said Death [...]"

Death is addressing Rincewind here, so the use of what looks like a different name is confusing. Terry explains: "Cully still just about hangs on in parts of the UK as a mildly negative term meaning variously 'yer bastard', 'man', 'you there' and so on. It's quite old, but then, Death is a history kind of guy."

The Dictionary of Phrase and Fable, by Ebenezer Cobham Brewer (a 19th century reference book; see also the Words From The Master section in chapter 5) explains 'cully' as being a contracted form of 'cullion', "a despicable creature" (from the Italian: coglione). An Italian correspondent subsequently informed me that "coglione" is actually a popular term for testicle, which is often used to signify a stupid and gullible person. According to the Oxford English Dictionary, 'cully' may also have been a gypsy word.

- [p. 118/104] The entire Lure of the Wyrms section parodies the Pern novels (an sf/fantasy series) by Anne McCaffrey. The heroine of the first Pern novel Dragonflight is called Lessa, and the exclamation mark in Terry's dragonriders' names parallels the similar use of apostrophes in McCaffrey's names.

- + [p. 124/109] "The dragons sense Liessa's presence."

This section in italics (continued later with Ninereeds) is another Pern reference (see the annotation for p. 118/104), in this case to the way McCaffrey depicts the mental communications from the dragons.

- [p. 125/110] "Oh, you know how it is with wizards. Half an hour afterwards you could do with another one, the dragon grumbles."

The 'half an hour afterwards' quip is more conventionally made about Chinese food.

- [p. 130/114] "[...] it appeared to be singing to itself."

Although singing swords are common as dirt in myths and folklore, we do know that Terry is familiar with many old computer games, so the description of Kring may be a passing reference to the prototypical computer adventure game *_ADVENT_* (later versions of which were also known as *_Adventure_* or *_Colossal Cave_*). In this game, a room exists where a sword is stuck in an anvil. The next line of the room's description goes: "The sword is singing to itself".

- [p. 141/123] "[...] he had been captivated by the pictures of the fiery beasts in *_The Octarine Fairy Book_*."

A reference to our world's Blue, Brown, Crimson, Green, etc., Fairy Books, edited by Andrew Lang.

- [p. 168/145] "At that moment Lianna's dragon flashed by, and Hrun landed heavily across its neck. Lianna leaned over and kissed him."

A strange error, since in the rest of the story the girl's name is Liessa. Terry says the typo (which occurs in both the original Colin Smythe hardcover and the 1st edition of the Corgi paperback, but can also be found as late as the 5th edition of the US Signet paperback) must have been introduced sometime during the publishing process: they are not in his original manuscript.

Even so, the switch is kind of appropriate because Anne McCaffrey has a tendency herself to suddenly change a character's name or other attributes (T'ron becoming T'ton, etc.). At least one of my correspondents thought Terry was changing Liessa's name on purpose as an explicit parody.

- [p. 169/146] After Rincewind and Twoflower escape from the Wyrmburg they are flying a dragon one moment and a modern jetliner the next.

Clearly they have been, get this, translated to another plane (the last few paragraphs of this section seem to support the theory that Terry actually intended this rather implicit pun). Note also the "powerful travelling rune TWA" appearing on the Luggage: Trans **World** Airlines.

- [p. 171/148] 'Zweiblumen' is the (almost) literal German translation of 'Twoflower' (it actually translates to 'Twoflower*s*', so a 'better' translation would have been the singular form: 'Zweiblume').

'Rjinswand', however, is merely something that was intended to **sound** foreign -- it is not a word in any language known to the readers of *alt.fan.pratchett*.

- + [p. 172/149] "[...] a specialist in the breakaway oxidation phenomena of certain nuclear reactors."

"Breakaway oxidation phenomena" is a reasonably well-known example of doubletalk. Basically, what Terry's saying here is that Dr. Rjinswand is an expert on uncontrolled fires in nuclear reactors. And we all know what Terry's job was before he became a Famous Author...

- [p. 176/153] "'I am Goldeneyes Silverhand Dactylos,' said the craftsman."

'Dactylos' means 'fingers' in dog Greek. See also the annotation for p. 159/115 of *_Small Gods_*.

The fate of Dactylos has been suffered by craftsmen in our world as well. In 1555 Ivan the Terrible ordered the construction of St. Basil's Church in Moscow. He was so pleased with this piece of work by the two architects, Postnik and Barma, that he had them blinded so they would never be able to design anything more beautiful.

- [p. 179/155] "[...] the incredibly dry desert known as the Great Nef."

'Neff' is the name of an oven manufacturer, and 'nef' is of course 'fen' (i.e. something incredibly wet) spelled backwards.

- [p. 184/160] "The captain had long ago decided that he would, on the whole, prefer to achieve immortality by not dying."

Probably the best known version of this line is from Woody Allen, who said: "I don't want to achieve immortality through my work. I want to achieve it through not dying".

+ [p. 184/160] "'His name is Tethis. He says he's a sea troll.'"

In Greek mythology Tethys or Thetis was the personification of the feminine fecundity of the sea. She was the daughter of Uranus and Gaia, and the youngest female Titan (or Titanide). Eventually she married her brother Oceanus, and together they had more than 3000 children, namely all the rivers of the world.

Note that this is one instance where Terry violates his own unwritten rule that trolls should have 'mineral' names. Perhaps this is simply because we are looking at this early book in the series with hindsight: the only rock troll to appear up to this point lasted about three paragraphs and didn't have a chance to introduce himself.

But even if the unwritten rule was already established in Terry's mind at this point, it seems logical that it should not apply to Tethis, who is, after all, neither a rock troll, nor originally a Discworld creature.

- [p. 189/164] "'Ghlen Livid,' he said."

Glenlivet is a well-known Single Malt Scotch whisky. It's a wee bit more expensive than Johnny Walker.

- [p. 193/168] He told them of the world of Bathys, [...]"

'Bathys' is Greek for 'deep', as in for example bathyscaphe deep-sea diving equipment.

- [p. 194/168] "[...] the biggest dragon you could ever imagine, covered in snow and glaciers and holding its tail in its mouth."

Tethis is describing a planet designed according to a world-view that is about as ancient and as widespread as the idea of a Discworld itself.

The snow and glaciers seem to point specifically to the Norse mythology however, where the Midgard serpent Jormungand circles the world in the manner described.

- [p. 198/172] "'Well, the disc itself would have been created by Fresnel's Wonderful Concentrator,' said Rincewind, authoritatively."

It is stereotypical that in fantasy fiction (e.g. Jack Vance's *Dying Earth* stories) and role-playing games (e.g. *Advanced Dungeons & Dragons*) spells are often named after their 'creator', e.g. 'Bigby's Crushing Hand'. And indeed, in our universe Augustin Fresnel was the 19th century inventor of the Fresnel lens, often used in lighthouses to concentrate the light beam. A Fresnel lens consists of concentric ring segments; its main advantage is that it is not as thick as a (large) normal lens would be. The disc Rincewind is referring to is a transparent lens twenty feet across.

- [p. 221/191] "Whoever would be wearing those suits, Rincewind decided, was expecting to boldly go where no man [...] had boldly gone before [...]"

From the famous opening voice-over to the *Star Trek* television series:

"Space... the final frontier. These are the voyages of the Starship Enterprise. Its five-year mission: to explore strange new worlds, to seek out new life and new civilisations -- to boldly go where no man has gone before."

(This became "where no-one has gone before" only in the newer, more politically correct *Star Trek* incarnations)

- [p. 222/192] "'? Tyo yur atl ho sooten gatrunen?'"

People have been wondering if this was perhaps a real sentence in some Scandinavian language (the letters used are from the Danish/Norwegian alphabet), but it isn't.

Terry remarks: "The point is that Krullian isn't Swedish -- it's *just a language that looks foreign*. In the same way, I hope the hell that when *Witches Abroad* is translated the translators use some common sense when dealing with Nanny Ogg's fractured Esperanto."

THE LIGHT FANTASTIC

- The Light Fantastic.

The book's title comes from the poem *L'Allegro*, written by John Milton in 1631:

"Haste thee, nymph, and bring with thee
Jest and youthful Jollity
Quips and Cranks, and wanton Wiles
Nods, and Becks, and wreathed Smiles

Such as hang on Hebe's neck
And love to live in dimple sleek
Sport that wrinkled Care derides
And Laughter holding both his sides
Come and trip it as ye go
On the Light Fantastic toe."

- [p. 6/6] "[...] proves, whatever people say, that there *is* such a thing as a free lunch."

The reference is to the saying "there ain't no such thing as a free lunch" (also known by its acronym 'TANSTAAFL', made popular by science fiction author Robert Heinlein in his classic novel *The Moon is a Harsh Mistress*, although the phrase was originally coined by American economist John Kenneth Galbraith).

- [p. 8/8] "[...] the sort of book described in library catalogues as 'slightly foxed', [...]"

"Slightly foxed" is a term used primarily by antiquarian booksellers to denote that there is staining (usually due to Ferric OXide, hence 'FOXed') on the pages of a book. This does not usually reduce the value of the book, but booksellers tend to be scrupulous about such matters.

- [p. 8/8] Many people have commented on the last name of the 304th Chancellor of Unseen University: Weatherwax, and asked if there is a connection with Granny Weatherwax.

In *Lords and Ladies*, Terry supplies the following piece of dialogue (on p. 224/161) between Granny and Archchancellor Ridcully as an answer:

"'There was even a Weatherwax as Archchancellor, years ago,' said Ridcully. 'So I understand. Distant cousin. Never knew him,' said Granny."

- + [p. 8/8] "[...] even with the Wee Willie Winkie candlestick in his hand."

This is one of those candlesticks with a flat, saucer-like base, a short candleholder in the middle and a loop to grip it by at one side. 'Wee Willie Winkie' is a Mother Goose nursery rhyme, and traditional illustrations always show Willie going upstairs carrying a candle.

Wee Willie Winkie runs through the town,
Upstairs and downstairs, in his nightgown.
Rapping at the windows, Crying through the lock,
"Are the children all in bed? For it's now eight o'clock."

- + [p. 9/9] "[...] the Book of Going Forth Around Elevenish, [...]"

The title the ancient Egyptians used for what we now call the Book of the Dead was *The Book of Going Forth By Day*. Note that in the UK until a few years ago the pubs opened at 11 a.m.

If you try really hard (one of my correspondents did) you can see this as a very elaborate joke via the chain: Around Elevenish --> Late in the morning --> Late --> Dead --> Book of the Dead. But I doubt if even Terry is *that* twisted.

- [p. 10/10] Dandelion Clock

Amongst English (and Australian) children there exists the folk-belief that the seed-heads of dandelions can be used to tell the time. The method goes as follows: pick the dandelion, blow the seeds away, and the number of puffs it takes to get rid of all the seeds is the time, e.g. three puffs = three o'clock. As a result, the dandelion stalks with their globe of seeds is regularly referred to as a "dandelion clock" in colloquial English.

- [p. 10/10] "'To the upper cellars!' he cried, and bounded up the stone stairs."

The magic eating its way through the ceilings with the wizards chasing it floor after floor vaguely resonates with the 'alien blood' scene in the movie *_Alien_*, where the acidic blood of the Alien burns through successive floors of the ship, with people running down after it.

- [p. 24/24] "[...] when a wizard is tired of looking for broken glass in his dinner, [...], he is tired of life."

See the annotation for p. 193/158 of *_Mort_*.

- [p. 26/26] "I WAS AT A PARTY, he added, a shade reproachfully."

When someone on the net wondered if this scene had been influenced by Monty Python (who also do a Death-at-a-party sketch), Terry replied:

"No. I'm fairly honest about this stuff. I didn't even see the film until long after the book was done. Once again, I'd say it's an easy parallel -- what with the Masque of the Red Death and stuff like that, the joke is just lying there waiting for anyone to pick it up."

It is perhaps also worth pointing out that this sentence looks very much like a classic Tom Swiftie (if you can accept Death as a shade). Tom Swifties (after the famous series of boys' novels which popularised them) are sentences of the form "xxx, said he zzz-ly", where the zzz refers back to the xxx. Examples:

"Pass me the shellfish," said Tom crabbily.

"Let's look for another Grail!" Tom requested.

"I used to be a pilot," Tom explained.

"I'm into homosexual necrophilia," said Tom in dead earnest.

- [p. 30/30] "[...] the only forest in the whole universe to be called -- in the local language -- Your Finger You Fool, [...]"

The miscommunication between natives and foreign explorers Terry describes here occurs in our world as well. Or rather: it is **rumoured**, with stubborn regularity, to have occurred all over the globe. Really hard evidence, one way or the other, turns out to be surprisingly hard to come by. As Cecil Adams puts it in *_More of the Straight Dope_*: "Having now had the 'I don't know' yarn turn up in three different parts of the globe, I can draw one of two conclusions: either explorers are incredible saps, or somebody's been pulling our leg."

- [p. 34/34] "Twoflower touched a wall gingerly."

Speaking of Tom Swifties...

- [p. 34/34] "'Good grief! A real gingerbread cottage!'"

The cottage and the events alluded to a bit later ("'Kids of today,' commented Rincewind. 'I blame the parents,' said Twoflower.") are straight out of the _Hansel and Gretel_ fairy tale by the brothers Grimm.

If you have access to the Internet, you can find an online version of the original fairy tale at the URL:

<ftp://ftp.uu.net/doc/literary/obi/Fairy.Tales/Grimm/hansel.and.gretel.txt.Z>

- + [p. 35/35] "'Candyfloss.'"

Candyfloss is known as cotton candy in the US, or fairy floss in Australia. It's the pink spun sugar you can eat at fairs.

- + [p. 35/35] "He read that its height plus its length divided by half its width equalled exactly 1.67563..."

A parody of the typical numerical pseudo-science tossed about regarding the Great Pyramid and the 'cosmic truths' (such as the distance from the Earth to the Sun) that the Egyptians supposedly incorporated into its measurements.

The remark about sharpening razor blades at the end of the paragraph is similarly a reference to the pseudo-scientific 'fact' that (small models of) pyramids are supposed to have, among many other powers, the ability to sharpen razor blades that are left underneath the pyramids overnight.

- [p. 37/37] "'Hot water, good dentishtry and shoft lavatory paper.'"

From the first _Conan The Barbarian_ movie (starring Arnold Schwarzenegger): "Conan! What is good in life?" "To crush your enemies, drive them before you, and to hear the lamentation of their women." This quote, in turn, is lifted more or less verbatim from an actual conversation Genghiz Khan is supposed to have had with his lieutenants.

- [p. 45/45] "'Of course I'm sure,' snarled the leader. 'What did you expect, three bears?'"

Another fairy tale reference, this time to _Goldilocks and the Three Bears_.

- [p. 46/46] "'Someone's been eating my bed,' he said."

A mixture of "someone's been eating my porridge" and "someone's been sleeping in my bed", both from the _Goldilocks and the Three Bears_ fairy tale.

- [p. 47/47] "Illuminated Mages of the Unbroken Circle"

An organisation with this name is also mentioned in the _Illuminatus!_ trilogy by Robert Shea and Robert Anton Wilson.

- [p. 57/57] "[...] charm, persuasion, uncertainty and bloody-mindedness."

A reference to the elementary quantum particles known as quarks. For more information see the annotation for p. 133/97 of Lords and Ladies.

- [p. 62/62] "'In the beginning was the word,' said a dry voice right behind him. 'It was the Egg,' corrected another voice. [...] 'I'm sure it was the primordial slime.' [...] 'No, that came afterwards. There was firmament first.' [...] 'You're all wrong. In the beginning was the Clearing of the Throat--'"

The bickering of the spells is cleared up somewhat by the creation passages on pp. 103/85-119/99 from Eric. It is quite clearly stated that first the Creator did an Egg and Cress (for Rincewind), then He Cleared His Throat, then He Read the Octavo (that's the word then), which created the world and finally the primordial slime came into being because Rincewind couldn't eat the Egg and Cress Sandwich and just dropped it on the beach. The Creator subcontracted for the firmament, so it isn't quite clear when that came to be.

- [p. 82/82] "'Anyway, I don't believe in Caroc cards,' he muttered."

Caroc = Tarot. See also the annotation for p. 110/90 of Mort.

A minor inconsistency, by the way, is that on p. 24/24 there actually is a reference to Tarot cards.

- [p. 88/88] "[...] what about all those studded collars and oiled muscles down at the Young Men's Pagan Association?"

A reference to the Young Men's Christian Association, YMCA. See also the annotation for p. 14/14 of Pyramids.

In our world the YMCA somehow became associated with the homosexual scene (I think quite a few people singing merrily along to the Village People's hit 'YMCA' would have been very surprised to learn what the song was **really** about), hence the "studded collars and oiled muscles" bit.

- [p. 93/93] "'Only when you leave, it's very important not to look back.'"

It's always important never to look back if you're rescuing somebody from Death's domain. The best known example of this can be found in the tragic legend of Orpheus and Eurydice. Orpheus went to fetch his departed loved one, talked Hades (the Greek version of Death) into it, but had to leave without looking back. Of course he looked -- and she was gone forever. A contemporary retelling of the Orpheus legend can be found in Neil Gaiman's Sandman series.

A few people have written and suggested a reference to Lot's wife in Genesis 19:26 (who was turned into a pillar of salt when she looked back when they left Sodom and Gomorrah), but the fact that we're talking about Death's domain here indicates clearly to me that the Orpheus reference is the one Terry intended.

- [p. 104/104] "Rincewind wasn't certain what a houri was, but after some thought he came to the conclusion that it was a little liquorice tube for sucking up the sherbet."

A houri is actually a beautiful young girl found in the Moslem paradise. For more information on sherbets see the annotation for p. 122/111 of

Sourcery.

+ [p. 105/105] "[...] homesickness rose up inside Rincewind like a late-night prawn birani."

A birani is an Indian shrimp curry.

+ [p. 128/128] "'Man, we could be as rich as Creosote!'"

This is the first mention of Creosote, whom we will later meet as a fully developed character in his own right, in _Sourcery_. See also the annotation for p. 125/113 of _Sourcery_.

- [p. 133/133] The idea of a strange little shop that appears, sells the most peculiar things, and then vanishes again first appears in a short story by H. G. Wells, appropriately called _The Magic Shop_. A recent variation on the same theme can be found in Stephen King's _Needful Things_.

When an a.f.p. reader mistakenly thought that this type of shop was invented by Fritz Leiber (see the annotation for p. 9/9 of _The Colour of Magic_), Terry replied:

"Actually, magically appearing/disappearing shops were a regular feature of fantasy stories, particularly in the old _Unknown_ magazine. They always sold the hero something he didn't -- at the time -- know he needed, or played some other vital part in the plot. And I think they even turned up on the early Twilight Zones too. You're referring to a Leiber story called Bazaar of the Bizarre or something similar, where a shop appears which seems to contain wonderful merchandise but in fact contains dangerous trash."

The Leiber story is indeed called _Bazaar of the Bizarre_. It features Fafhrd and the Gray Mouser, and can be found in _Swords Against Death_.

- [p. 171/171] "'Do not peddle in the affairs of wizards...'"

See the annotation for p. 183/149 of _Mort_.

+ [p. 209/209] "The young turtles followed, orbiting their parent."

My herpetological correspondent tells me that in our world no known turtles give any sort of care to their young. They just lay the eggs and leave the hatchlings to fend for themselves, which incidentally helps explain why sea turtles are becoming extinct.

It can be argued that Great A'Tuin is in fact a kind of sea turtle (admittedly, a somewhat *unusual* sea turtle), since only sea turtles have flippers in place of feet and spend most of their time swimming.

+ [p. 213/213] "'They do say if it's summa cum laude, then the living is easy --.'"

Substituting "graduation with distinction" for the Latin "summa cum laude" gives a perfectly unexceptional sentiment, but it is, of course, also a reference to the song 'Summertime' from the Gershwin opera/operetta/musical _Porgy and Bess_: "Summertime, and the living is easy".

EQUAL RITES

- A central theme of this book (as well as of the other Discworld witch novels) is the contrast between on one side the (female) witches or wiccans, who are in touch with nature, herbs and headology, and on the other side the (male) wizards who are very ceremonial and use elaborate, mathematics-like tools and rituals. This conflict rather closely mirrors a long-standing feud between occult practitioners in our real world. (And all the infighting within each camp occurs in real life, as well.)

My source for this also mentions that Pratchett's witches, especially, are obvious stereotypes of the kinds of people one can run into at wiccan festivals.

- "Only dumb redheads in Fifties' sitcoms are wacky."

Refers to Lucille Ball from I Love Lucy fame.

- One of my correspondents recalls that he interviewed Terry in 1987 for a university magazine. In that interview Terry said that one thing which had tickled him about Josh Kirby's artwork for the Equal Rites cover was that it subliminally (accidentally?) reflected the Freudian overtones of the book (references to "hot dreams", the angst of adolescence, things that might be called "magic" envy)... Kirby's artwork "coincidentally" draws Esk with the broom handle where a penis would be (traditionally supposed to be the basis of the "witches flying around on broomsticks" myth).
- Kirby caricatures himself as the pointy-eared wizard on the back cover -- anyone who has seen his picture in The Josh Kirby Posterbook can confirm this.
- [p. -/5] "Thanks to Neil Gaiman, who loaned us the last surviving copy of the Liber Paginarum Fulvarum, [...]"

Neil Gaiman is the author of the acclaimed Sandman comics series, as well as the co-author with Terry of Good Omens.

Liber Paginarum Fulvarum is a dog-Latin title that translates to Book of Yellow Pages, i.e. not the Book of the Dead, but rather the Phonebook of the Dead. The book appears in Good Omens as well as in Sandman, where it is used in an attempt to summon Death (although the colourist didn't get the joke and simply coloured the pages brown). Terry said (when questioned about it in a Good Omens context):

"Liber Paginarum Fulvarum is a kind of shared gag. It's in the dedication of Equal Rites, too. Although I think we've got the shade of yellow wrong -- I think there's another Latin word for a kind of yellow which is closer to the Yellow Pages colour."

The other word for yellow Terry is thinking of may possibly be 'gilvus', or 'croceus', or 'luteus'.

- [p. 8/10] "[...] up here in the Ramtop Mountains [...]"

RAMTOP was the name of a system variable in the old Sinclair Spectrum

computers.

- [p. 45/45] "'I've seen the thundergods a few times,' said Granny, 'and Hoki, of course.'"

The name Hoki derives from 'hokey' in combination with the Norse god Loki. The description of Hoki is pure Pan, however.

- [p. 73/73] "According to the standard poetic instructions one should move through a fair like the white swan at evening moves o'er the bay, [...]"

These instructions stem in fact from a folk song called 'She Moved Through the Fair', which has been recorded by (amongst others) Fairport Convention, Van Morrison and All About Eve:

"My young love said to me, 'My mother won't mind
And my father won't slight you for your lack of kine'.
And she stepped away from me and this she did say,
'It will not be long now till our wedding day'

She stepped away from me and she moved through the fair
And fondly I watched her move here and move there
And she made her way homeward with one star awake
As the swan in the evening moves over the lake"

- + [p. 79/79] "'Gypsies always come here for the fair, [...]"

Someone on alt.fan.pratchett pointed out that in our world, Gypsies were named because people thought they were Egyptians. Since the Discworld equivalent of Egypt is Djelibeybi, shouldn't Hilda Goatfounder have been talking about, say, 'Jellybabes'? Terry answered:

"Okay. Almost every word in the English language has a whole slew of historic associations. People on the Disc can't possibly speak 'English' but I have to write in English. *Some* carefully-positioned 'translations' like 'It's all Klatchian to me' can work, but if I went the whole hog and 'discworlded' every name and term, then the books would be even more impenetrable and would probably only be read by people who like learning Klingon. I do my best -- French fries can't exist on Discworld, for example -- but I think 'gypsies' is allowable."

- [p. 80/79] "If broomsticks were cars, this one would be a split-window Morris Minor."

A Morris Minor is a British car that non-Brits might be familiar with either through the video clip for Madness' song 'Driving in my car', or through the TV series Lovejoy. In that series, Lovejoy's car 'Miriam' is a Morris Minor. For the rest of you, here's a description:

Imagine a curvaceous jelly-mould in the shape of a crouching rabbit, like Granny used to use. Turn it open-side-down and fit four wheels, near the corners. On the rabbit's back build a cabin, with picture windows and a windscreen in two parts at an angle to each other. Add turn indicators consisting of little arms which flip out of the body at roof level, just behind the doors. Furnish the cabin in a post-War austerity style, and power the result with a 1935 vintage 850cc straight four engine pulling about 30bhp. In its day, in 1948, this was the height of desirability -- so much so that for its first few years it was only available for export.

Even in the Nineties, a fair number of Moggies are still going, er, strong. You can actually pay a couple of thousand pounds for a good one which works, because they're so easy to maintain. And the split-screen ones are very definitely collectors' items.

+ [p. 111/109] "Bel-Shamharoth, C'hulagen, the Insider -- the hideous old dark gods of the Necrotelicomnicom, [...]"

The Necrotelicomnicom is another reference to the Phonebook of the Dead (see the annotation for the dedication of *_Equal Rites_*), but is also a pun on the evil book of the dead *_Necronomicon_*, used by H. P. Lovecraft in his Cthulhu stories.

Bel-Shamharoth is an Elder God of the Discworld we already met in 'The Sending of Eight' in *_The Colour of Magic_*. C'hulagen is obviously made up out of the same ingredients as C'thulhu, and the Insider refers to the unnamed narrator of Lovecraft's *_The Outsider_*.

- [p. 119/117] "The lodgings were [...] next to the [...] premises of a respectable dealer in stolen property because, as Granny had heard, good fences make good neighbours."

Terry's having fun with a familiar saying that originated with Robert Frost's poem *_Mending a Wall_*:

"My apple trees will never get across
And eat the cones under his pines, I tell him.
He only says, 'Good fences make good neighbours'."

And since people keep pointing it out to me I suppose it might as well be mentioned here that 'fence' is also the English word for a dealer in stolen goods.

- [p. 121/119] "'Mrs. Palm,' said Granny cautiously. 'Very respectable lady.'"

"Mrs Palm(er) and her daughters" is a euphemism for male masturbation.

- [p. 122/120] "'Yes, that's it,' said Treatle. 'Alma mater, gaudy armours eagle tour and so on.'"

Treatle refers here to the old student's (drinking) song 'Gaudeamus Igitur', written in 1781 by Christian Wilhelm Kindleben, a priest in Leipzig who got kicked out because of his student songs. The song is still in use at many universities and schools, where it gets sung during graduation ceremonies. The actual lyrics are:

"Gaudeamus igitur, iuvenes dum sumus.
Post iucundam iuventutem,
Post molestam senectutem,
Nos habebit humus, nos habebit humus."

Which roughly translates to:

"Let us be merry, therefore, whilst we are young men.
After the joys of youth,
After the pain of old age,

The ground will have us, the ground will have us."

- [p. 132/130] The maid at Unseen University is called Ksandra, which puns on Troy's Cassandra; but might also refer to Sandra being yet another typical 'Tracey/Sharon' sort of name in England. See also the entry for p. 106/95 of _Reaper Man_.

Perhaps the fact that nobody can understand Ksandra (because she talks with her mouth full of clothes-pegs) is also an obscure reference to the classical Cassandra, daughter of Priam of Troy, whom the Gods gave the gift of prophecy and the curse of no-one believing a word she said.

- [p. 133/130] "'Hmm. Granpone the White. He's going to be Granpone the Grey if he doesn't take better care of his laundry.'"

You really have to read Tolkien in order to understand why this is so funny. Sure, I can explain that in the _The Lord of the Rings_ a big deal is made of the transformation of wizards from one 'colour' to another (and in particular Gandalf the Grey becoming Gandalf the White), but that just doesn't do justice to the real atmosphere of the thing.

- [p. 143/141] "[...] the Creator hadn't really decided what he wanted and was, as it were, just idly messing around with the Pleistocene."

Refers to the Pleistocene geological era (a few dozen million years or so ago), but also to Plasticine, a brand name that has become (at least in Britain, Australia and New Zealand) a generic name for the modeling clay children play with.

- [p. 163/159] Some folks thought they recognised the duel between Granny Weatherwax and Archchancellor Cutangle from T. H. White's description of a similar duel in his _Arthur, The Once and Future King_ (also depicted as a very funny fragment in Disney's _The Sword in the Stone_, which was an animation film based on this book). However, Terry says:

"The magical duel in _Equal Rites_ is certainly not lifted from T. H. White. Beware of secondary sources. Said duel (usually between a man and a woman, and often with nice Freudian touches to the things they turn into) has a much longer history; folkies out there will probably know it as the song 'The Two Magicians'."

- + [p. 176/172] "'Million-to-one chances,' she said, 'crop up nine times out of ten.'"

The first mention of this particular running gag in the Discworld canon (to be featured most prominently in _Guards! Guards!_).

It is not quite *the* earliest appearance in Terry's work, though: he also uses it on p. 46/55 of _The Dark Side of the Sun_.

- + [p. 188/184] "[...] which by comparison made Gormenghast look like a toolshed on a railway allotment."

Gormenghast is the ancient, decaying castle from Mervyn Peake's _Gormenghast_ trilogy. See also the annotation for p. 17/17 of _Pyramids_.

- [p. 202/197] "'Like 'red sky at night, the city's alight', ' said

Cutangle."

Plays on the folk saying: "Red sky at night, shepherd's delight. Red sky in the morning, shepherd's warning".

MORT

- [p. 17/16] "'They call me Mort.' WHAT A COINCIDENCE, [...]"

Not only does 'Mort' mean 'death' in French, but in The Light Fantastic we also learned (on p. 95/95), that Death's *own* (nick)name is Mort. Opinions on a.f.p. are divided as to which of these two facts is the 'coincidence' Death is talking about.

- [p. 24/21] "The only thing known to go faster than ordinary light is monarchy, [...]"

This is where the popular (on the net, at least) 'kingons and queons' footnote starts out. During a discussion on a.f.p., Terry had this to add to the subject:

"I've a strong suspicion that the smaller the country, the more powerful the monarch as an emitter of kingons.

Surely the size of the king in proportion to the size of his country is the important factor. If you're king of a country of ten people there must be quite a high kingon flux.

As to where kingons come from in the first place, they come from God. God is invoked in the coronation service. God *wants* fat red-haired girls and clothes horses who can't keep their mobile phone conversations private. God likes people with lots of front teeth. God must have a hand in all this, otherwise we'd have slaughtered all kings years ago."

- [p. 30/25] "'How do you get all those coins?' asked Mort. IN PAIRS."

A reference to the old Eastern European practice of covering a dead friends' eyes with coins.

In the Greek version of this custom, a single coin or obulus was put under the tongue of a deceased person. This was done so that the departed loved one would have some change handy to pay Charon with (the grumpy old ferryman who transported departed souls over the river Styx towards the afterlife -- but only if they paid him first).

The Eastern European version has a similar background.

- [p. 31/26] "The answer flowed into his mind with all the inevitability of a tax demand."

An acknowledgment of the "nothing is certain but death and taxes" saying. See also the annotation for p. 151/133 of Reaper Man.

- [p. 33/28] "'I shall call you Boy', she said."

The subplot of Ysabell and Mort and the matchmaking efforts by her father echoes Charles Dickens' Great Expectations (where Estelle, for

instance, also insists on calling Pip 'Boy' all the time).

+ [p. 34/29] Albert's stove has 'The Little Moloch (Ptntd)' embossed on its door.

There exists a make of woodburning stove called 'The Little Wenlock'.

For those who don't know what a Moloch is, I'll let Brewer (see the annotation for p. 117/103 of *The Colour of Magic*) do the explaining:

"_Moloch_ : Any influence which demands from us the sacrifice of what we hold most dear. Thus _war_ is a Moloch, _king mob_ is a Moloch, the _guillotine_ was the Moloch of the French Revolution, etc. The allusion is to the god of the Ammonites [Phoenicians], to whom children were 'made to pass through the fire' in sacrifice."

To be fair, however, it must be pointed out that almost all we know about Moloch is based on what the bitter enemies of the Phoenicians said about him.

- [p. 40/33] "AND WHY DO YOU THINK I DIRECTED YOU TO THE STABLES? THINK CAREFULLY NOW."

The whole section on Mort's training, and this paragraph in particular, explores a theme familiar from stories such as told in *The Karate Kid*, or *The Empire Strikes Back*, and of course the TV series *Kung Fu*, where a young student is given many menial tasks to perform, which are revealed to be integral to his education.

- [p. 47/39] "[...] the city of Sto Lat [...]"

A Polish correspondent tells me that 'Sto lat' is actually the title of a Polish party song, more or less equivalent to 'For he's a jolly good fellow'. 'Sto lat' means 'hundred years', and the lyrics to the song are as follows:

"Sto lat, sto lat, niech zyje, zyje nam.
Sto lat, sto lat, niech zyje, zyje nam.
Jeszcze raz, jeszcze raz -- niech zyje, zyje nam.
Niech zyje nam!"

Which loosely translates to:

"Hundred years, hundred years, let him live for us,
Hundred years, hundred years, let him live for us,
Once again, once again, let him live for us!"

Thinking I was on to something I immediately enquired if 'Sto Helit', another name Terry uses often, had a similar background, but my correspondent says it's not even Polish at all.

- [p. 54/45] "IT'S THE MORPHOGENETIC FIELD WEAKENING, said Death."

Terry loves playing with morphogenetic principles in the Discworld canon, and I think this is the first place he explicitly mentions it. Morphogenetics are part of a controversial theory put forward by ex-Cambridge biologist Rupert Sheldrake. 'Controversial' is in fact putting it rather mildly: personally I feel 'crackpot' would be a much

better description. Which explains why on the Discworld, of course, it's valid science.

- [p. 65/53] "TIME LIKE AN EVER-ROLLING STREAM BEARS ALL ITS..."

Death is quoting from *_Our God, Our Help in Ages Past_*, by Isaac Watts.
The verse in full is:

"Time like an ever-rolling stream
Bears all its sons away
They fly forgotten as a dream
Dies at the opening day."

No wonder Albert thinks Death has been overdoing it.

- [p. 71/59] "[...] the abode of Igneous Cutwell, DM(Unseen), [...]"

DM(Unseen) means that Cutwell holds a Doctorate in Magic from Unseen University. It's the usual way of writing an academic qualification in Britain (e.g. DD for Doctor of Divinity, or PhD for Doctor of Philosophy) -- though the University name ought to be in Latin.

- [p. 84/69] "[...] just like a Cheshire cat only much more erotic."

See the annotation for p. 142/141 of *_Wyrd Sisters_*.

- [p. 85/69] "[...] the fire of the Aurora Coriolis [...]"

This is the air glow around Cori Celesti (as in our aurora borealis), but it is also a reference to the Coriolis force that acts on spinning objects.

- [p. 88/72] "'Die a lot, do you?' he managed."

For those readers who are not familiar with Tibetan Buddhism: it is believed that religious leaders who are spiritually advanced (the Dalai Lama being only one such individual) will reincarnate and continue to guide the people. In 1993, for instance, an eight-year old boy in Tibet was discovered to be the seventeenth reincarnation of the Karmapa, and was promptly whisked away from his native village and installed in the Tsurphu-monastery.

In *_Guards! Guards!_* we eventually learn that Abbot Lobsang has indeed been reincarnated.

- [p. 90/74] "Princess Keli awoke."

Another 'dumb blonde' pun (on Kelly this time) along the lines of Ptraci and Ksandra? See the annotation for p. 45/45 of *_Pyramids_*.

- [p. 93/76] "[...] if Mort ever compared a girl to a summer's day, it would be followed by a thoughtful explanation of what day he had in mind and whether it was raining at the time."

Considering the sheer volume of Discworld material written so far, with its high jokes-per-page count, it is quite remarkable that Terry Pratchett doesn't recycle (or inadvertently reinvent) his own jokes more often than he does. As for instance in the case of this particular

Shakespeare-inspired joke that would be repeated two books later in Wyrd Sisters (see the annotation for p. 213/212 of that book).

- [p. 99/81] "[...] the princesses were so noble they, they could pee through a dozen mattresses --"

Albert here mangles the Grimm fairy tale known as The Princess and the Pea, in which a princess proves her nobility to her future husband and his mother by being so fine-constituted that a pea placed underneath the dozen mattresses she was given to sleep on kept her awake all night.

If you have access to the Internet, you can find an online version of the original fairy tale at the URL:

<ftp://ftp.uu.net/doc/literary/obi/Fairy.Tales/Grimm/princess.and.pea.txt.Z>

I have since then received mail indicating that the best known version of this fairy tale was the one written by Hans Christian Andersen, and that the Grimm version was in fact pulled from the collection because it was so similar. I was not able to obtain any further evidence for this claim, so if anybody out there knows something about this, please drop me a line.

- [p. 110/90] Caroc cards and the Ching Aling.

Caroc = Tarot and Ching Aling = I Ching: two ways of accessing the Distilled Wisdom of the Ancients, and all that.

- + [p. 118/97] "I SHALL CALL IT -- DEATH'S GLORY."

In the fishing world there exists a popular dry fly called Greenwell's Glory, named after its inventor, a 19th century parson.

- [p. 126/103] "-- and then she thought he was dead, and she killed herself, and then he woke up and so he did kill himself, [...]"

Ysabell starts to list off a number of tragic romances, mostly mangled versions of existing stories. This one appears to be the Shakespearean tragedy of Romeo and Juliet, or perhaps the original source: Ovid's Pyramus and Thisbe.

- [p. 127/104] "-- swam the river every night, but one night there was this storm and when he didn't arrive she --"

This is the saga of Hero and Leander. Leander swam the Hellespont each night to be with Hero (who was a virgin (yeah, sure!) in the service of Aphrodite, and therefore not accessible by more conventional means). But then there was indeed a storm, and the candle she used as a beacon blew out, and the Gods couldn't hear his prayers over the noise of the storm, and so he drowned, and the next morning she saw his body and drowned herself as well. Read Christopher Marlowe's Hero and Leander for more details.

- + [p. 133/109] "Why, lordship, we drink scumble, for preference."

Scumble is the Discworld equivalent of scrumpy, a drink probably unknown to most non-UK readers. It's a (very) strong cider, originating from the West country, Somerset farmhouses in particular.

On the subject of scrumpy, Terry writes:

"I can speak with authority, having lived a short walking -- to get there, at least, although it seemed to take longer coming back -- distance from a real cider house.

1) You are unlikely to buy scrumpy anywhere but from a farm or a pub in a cider area.

2) It won't fizz. It slumps in the glass, and is a grey-orange colour.

3) The very best scrumpy is (or at least, was) made on farms where a lot of the metalwork around the press was lead; the acid apple juice on the lead gave the resultant drink a kick which lasted for the rest of your life.

4) While a lot of the stories about stuff being put in 'to give it body' are probably apocryphal, apparently it wasn't uncommon to put a piece of beef in the stuff to give it 'strength'.

5) I certainly recall a case of a female tourist having to have an ambulance called out after two pints of scrumpy.

6) We used to drink *almost* a pint, topped off with half an inch of lemonade; this was known as 'cider and gas' and was popular in our part of the Mendips. Two pints was the max. I recall that as we went back across the fields someone who is now a professor of medieval history fell down a disused mineshaft and still carried on singing."

- [p. 154/126] Alberto Malich was rumoured to have disappeared when trying to perform the Rite of AshkEnte backwards. Since we know that the Rite is used to summon Death, it doesn't seem too unreasonable to suppose that performing it backwards might drive Death away from you, which is probably why Albert did it. Unfortunately for him, it is also not very unreasonable to suppose that performing the rite backwards will instead summon *you* to Death...

There also are two villages called Ash in Kent, UK. It is unknown if the connection is deliberate.

- [p. 161/132] Queen Ezeriel refers to our world's Cleopatra who also used to bathe in asses' milk, and who eventually committed honourable suicide by clutching a venomous snake (an asp, to be precise) to her bosom.

- [p. 183/149] "'Do not meddle in the affairs of wizards because a refusal often offends, I read somewhere.'"

Ysabell probably read one part of this in Tolkien's The Lord of the Rings where we find (in The Fellowship of the Ring, Book One, Chapter III) that Gildor Inglorion the High Elf says: "Do not meddle in the affairs of wizards because they are subtle and quick to anger". The other part she got from a sign often seen in British pubs: "Do not ask for credit, because a refusal often offends".

See also the annotation for p. 367/264 of Lords and Ladies.

- [p. 186/152] "BEGONE, YOU BLACK AND MIDNIGHT HAG, he said."

Death is alluding to Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, act 4, scene 1, where Macbeth says to the witches: "How now, you secret, black, and midnight hags!"

- [p. 192/157] "'Sodomy non sapiens,' said Albert under his breath."

"Sodomy non sapiens" is dog Latin for "buggered if I know". Since this is explicitly translated by Albert two sentences later, it never occurred to me to include this annotation in earlier versions of the APF. I had to change my mind when e-mail and discussions in a.f.p. made it clear that quite a few readers never make the connection, and think instead that Albert **really** doesn't know what the phrase means.

- [p. 193/158] "'When a man is tired of Ankh-Morpork, he is tired of ankle-deep slurry.'"

The original quote here dates back to 1777, and is by Samuel Johnson (a well-known harmless drudge): "When a man is tired of London he is tired of life; for there is in London all that life can afford."

Quite a few people have mistaken this quote for a reference to Douglas Adams. Of course Adams was simply parodying Johnson's quote as well when he wrote (in Chapter 4 of *The Restaurant at the End of the Universe*):

"[...] when a recent edition of *Playbeing* magazine headlined an article with the words 'When you are tired of Ursa Minor Beta you are tired of life', the suicide rate there quadrupled overnight."

- [p. 195/159] "'Alligator sandwich,' he said. 'And make it sna--'"

Refers to an old playground one-liner: "give me an alligator sandwich and make it snappy!". Terry uses this joke in a different context in *Witches Abroad* (see the annotation for p. 176/154 of that book).

- [p. 197/161] "'Fireworks?' Cutwell had said."

The stuff about wizards knowing all about fireworks is a reference to Tolkien's *The Hobbit*, where the great Wizard Gandalf was famed (in times of peace) for entertaining everybody with fireworks.

- [p. 212/172] In the Disc model, Ankh-Morpork was a carbuncle.

A carbuncle is (1) a red semiprecious gem, and (2) a festering sore like a boil.

- [p. 221/180] "Alberto Malich, Founder of This University."

Albert's name resonates slightly with our world's Albertus Magnus (also known as Albert the Great). Albertus Magnus (born in 1193 in Laufingen at the Donau, Germany), became known as 'the Magician' and was probably the most famous priest, philosopher and scientist of his time. Amongst other things he taught at the University of Paris, was Bishop of Regensburg, and at the age of 84 he again undertook the long journey from Cologne to Paris to defend the scientific work of his greatest student, Thomas Aquinas, against attacks and misunderstandings.

- [p. 224/183] "I don't even **remember** walking under a mirror."

Superstition says that both walking under a ladder and breaking a mirror give bad luck. Therefore, by the sort of skewed logic Terry continually gives to his characters, walking under a mirror must be **really** bad news.

- [p. 226/184] "[...] purposes considerably more dire than, say, keeping a razor blade nice and sharp."

See the annotation for p. 35/35 of *_The Light Fantastic_*.

- + [p. 240/196] "He remembered being summoned into reluctant existence at the moment the first creature lived, in the certain knowledge that he would outlive life until the last being in the universe passed to its reward, when it would then be his job, figuratively speaking, to put the chairs on the tables and turn all the lights off."

Three years later, in 1990, Neil Gaiman's *Death* says, in the story 'Facade':

"When the first living thing existed, I was there, waiting. When the last living thing dies, my job will be finished. I'll put the chairs on the tables, turn out the lights and lock the universe behind me when I leave."

- [p. 255/208] "IS THIS THE FACE THAT LAUNCHED A THOUSAND SHIPS, AND BURNED THE TOPLESS TOWERS OF PSEUDOPOLIS? wondered Death."

A reference to Helen of Troy (or Tsort, I suppose I should say), over whom the Trojan War was started. The exact original quote, from Christopher Marlowe's *_The Tragical History of Dr. Faustus_*, goes:

"Was this the face that launched a thousand ships,
And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?
Sweet Helen, make me immortal with a kiss!"

Ilium is the Latin name for Troy.

- + [p. 271/221] "'_Only Ysabell said that since you turned the glass over that means I shall die when I'm--' YOU HAVE SUFFICIENT, said Death coldly. MATHEMATICS ISN'T ALL IT'S CRACKED UP TO BE._"

Except that the events detailed in *_Soul Music_* imply that Ysabell was right in this case ("After that, it was a matter of math. And the Duty.")...

SOURCERY

- [p. 8/10] "'My son,' he said. 'I shall call him Coin.'"

A pun on the English boy's name 'Colin', with a nod to the expression "to coin a phrase".

- [p. 12/14] "[...] this was a bit more original than the usual symbolic chess game [...]"

This subject comes up every now and again on [alt.fan.pratchett](#), so it is

time for an annotation to settle this matter for once and for all:
playing (chess) games with Death is a *very* old concept, that goes back much further than both Ingmar Bergman's famous 1957 movie *The Seventh Seal*, or Chris deBurgh's less famous 1975 song 'Spanish Train' (which describes a poker game between God and the Devil).

- [p. 22/22] "It was quite possible that it was a secret doorway to fabulous worlds [...]"

A reference to C. S. Lewis's classic fantasy story *The Lion, The Witch and the Wardrobe*, in which the heroes are magically transported to the Land of Narnia through the back of an old wardrobe, which was made from a tree that grew from the seeds of a magical apple taken from that Land long before.

- [p. 28/28] "'I saw this picture of a sourcerer in a book. He was standing on a mountain top waving his arms and the waves were coming right up [...]"

Probably a reference to a famous scene from the 'Sorcerer's Apprentice' segment in Disney's 1940 film *Fantasia*. The "sourcerer" being in fact the Apprentice, Mickey, dreaming of commanding the wind to blow, the waves to wave, the stars to fall, and so on.

Some people were also reminded of Prospero in Shakespeare's *The Tempest*.

- [p. 44/42] "'Psst,' it said. 'Not very,' said Rincewind [...], 'but I'm working on it.'"

Play on the word 'pissed', common British/Australian (but apparently not American) slang for 'drunk'.

- [p. 51/48] "*Of all the disreputable taverns in all the city you could have walked into, you walked into his*, complained the hat."

Paraphrases Humphrey Bogart's famous line from *Casablanca*: "Of all the gin joints in all the towns in all the world, she walks into mine."

- [p. 55/52] "By the way, the thing on the pole isn't a sign. When they decided to call the place the Troll's Head, they didn't mess about."

The reference is to traditional British pub names like King's Head, Queen's Head or Nag's Head, all occurring quite frequently, where the appropriate head (a nag being a horse) is displayed on a sign outside, often on a pole before the building.

- + [p. 66/61] "The study of genetics on the Disc had failed at an early stage, when wizards tried the experimental crossing of such well known subjects as fruit flies and sweet peas. Unfortunately they didn't grasp the fundamentals, and the resultant offspring -- a sort of green bean thing that buzzed -- led a short sad life before being eaten by a passing spider."

Sweet peas were used by Mendel in his early genetic experiments. Fruit flies are used in contemporary genetics. Among the 'fundamentals' that the wizards failed to grasp is of course the fact that you can only cross individuals *within* each species, not *across*.

However, I was told that in 1991 (three years after Sourcery) an article was published in which a team of geneticists write about a certain transposon that seemed to be common to both maize and fruit flies, implying that it might be possible to have some form of horizontal transmission between vegetable and animal DNA, after all.

+ [p. 69/64] "'_Anus mirabilis?_'"

"Annus mirabilis" translates to "year of wonder". "*Anus* mirabilis" does not.

Brewer mentions that the year of wonder in question is actually known to be 1666, "memorable for the great fire of London and the successes of our arms over the Dutch."

+ [p. 71/66] "'From these walls,' said Carding, 'Two hundred supreme mages look down upon you.'"

Napoleon, to his troops just before the Battle of the Pyramids: "From the summit of these pyramids, forty centuries look down upon you".

- [p. 75/69] "'[...] that would be the Patrician, Lord Vetinari,' said Carding with some caution."

A sideways pun (via 'veterinary') on the name of the famous de Medici family, who were the enlightened rulers of Renaissance Florence.

During one of those interminable "which actor should play which Discworld character if there was a movie?" discussions, Terry gave some insight in how he himself visualises the Patrician:

"I can't remember the guy's name, but I've always pictured the Patrician as looking like the father in Beetlejuice -- the man also played the Emperor of Austria in Amadeus. And maybe slightly like the head bad guy in Die Hard."

The actors Terry is thinking of are Jeffrey Jones and Alan Rickman, respectively.

- [p. 76/70] "[...] his chair at the foot of the steps leading up to the throne, [...]"

In Tolkien's The Lord of the Rings, the Stewards of Gondor also sat on a chair on the steps below the real throne, awaiting the return of the king. The prophecy in that case also included a magic sword, although Tolkien neglects to make any mention of a strawberry-shaped birthmark.

Other occurrences of the legend can be found in Robert Jordan's The Wheel of Time epic fantasy series, in Raymond E. Feist's Prince of the Blood, and in David Eddings' Belgariad quintet.

This is undoubtedly one of those cases where everybody is drawing on a much older idea. Legends about kings, swords and birthmarks are of course legion, although I must admit that so far I haven't been able to actually find an occurrence of the 'chair below the real throne' concept outside of contemporary fiction.

- [p. 76/70] "[...] the sort of man you'd expect to keep a white cat, and caress it idly while sentencing people to death in a piranha tank [...]"

A reference to Ernst Stavro Blofeld, leader of SPECTRE and arch enemy of James Bond.

- [p. 88/81] "The market in Sator Square, the wide expanse of cobbles outside the black gates of the University, was in full cry."

The word 'Sator' refers to a famous magic square (magic square, get it?) dating back to the times of the spread of Christianity in Europe. 'Sator' means sower or farmer. The complete square is:

S A T O R
A R E P O
T E N E T
O P E R A
R O T A S

This square is palindromic in all directions. The sentence you get reads: _Sator Arepo Tenet Opera Rotas_, which means, more or less: "The sower [i.e. God] in his field controls the workings of his tools [i.e. us]". Some correspondents questioned the correctness of this translation, so if anyone has a good reference to something else I'd love to hear it.

The magic Sator square also has the property that it can be 'unfolded' into two "A PATER NOSTER O" strings that form a cross with the 'N' as a pivot element (sorry, proper graphics will have to wait until a future edition of the APF). The 'A' and the 'O' stand for alpha and omega.

- [p. 107/98] "'And I seem to remember he spoke very highly of the *soak*. It's a kind of bazaar.'"

Punning on 'souk', meaning a Middle Eastern marketplace; and the verb 'soak', meaning to charge (and get) exorbitant prices.

- [p. 122/110] "the kind of spaghetti that would make M. C. Escher go for a good lie down [...]"

Maurits C. Escher: Dutch (yeah!) graphic artist of this century, well-known for his tangled, paradoxical pictures of optical illusions and plane-filling tilings. Read Douglas Hofstadter's _Goedel, Escher, Bach_ for much, much more information.

- [p. 122/111] "'It looks like someone has taken twice five miles of inner city and girded them round with walls and towers,' he hazarded."

From Samuel Taylor Coleridge's poem _Kubla Khan_:

"So twice five miles of fertile ground
With walls and towers were girded round"

- [p. 122/111] "[...] 'sherbet and, and -- young women.'"

'Sherbet' is a cooling Oriental fruit drink (also a frozen dessert) as well as a fizzy sweet powder children eat as a sweet, and which comes in a cardboard tube with a liquorice 'straw' at the top. To get to the sherbet you bite off the end of the liquorice and suck through it. See

also the annotation for p. 104/104 of The Light Fantastic.

- [p. 125/113] "[...] pretty much of a miracle of rare device."

Coleridge's Kubla Khan:

"It was a miracle of rare device
A sunny pleasure-dome with caves of ice!"

- [p. 125/113] "My name is Creosote, Seriph of Al Khali, [...]"

Ok, lessee: Creosote parodies the proverbially rich Croesus (king of Lidya -- which lies in what is now Turkey -- in the 6th century BC), 'Serif' is a typographical term which also puns on 'caliph', and 'Al Khali' is pronounced 'alkali' (just covering all the bases here, as my original source put it), but probably refers to the Rub' al Khali desert in Arabia.

Creosote itself is actually the name for an oily liquid mixture of organic chemicals, resulting as a by-product from the industrial burning of coal or wood.

- [p. 126/114] The hashishim as the "original Assassins".

Brewer writes:

"*Assassins*. A band of Carmathians, collected by Hassa, subah of Nishapour, called the Old Man of the Mountains, because he made Mount Lebanon his stronghold. This band was the terror of the world for two centuries, when it was put down by Sultan Bibaris. The assassins indulged in *haschisch* (bang), an intoxicating drink, and from this liquor received their name."

For more information, see also the Hawkwind song 'Hassan I Sabbah' on their album Quark, Strangeness and Charm.

- [p. 126/114] Creosote's poetry is mostly based on Edward Fitzgerald's translation of the Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam. The poem parodied on this page goes:

"A book of verses underneath the bough
A jug of wine, a loaf of bread, and thou"

- [p. 127/115] "They spent simply ages getting the rills sufficiently sinuous."

Kubla Khan:

"And there were gardens bright with sinuous rills."

- + [p. 127/115] "Wild honey and locusts seem more appropriate, [...]"

Because John the Baptist ate those, according to Matthew 3:4 (also Mark 1:6): "And the same John had his raiment of camel's hair, and a leathern girdle about his loins; and his meat was locusts and wild honey."

In order to avoid confusion it should perhaps be pointed out that the locusts in question are the seeds of honey locust trees, also known as

carob and (from this story, of course) St. John's Bread.

- [p. 127/115] ""You can't play a dulcimer, by any chance?""

Kubla Khan:

"It was an Abyssinian maid,
And on her dulcimer she played."

- [p. 128/116] ""Has anyone ever told you your neck is as a tower of ivory?""

This, and Creosote's further compliments to Conina ("your hair is like a flock of goats that graze upon the side of Mount Gebra", "your breasts are like the jewelled melons in the fabled gardens of dawn", etc.) are all very similar to the compliments in the Biblical 'Song of Solomon':

"Behold, thou art fair, my love; behold, thou art fair;
thou hast doves' eyes within thy locks:
thy hair is as a flock of goats, that appear from mount Gilead."

"Thy neck is like the tower of David builded for an armoury,
whereon there hang a thousand bucklers,
all shields of mighty men."

"Thy two breasts are like two young roes that are twins,
which feed among the lilies."

I did an electronic search across the entire King James bible for "jewelled melons", but those appear to be an invention of Creosote's. Fine by me -- I was already slightly shocked to find out that "thy hair is as a flock of goats" was a genuine Biblical compliment and not something Terry had made up.

- [p. 129/117] "Get up! For the morning in the cup of day, / Has dropped the spoon that scares the stars away."

The _Rubaiyat_:

"Awake! for morning in the bowl of night
Hath flung the stone that puts the stars to flight."

- [p. 130/118] "[...] a falling apple or a boiling kettle or the water slopping over the edge of the bath."

A falling apple supposedly helped Newton discover the Law of Gravity, a boiling kettle helped Watt revolutionise the steam engine (see also the annotation for p. 175/153 of _Reaper Man_), and Archimedes, according to legend, discovered the principles of fluid displacement while taking a bath.

- [p. 132/119] "The Seriph's palace, known to legend as the Rhoxie, [...]"

No connection to the original Croesus here, but rather to the Alhambra, the palace of the Emirs of Granada in 15th century Spain. As Terry says:

"Incidentally, the Seriph's palace, the Rhoxie, is indeed a 'resonance' with the Alhambra -- a famous Moorish palace which became a synonym for

an impressive building, and later became a common cinema name as in Odeon and, yes, Roxy."

- [p. 141/127] "Nijel the Destroyer" may be a suitably heroic-looking name, but 'Nijel' is of course pronounced as 'Nigel', a name that is traditionally associated with wimpy rather than with heroic males.

- [p. 142/129] "'For example, do you know how many trolls it takes to change a lamp-wick?'"

Someone, somewhere, hasn't heard of the "How many <insert ethnic group> does it take to change a light-bulb?"-jokes this is a reference to. This annotation is for him/her.

- [p. 142/129] "'[...] it's more than just pointing a finger at it and saying "Kazam--"'"

Captain Marvel, an American comic book character was able to transform himself into his superhero alter-ego by saying the magic word 'Shazam'.

- [p. 154/139] "[...] the Librarian dropped on him like the descent of Man."

Reference to Charles Darwin's landmark 1871 book The Descent of Man.

- [p. 162/147] "'He asked me to tell him a story.'"

This is the first, but not the last time in the book that Creosote asks Conina for a story. This refers to 1001 Nights, and the stories Scheherezade had to tell every night to *her* Caliph, Harun al-Rashid.

- [p. 167/151] "'I'm looking up the Index of Wandering Monsters', said Nijel."

'Wandering Monsters' is a phrase that comes from the world of fantasy role-playing games such as Dungeons And Dragons, and it more or less means just what you think it means. Nijel is of course exactly the type of stereotypical nerd who would, in our world, actually play D&D.

- [p. 171/154] "'It have thee legges of an mermade, the hair of an tortoise, the teeth of an fowel, and the wings of an snake.'"

More reputable witnesses than Broomfog describe the chimera or chimaera (from Greek mythology) as a fire-breathing monster having either the hindquarters of a serpent and the head of a lion on the body of a goat, or else the back of a goat, the wings of a dragon, the front half of a lion, and three heads (one each for goat, lion and dragon).

Woody Allan somewhere describes a mythical beast called the Great Roe, which has "the head of lion and the body of a lion, only not the same lion".

- [p. 185/167] "Next to it was a small, sleek oil lamp and [...] a small gold ring."

The magic lamp and magic ring, which summon a demon when rubbed, appear in the legend of Aladdin. On p. 208/187 Creosote tells the story of how "one day this wicked old pedlar came round offering new lamps for old

[...]" This is also part of the original Aladdin fairy tale, an online version of which you can find at the URL:

gopher://wiretap.spies.com:70/00/Library/Classic/aladdin.txt

+ [p. 210/189] "It was a Fullomyth, an invaluable aid [...]"

Refers to the 'Filofax' system: a small notebook (the more expensive versions are leather-bound) with loose-leaf information sheets, diary, calendar, notes, wine lists, London underground maps, etc. In the UK the Filofax at one time became the badge of the stereotypical 80s Yuppie, seen working in London's "square mile", walking around with a mobile phone clamped to his ear while referring to his Filofax to find a free appointment. Hence the Genie: "'Let's do lunch...'"

- [p. 215/193] "'Like not thinking about pink rhinoceroses,' said Nijel [...]"

I always thought that the impossibility of trying not to think of something specific was a general concept, but a correspondent informs me that the writer Tolstoy actually founded a club as a boy, which you could be admitted to if you managed a test. The test was to sit in a corner, and **not** think of a white bear.

- [p. 215/193] Significant Quest --> Trivial Pursuit.

+ [p. 227/204] "Other things besides the cream floated to the top, he reflected sourly."

Another Tom Swifty, as per the annotation for p. 26/26 of *_The Light Fantastic_*.

+ [p. 230/207] "'The world, you see, that is, the reality in which we live, in fact it can be thought of as, in a manner of speaking, a rubber sheet.'"

Ovin is modifying Einstein's explanation of gravity for a magical setting. See also the annotation for p. 134/128 of *_Pyramids_*.

- [p. 236/212] "'We are poor little ... unidentified domesticated animals ... that have lost our way ...' he quavered."

'Sheep' was **almost** right. The exact song the horsemen are trying to sing goes:

"We're poor little lambs, that have lost our way"
CHORUS: "Baaa, baa, baa."

and is a favourite of the highly drunk.

- [p. 245/221] "'It's not that, then?'"

In all editions of this novel I am aware of (UK Corgi paperback, UK Gollancz hardcover, US Signet paperback) this line is printed in a plain font. It seems logical, however, that the line is said by Pestilence and should therefore have been in italics.

- [p. 257/232] "'Oh, yes. It's vital to remember who you really are. It's

very important. It isn't a good idea to rely on other people or things to do it for you, you see. They always get it wrong."

Rincewind, nerving himself up to distract the Things in the Dungeon Dimensions so that Coin can escape, is anticipating Granny Weatherwax in this little speech. The theme is clearly important to Terry from the humanist angle, but its roots are in the occult -- actively holding in mind who and what you are is a traditional exercise in a number of mystical teachings. Note that this statement is the result of the inspiration particle which hit Rincewind on p. 165/149.

- [p. 259/233] "For a moment the ape reared against the darkness, the shoulder, elbow and wrist of his right arm unfolding in a poem of applied leverage, and in a movement as unstoppable as the dawn of intelligence brought it down very heavily."

This is a rather subtle reference to the scene with the bone and tapir skull in the 'Dawn of Man' portion of Kubrick and Clarke's movie 2001: A Space Odyssey.

WYRD SISTERS

+ Wyrd Sisters

In Macbeth, the three witches are sometimes called the weird sisters, e.g. act 2, scene 1: (Banquo) "I dreamt last night of the three weird sisters [...]"; or act 4, scene 1: (Macbeth) "Saw you the weird sisters?" (Lennox) "No, my lord."

But there's a bit more to it than just the Macbeth reference. 'Wyrd' is the Norse concept of destiny or fate, as embodied by the Norns (who probably inspired the Witches in Macbeth). Since 'weird' to a modern reader just means 'strange', it's easy to miss the overtones of the title and just assume that it's an Old spelling of 'weird'.

- [p. 5/5] "'When shall we three meet again?'"

Macbeth, act 1, scene 1, first line. The entire opening scene of Wyrd Sisters is of course a direct parody on the opening scene of Macbeth.

- [p. 5/5] "Gods prefer simple, vicious games, where you Do Not Achieve Transcendence but Go Straight To Oblivion; [...]"

Probably the most famous Chance (or Community Chest) card in Monopoly: "GO TO JAIL -- Go directly to Jail. Do not pass Go. Do not collect \$200.". (or 200 pounds, or 200 guilders, or 200 of whatever currency you care to name).

- [p. 7/7] "The junior witch, whose name was Magrat Garlick, relaxed considerably."

Terry says: "Magrat is pronounced Magg-rat. Doesn't matter what I think is right -- *everyone* I've heard pronounce it has pronounced it Maggrat."

"In Margaret Murray's book "The Witch Cult in Western Europe" you will find a number of Magrats and Magrets, and a suggestion that they were not

misspellings but an earlier form of Margaret; also in the lists of those arraigned for witchcraft are the surnames Garlick, Device and Nutter. No Oggs or Weatherwax's, though."

- [p. 8/8] "Meanwhile King Verence, monarch of Lancre, was making a discovery."

There exists a book entitled Servants of Satan, which is about the history of witch hunts. It contains the following paragraph:

"This brings us back to Pierre de Lancre. He became convinced that Basque women were an immoral and unfaithful lot when observing their social arrangements during his witch-hunting expedition. De Lancre was especially horrified at the leadership roles in religious services taken by Basque women, the very women among whom witchcraft was rife..."

Terry comments: "I'm astonished. I've never heard of the guy, and I'm reasonably well-read in that area. But it *is* a lovely coincidence."

It may also not be entirely a coincidence that 'Lancre' is a common way of referring to Lancashire, the county where the famous 17th century witch trials were held (see the annotation for p. 78/57 of Lords and Ladies).

- + [p. 11/10] "NO PREMONITIONS? STRANGE DREAMS? MAD OLD SOOTHSAYERS SHOUTING THINGS AT YOU IN THE STREET?"

Refers to the famous "Beware the ides of March" warning in Shakespeare's Julius Caesar, act 1, scene 2.

- [p. 14/14] "'Can you tell by the pricking of your thumbs?' said Magrat earnestly."

Macbeth, act 4, scene 1: (2 Witch) "By the pricking of my thumbs, Something wicked this way comes [...]"

Keep an eye on Macbeth, act 4, scene 1. It's one of Terry's favourites in Wyrd Sisters.

- + [p. 19/19] "Duke Felmet stared out gloomily at the dripping forest."

Felmet's dislike of the forest resonates with the prophecy foretelling Macbeth had nothing to fear until Birnam wood itself would march against him.

- + [p. 20/20] "There had been something about him being half a man, and... infirm on purpose?"

Infirm *of* purpose, is what Lady Macbeth calls her husband in Macbeth, act 2, scene 2.

- [p. 20/20] "[...] with nothing much to do but hunt, drink and exercise his droit de seigneur."

'Droit de seigneur' or 'jus primae noctae' ('right of first night'): a custom alleged to have existed in medieval Europe giving the lord of the land the right to sleep the first night with the bride of any one of his vassals. The evidence for this custom deals with redemption dues which

were paid to avoid its enforcement. It probably existed as a recognised custom in parts of France and possibly Italy and Germany, but not elsewhere.

+ [p. 22/21] "[...] an architect who had heard about Gormenghast but hadn't got the budget."

Gormenghast is the ancient, decaying castle from Mervyn Peake's Gormenghast trilogy. See also the annotation for p. 17/17 of Pyramids.

- [p. 22/22] "'There is a knocking without,' he said."

In act 2 of Macbeth, scenes 2 and 3 have a lot of [Knocking within] in the stage directions.

+ [p. 25/25] "'How many times have you thrown a magic ring into the deepest depths of the ocean and then, when you get home and have a nice bit of turbot for your tea, there it is?'"

Nanny's ring story is a well-known folk tale that goes back as least as far as Herodotus, but has also been used by e.g. Tolkien and Jack Vance.

More interesting is that at least one non-Brit over on alt.fan.pratchett had some trouble making sense of the implied connection between the concepts of 'turbot' and 'tea'. What he did not realise was that 'tea' is the term the British tend to use for any meal taken between 4.30 and 7 pm, which may therefore include a nice, juicy turbot.

+ [p. 26/26] "'You'd have to be a born fool to be a king,' said Granny."

I must have read Wyrd Sisters close to twenty times by now, and except for the last time this nice bit of foreshadowing completely passed me by.

- [p. 30/30] "'All the women are played by men.'"

For those who do not know: in Shakespeare's time this was indeed the case; no women were allowed on stage.

+ [p. 35/35] "He'd tried to wash the blood off his hand."

Obvious, because very well known, but since I'm annotating all the other Shakespeare references, I might as well point out here that Felmet's attempts to wash the blood from his hands echo Lady Macbeth's actions in Macbeth after the killing of Duncan in act 5, scene 1: "Out, damned spot!", etc.

- [p. 36/35] The Hedgehog Can Never Be Buggered At All

Terry invented this title; he has **not** written any words to it (apart from the fragments that appear in the novels); but many fans (including a folk singer called Heather Wood) have; and there **did** turn out to exist an old Oxford drinking song that also uses the key phrase of the hedgehog song. See the Song... section in Chapter 5 for one documented version of that song. Terry pleads parallel evolution, and observes that: "There is a certain, how shall I put it, natural cadence to the words."

Readers of alt.fan.pratchett have also engaged in a collective

songwriting effort, the results of which can be found in the Pratchett Archives (see Chapter 6 for details), in the file /pub/pratchett/misc/hedgehog-song. See also Chapter 5 for a sample.

- [p. 50/49] "Nanny Ogg also kept a cat, a huge one-eyed grey tom called Greebo [...]"

'Greebo' is a word that was widely used in the early seventies to describe the sort of man who wanders around in oil-covered denim and leather (with similar long hair) and who settles disagreements with a motorcycle chain -- the sort who would like to be a Hell's Angel but doesn't have enough style.

- + [p. 50/50] "'Well met by moonlight,' said Magrat politely. 'Merry meet. A star shines on --'"

Magrat's first greeting comes from A Midsummer Night's Dream: "Ill met by moonlight, proud Titania". See also the annotation for p. 350/252 of Lords and Ladies.

From Tolkien's The Lord of the Rings comes the Elvish greeting: "A star shines on the hour of our meeting".

- [p. 53/53] "'Every inch a king,' said Granny."

A quote from King Lear, act 4, scene 6.

- + [p. 58/58] "'A Wizard of Sorts,' Vitoller read. 'Or, Please Yourself.'"

Not quite a Shakespeare title, but Please Yourself refers to both As You Like It and the subtitle of Twelfth Night: "Or What You Will".

- [p. 60/60] "It was the cats and the roller skates that were currently giving him trouble..."

Refers to the Andrew Lloyd Webber musicals Cats and Starlight Express.

- + [p. 61/60] "However, in Bad Ass a cockerel laid an egg and had to put up with some very embarrassing personal questions."

Legend has it that from an egg laid by a cockerel and hatched by a serpent, a cockatrice (also known as a basilisk) will spawn. Since the cockatrice is a monster with the wings of a fowl, the tail of a dragon, and the head of a cock, whose very look causes instant death, it should be clear that such an egg would be a very bad omen indeed.

- [p. 65/65] "'Is this a dagger I see before me?' he mumbled."

From what is probably the most famous soliloquy in Macbeth: act 2, scene 1. See also the annotation for p. 184/183.

- [p. 68/67] "The stone was about the same height as a tall man, [...]"

This is a reference to the Rollright stones near Chipping Norton in the UK, which according to legend can not be accurately counted.

- [p. 75/74] "A faint glow beyond the frosted panes suggested that, against all reason, a new day would soon dawn."

The first scene of the first act of Shakespeare's *_Hamlet_* starts at midnight, and describes a scene lasting about fifteen minutes -- yet the act ends at dawn. Likewise, the summoning of WxrtHltl-jwlpklz the demon takes place at night, but ends with the quote given above.

- [p. 84/83] "[...] its eyes two yellow slits of easy-going malevolence [...]"

In earlier editions of the APF this was flagged as one of Terry's major inconsistencies. After all, Greebo is supposed to have only **one** eye.

But since then, Terry has explained on a.f.p: "Greebo is loosely modelled on a real cat I knew when I was a kid -- he had two eyes, but one was sort of pearly coloured. He's **blind** in one eye."

- [p. 88/87] "Magrat was picking flowers and talking to them."

What follows is a satire of the mad Ophelia in *_Hamlet_*: "There's rosemary, that's for remembrance; pray, love, remember: and there is pansies, that's for thoughts." (act 4, scene 5).

- [p. 95/94] "It's all very well calling for eye of newt, but do you mean Common, Spotted or Great Crested?"

Eye of Newt is one of the ingredients used by the witches in *_Macbeth_*, act 4, scene 1.

This scene also resonates very faintly with the famous running gag in the movie *_Monty Python and the Holy Grail_*:

Bridgekeeper: "What... is the air-speed velocity of an unladen swallow?"

Arthur: "What do you mean? An African or European swallow?"

Bridgekeeper: "Huh? I -- I don't know that! Auuuuuuuugh!"

- + [p. 103/103] "[...] (a dandelion clock at about 2 pm)."

For an explanation of the dandelion clock see the annotation for p. 10/10 of *_The Light Fantastic_*.

- [p. 108/107] "'Infirm of purpose!'"

Lady Macbeth says this in *_Macbeth_*, act 2, scene 2.

- [p. 108/108] "'[...] and **you** said, 'If it's to be done, it's better if it's done quickly', or something [...]"

*_Macbeth_*, act 1, scene 7: "If it were done when 'tis done, then 'twere well it were done quickly."

- [p. 109/108] "Granny glanced around the dungeon."

This is another misprint: it should be Nanny, not Granny. Terry says the error is not present in his own version of the text, but both the UK and

USA paperbacks have it.

- [p. 127/126] "[...] the land and the king are one."

A concept straight out of the Arthurian legends.

- + [p. 128/127] "[...] rose from the ditch like Venus Anadyomene, only older and with more duckweed."

Venus Anadyomene is the classical image of Venus rising from the sea (from which she was born), accompanied by dolphins. The name is given to the famous lost painting by Apelles, as well as to the one by Botticelli in the Accademia delle Belle Arti in Florence.

- [p. 133/132] "'I have no recollection of it at this time,' he murmured."

Duke Felmet is echoing the words of Richard Nixon's subordinates under questioning by the Senate Committee during the Watergate affair.

- [p. 134/133] "[...] whirl a farmhouse to any available emerald city of its choice."

A _Wizard of Oz_ reference.

- [p. 139/138] "'I mean, Black Aliss was one of the best.'"

My sources tell me that Black Annis is the name of a fearsome witch from Celtic/Saxon mythology.

- [p. 142/141] "Greebo's grin gradually faded, until there was nothing left but the cat. This was nearly as spooky as the other way round."

Refers to the Cheshire cat in Lewis Carroll's _Alice's Adventures in Wonderland_, a beast famous for slowly vanishing until only its grin remains.

- [p. 145/144] "[...] Herne the Hunted, the terrified and apprehensive deity of all small furry creatures [...]"

Herne the Hun*ter* is a spectral hunter of medieval legend, said to originally have been a keeper in Windsor Forest. Herne appears in many stories, varying from Shakespeare (who else) to the fairly recent ITV television series "Robin of Sherwood" (starring Jason "son of" Connery).

When alt.fan.pratchett readers mistakenly assumed that the reference *originated* from this series, Terry cautioned: "Be careful when reference spotting... Herne the Hunter certainly did turn up in the Robin of Sherwood series and on an album by 'Let's breathe romantically to music' group Clannad, but any passing pagan will tell you he goes back a lot, lot further than that."

Herne the Hunter also appears himself in _Lords and Ladies_. Here is some relevant information condensed from the book _The Western Way_ by John and Caitlin Matthews:

"Herne the Hunter / Cernunnos is God of green and growing things; huntsman, spirit of earth, birth and masculinity. Often pictured seated cross-legged with antlers on his brow, he is [...] tutelary deity of many

modern witch covens."

- + [p. 156/155] "[...] trying to find a laboratory opposite a dress shop that will keep the same dummy in the window for sixty years, [...]"

This refers to the 1960 movie version of H. G. Wells' *The Time Machine*, where the director uses the effect described to indicate the rapid passing of time.

- [p. 158/158] "He'd sorted out the falling chandelier, and found a place for a villain who wore a mask to conceal his disfigurement, [...]"

Describes *The Phantom of the Opera*, another musical by Andrew Lloyd Webber. See also the annotations for *Maskerade*.

- [p. 159/158] "[...] the hero had been born in a handbag."

The protagonist in Oscar Wilde's *The Importance of Being Earnest* was found, as a baby, in a handbag.

- + [p. 159/158] "It was the clowns who were giving him trouble again."

The clowns are the Marx Brothers. The third clown is Harpo, who never speaks, only honks ("business with bladder on a stick"). The short speech that follows, "This iss My Little Study..." is typical Groucho, and the "Atsa right, Boss" is Chico.

- + [p. 159/158] "_Thys ys amain Dainty Messe youe have got me into, Stanleigh_"

Laurel & Hardy. Laurel's first name was Stan. See also the annotation for p. 73/65 of *The Colour of Magic*.

- [p. 160/159] The Dysk.

The famous Globe Theatre (which was octagonal in form!) was built by Cuthbert Burbage on the Bankside in Southwark (London) in 1599. Shakespeare had a share in the theatre and acted there.

The Globe was destroyed by fire, rebuilt, and eventually completely demolished in 1644. Currently, The Globe is being rebuilt again by an American entrepreneur on the South Bank, a few hundred yards from its original site.

- [p. 162/161] "**All the disk is but an Theater*, he wrote, *Ane alle men and wymmen are but Players*. [...] *Sometimes they walke on. Sometimes they walke off*."

As You Like It, act 2, scene 7: "All the world's a stage, And all the men and women merely players: They have their exits and their entrances; [...]"

- + [p. 163/162] "I had this dream about a little bandy-legged man walking down a road."

I have resisted annotating this for 7 editions of the APF, but oh what the heck: Hwel is dreaming of Charlie Chaplin.

- [p. 165/164] ""I *said*, where's your pointy hat, dopey?""

Dopey is one of the seven dwarfs in Walt Disney's animated *Snow White*. Terry likes toying with Disney's dwarf names. See for instance the annotation for p. 324/271 of *Moving Pictures*.

- + [p. 167/166] ""_Brothers! And yet may I call all men brother, for on this night --_""

This is (in spirit) the St. Crispin's Day speech from *King Henry V*. See the annotation for p. 239/238.

- + [p. 182/181] "Double hubble, stubble trouble, Fire burn and cauldron bub---"

The witches in *Macbeth*, act 4, scene 1: "Double, double toil and trouble; Fire, burn; and, cauldron, bubble."

- [p. 169/168] "[...] go around with axes in their belts, and call themselves names like Timkin Rumbleguts."

This is a sarcastic comment on the behaviour of most generic fantasy dwarfs, but of course the main image it invokes is of classic Tolkien characters like Thorin Oakenshield, etc.

- [p. 173/172] ""We've got a special on GBH this season.""

The abbreviation GBH stands for Grievous Bodily Harm.

- [p. 178/177] "The play's the thing."

Puns on a well-known Shakespeare quote from *Hamlet* (act 2, scene 2):

"The play's the thing
Wherein I'll catch the conscience of the king"

If you have access to the Internet, you can find online versions of all of Shakespeare's plays at the URL:

<http://the-tech.mit.edu/Shakespeare/>

- [p. 179/178] ""I've got this idea about this ship wrecked on an island, where there's this--""

This can of course refer to a thousand movies or plays, but in view of the general influences for this book, I'd bet my money on Shakespeare's *The Tempest*.

- [p. 181/180] ""*Round about the cauldron go*, [...]"

What follows is a parody on *Macbeth*, act 4, scene 1, in which three witches boil up some pretty disgusting things in their cauldron. Try reading both versions side by side.

- [p. 182/181] "He punched the rock-hard pillow, and sank into a fitful sleep. Perchance to dream."

Taken from the famous "To be or not to be" soliloquy in *Hamlet*.

+ [p. 183/182] "KING: Now if I could just find my horsey..."

Hwel's script is Richard III done as a Punch-and-Judy show.

- [p. 184/183] "Is this a duck I see before me, its beak pointing at me?"

Macbeth, act 2, scene 1 again. See the annotation for p. 65/65.

- [p. 186/185] "Leonard of Quirm. He's a painter, really."

Refers to Leonardo da Vinci, who also worked on (but didn't succeed in building) a flying machine.

+ [p. 186/185] "We grow old, Master Hwel. [...] We have heard the gongs at midnight."

Shakespeare again: King Henry IV, part 2, act 3, scene 2:

"FALSTAFF: Old, old, Master Shallow. [...] We have heard the chimes at midnight, Master Shallow."

+ [p. 189/188] "'There's many a slip twixt dress and drawers.'"

A Nanny Ogg variant on the saying "There's many a slip 'tween the cup and the lip".

+ [p. 189/188] "'A week is a long time in magic,' said Nanny."

Sir Harold Wilson: "A week is a long time in politics".

- [p. 193/192] "1ST WITCHE: He's late. (Pause)" [Etc.]

Parodies Samuel Beckett's classic play Waiting for Godot, where similar dialogue occurs.

- [p. 199/198] "'Did you know that an adult male carries up to five pounds of undigested red meat in his intestines at all times?'"

Stereotypical (but basically true) propaganda that radical vegetarians like to quote in order to gross people out and get them to stop eating meat (of course, the average vegetarian has about five pounds of undigested vegetable matter in his intestines). The cliché is used fairly often, amongst other places in the movie Beverly Hills Cop.

Terry had this to say on the subject: "Yep. That one I got from some way out vegetarian stuff I read years ago, and went round feeling ill about for days. And two years ago I saw Beverly Hills Cop on TV and rejoiced when I heard the line. God, I wish I'd seen the film before I'd written Guards! Guards!... I'd have had someone out on stake-duty on horseback, and someone creep up behind them with a banana..."

Note that in Men at Arms, the second City Watch book, Terry does manage to work in a Beverly Hills Cop joke. See the annotation for p. 251/190 of Men At Arms.

- [p. 207/206] "'All hail wossname,' she said under her breath, 'who shall be king here, after.'"

Macbeth, act 1, scene 2: "All hail, Macbeth; that shalt be king hereafter!"

- [p. 208/207] "'Is anyone sitting here?'" he said."

Macbeth, act 3, scene 4:

Macbeth: 'The table's full.'
Lennox: 'Here is a place reserv'd, sir.'
Macbeth: 'Where?'

Visible only to Macbeth the ghost of Banquo is sitting in his chair.

- [p. 211/210] "'We're scheming evil secret black and midnight hags!'"

Macbeth, act 4, scene 1: "How now, you secret, black, and midnight hags!" See also the annotation for p. 186/152 of _Mort_.

- [p. 212/211] "'I never shipwrecked anybody!' she said."

Neither did the three witches from _Macbeth_, if you read carefully, but I nevertheless think there is a reference here: act 1, scene 3.

- [p. 213/212] "I'd like to know if I could compare you to a summer's day. Because -- well, June 12th was quite nice, and ..."

One of Shakespeare's more famous sonnets (Sonnet XVIII, to be precise) starts out:

"Shall I compare thee to a summer's day? Thou art more lovely and more temperate"

- [p. 213/212] "'But I never walked like that! Why's he got a hump on his back? What's happened to his leg?'"

A reference to Richard the Third. A rather appropriate reference: in Shakespeare's _King Richard III_, he is presented as an evil, lame, hunchbacked king, whom Henry must kill to save England. This is not historically correct -- rather it is how Henry would have liked people to remember it. Had Shakespeare strayed from the 'official' version he would have found himself in deep trouble with Henry's heirs -- royalty was taken seriously in those days.

+ [p. 213/213] "'It's art,' said Nanny. 'It wossname, holds a mirror up to life.'"

Hamlet, act 3, scene 2: "To hold, as 'twere, the mirror up to nature; to show virtue her own feature, scorn her own image, and the very age and body of the time his form and pressure."

- [p. 214/213] "'Ditch-delivered by a drabe', they said."

One of the ingredients in _Macbeth_, act 4, scene 1 is a "finger of birth-strangled babe, ditch-delivered by a drabe".

+ [p. 225/225] "--THE NEXT NIGHT IN YOUR DRESSING ROOM THEY HANG A STAR--"

Death is quoting from 'There's No Business Like Show Business', the song from the Irvin Berlin musical Annie Get Your Gun, also performed by Ethel Merman in the 1954 movie There's No Business Like Show Business.

- [p. 227/226] "[...] who would have thought he had so much blood in him?"

Lady Macbeth in Macbeth, act 5, scene 1: "Yet who would have thought the old man to have had so much blood in him".

+ [p. 235/234] "Like Bognor."

Bognor Regis is a town on the south coast of England, between Brighton and Portsmouth. A sleepy seaside resort, it is best-known for King George V's attributed last words, supposedly said after his physician told him he would soon be brought to Bognor to convalesce: "Bugger Bognor!".

- [p. 236/235] "Can you remember what he said after all those tomorrows?"

Macbeth, act 5, scene 5, from another famous soliloquy:

"To-morrow, and to-morrow, and to-morrow,
Creeps in this petty pace from day to day,
To the last syllable of recorded time;
And all our yesterdays have lighted fools
The way to dusty death. Out, out brief candle!
Life's but a walking shadow; a poor player
That struts and frets his hour upon the stage,
And then is heard no more: it is a tale
Told by an idiot, full of sound and fury,
Signifying nothing."

+ [p. 239/238] "They were far more the type of kings who got people to charge into battle at five o'clock in the morning..."

Shakespeare's Henry V was just such a king, and Terry is referring here to the 'St. Crispin's Day' speech in King Henry V, act 4, scene 3:

And gentlemen in England now a-bed
Shall think themselves accurs'd they were not here
And hold their manhoods cheap, while any speaks
That fought with us upon St. Crispin's day!

PYRAMIDS

+ [p. 5/5] The Titles of the Books

Pyramids is split into four 'Books', a structure that gives it a unique position amongst the otherwise chapterless Discworld novels (The Colour of Magic doesn't really count -- it's a collection of linked novellas, not a single novel with chapters or sections).

Book I is The Book of Going Forth, which refers to The Book of Going Forth By Day, (see the annotation for p. 9/9 of The Light Fantastic).

Book II is The Book of the Dead, a more direct reference to the Egyptian Book of the Dead. Book III is The Book of the New Son which puns on the title of the Gene Wolfe SF novel The Book of the New Sun.

(perhaps there is an earlier title both authors are drawing on, but I haven't been able to trace it). Book IV, finally, is *The Book of 101 Things A Boy Can Do*, which gives a nod to the typical titles sported a few decades ago by books containing wholesome, innocent, practical, but above all **educational** activities for children.

+ [p. 7/7] "[...] the only turtle ever to feature on the Hertzsprung-Russell Diagram, [...]"

The Hertzsprung-Russell diagram depicts the evolution of stars, plotting luminosity (how strongly they emit light) versus surface temperature (determined from their colour).

- [p. 8/8] "Some people think a giant dung beetle pushes it."

The ancient Egyptians did, for instance.

- [p. 10/10] "Morpork was twinned with a tar pit."

A reference to the concept of twin cities.

Following the horrors of the Second World War, and in the spirit of egalitarianism and common feeling for our fellow men which prevailed at that time, it was decided that the best way to cement bonds between the people of the world so that they would never **ever** even consider dropping big noisy things on each other again, was to have every town, village and (apparently) cowshed in Europe 'twinned' with an equivalent one which had previously been on the other side.

With these new-found unities, the merry laughing people of Europe would engage in fraternal and sporting activities, school-children would go on two-week exchange visits to discover that they couldn't stand sauerkraut, and the respective mayors of the towns would be able to present each other with touching and expensive symbols of international friendship and get in the local paper all on other peoples' money.

The most visible effect of this accord is the presumptuous little legend under the sign at the entrance to towns and villages saying "Little Puddlebury -- twinned with Obermacht am Rhein". Some towns (Croydon springs to mind) got a little over-enthusiastic about twinning, with the result that they are coupled to several towns, which makes the sign saying "Croydon welcomes careful drivers" look reminiscent of a seventeen-year-old's jacket at a Guns n' Roses concert.

You may -- or may not -- care to know that the UK town of Cowes has a twin relation with the New Zealand township of Bulls.

- [p. 11/11] "Teppic paused alongside a particularly repulsive gargoyle [...] He found himself drumming his fingers on the gargoyle, [...] Mericet appeared in front of him, wiping grey dust off his bony face."

It may not be immediately obvious from the text, but Mericet **was** the gargoyle. Teppic had been leaning on his camouflaged instructor all the time. This is another annotation which I am only putting in after repeated requests from readers. Personally, I feel that 'getting' this is simply a question of careful reading. But a quick straw poll of a.f.p. readers showed most were in favour of explicitly annotating it, so in it went.

Terry was once asked at a talk if he was always fully in control of his characters and events or if they tended to run away with him. The answer was: always in control -- with one single exception. The whole of the assassin examination sequence in Pyramids was written "almost in a trance" with no idea of what was to happen next. It is one of his favourite bits.

- [p. 12/12] Teppic's test.

Teppic's examination is heavily modelled on the British Driving test, which, as with the other important tests in British life such as 16- and 18-plus exams, undergraduate finals, and doctoral vitas is not actually intended to test whether you are actually any **good** at what is being tested, concentrating instead on your proficiency at following arbitrary instructions.

Many of the elements of a driving test are present in the passages which follow: The short list of questions, the sign on a small card (often held upside down), the clipboard. Mericet's rather stilted language, "Now, I want you to proceed at your own pace towards the Street of Book-keepers, obeying all signs and so forth", is almost a direct parody, as is the little speech at the end of the test. The 'Emergency Drop' (p. 42/42) is the 'Emergency Stop', where you have to stop the car "as if a child has run out into the road, while keeping control of the vehicle at all times". Finally, the back of the Highway Code has a table with minimum vehicle stopping distances, which examiners **almost** never ask about.

- [p. 14/14] "He [...] jumped a narrow gap on to the tiled roof of the Young Men's Reformed-Cultists-of-the-Ichor-God-Bel-Shamharoth Association gym, [...]"

Refers our world's YMCA youth hostels. YMCA stands for 'Young Men's Christian Association', and is often made fun of (e.g. Monthy Python and their 'Young Men's Anti-Christian Association').

See also the annotation for p. 88/88 of The Light Fantastic.

- [p. 15/15] "[...] the narrow plank bridge that led across Tinlid Alley."

In our world, Tin Pan Alley is the popular name for the area in New York City near 14th Street, where many publishers of popular songs had their offices in the late 19th / early 20th century. Aspiring composers would audition their new songs, and the din of so many songs being pounded out of pianos up and down the street gave the district its name. Another theory has it that the name derived from the rattling of tins by rivals when a performance was too loud and too protracted.

In England, Denmark Street, off Charing Cross Road, was also called Tin Pan Alley.

Today the phrase simply refers to the music publishing industry in general, and it is therefore no surprise that later, in Soul Music, we learn that the Guild of Musicians have their headquarters there.

- [p. 17/17] "Oh, Djelibeybi had been great once, [...]"

The name Djelibeybi puns on the sweets called Jelly Babies. See also the

annotation for p. 109/82 of Soul Music.

It has been remarked that there are quite a few parallels between the country of Djelibeybi and the castle of Gormenghast as described by Mervyn Peake in his Gormenghast trilogy (which we know Terry has read because in Equal Rites he compares Unseen University to Gormenghast, and in Wyrd Sisters he does the same with Lancre Castle). The hero of Gormenghast, Titus, also has a mother with a cat obsession, and his father died because he thought he was an owl. Furthermore, the atmosphere of decay, ancient history and unchanging ritual pervades both Djelibeybi and Gormenghast, with in both cases the presence of arbiters of tradition who are almost as powerful as (or even more so than) the actual ruler.

For those interested in pursuing Gormenghast further (people who have read it almost invariably seem to think it's a work of genius), the names of the three novels are Titus Groan (1946), Gormenghast (1950) and Titus Alone (1959, revised 1970).

- [p. 19/19] "[...] the Plague of Frog."

Refers to the Biblical 'Plague of Frogs' from Exodus.

+ [p. 20/20] On the subject of the Assassin's Guild School, Terry has this to say: "Yes, the whole setup of the Assassin's Guild school has, uh, a certain resonance with Rugby School in Tom Brown's Schooldays (note to Americans: a minor Victorian classic of school literature which no-one reads anymore and which is probably now more famous for the first appearance of the Flashman character subsequently popularised by George MacDonald Fraser)."

Teppic and his friends map directly to corresponding characters in Tom Brown's Schooldays: Teppic is Tom, Chidder is Harry "Scud" East, Arthur is George Arthur and Cheesewright is sort of Flashman, but not exactly.

The line on p. 27/26 about "If he invites you up for toast in his study, *don't go*," may refer to the incident where Tom is roasted in front of the fire by Flashy and his cronies. The reference to blanket-tossing on p. 45/44, which Arthur puts a stop to, is also an incident in Tom Brown, on Tom's first day. The scene in the dormitory on the first night, when Arthur gets down to say his prayers, also has an equivalent in the book.

- [p. 39/38] "Truly, the world is the mollusc of your choice..."

The oyster is, of course, a mollusc.

- [p. 45/44] "[...] the day when Fliemoe and some cronies had decided [...]"

Someone on a.f.p. noticed that 'Flymo' is a brand of lawnmower, and wondered if there was a connection. Terry replied:

"Er. I may as well reveal this one. That section of the book is 'somewhat like' Tom Brown's Schooldays. A bully (right hand man to the famous Flashman) was Speedicut. Speedicut is (was?) a name for a type of lawnmower -- I know, because I had to push the damn thing... Hence... Fliemoe.

Well, it's better than mugging old ladies..."

- [p. 45/44] "It transpired that he was the son of the late Johan Ludorum [...]."

At a British public school/grammar school sports day, the pupil who overall won the most, was declared 'Victor Ludorum' -- "Winner of the games".

- [p. 45/45] "He could send for Ptraci, his favourite handmaiden."

Should be pronounced with a silent 'p'. Note also that in the UK the name Tracey (Sharon, too) is often used to generically refer to the kind of girl immortalised in the "dumb blonde" jokes, or Essex Girl jokes as they are known in the UK.

This annotation may also help explain why over on alt.fan.pratchett people regularly and affectionately refer to their Favourite Author as 'Pterry' (although the lazier participants usually just refer to him as TP, conforming to the sometimes bloody annoying Usenet habit of acronymising everything longer than two words or four characters, whichever comes first. Hence DW stands for Discworld, TCOM for _The Colour of Magic_, and APF for Annotated Pratchett File -- but you already knew that).

I was later informed that 'Pterry' was also the name of a pterodactyl on a kids' TV program called _Jigsaw_, but as far as I can recall Terry's nickname was not coined with that in mind.

- [p. 50/49] "It's rather like smashing a sixer in conkers."

Conkers are the nuts of the Horse Chestnut -- not the one you eat, the other one with the really spiky outer covering. It is a regular autumn pass-time in England for school-boys to put conkers on the end of bits of string, and commence doing battle.

The game of conkers is played by two players, almost always by challenge. One player holds his conker up at arms length on the end of its bit of string, and the other player tries to swing his one with sufficient force to break the other player's conker. After a swing, roles are reversed. Since this is a virtually solely male sport, whose participants' average age is about seven (although there is a bunch of nutters who regularly get on local news programmes with their "world championship"), there is of course much potential for strategic 'misses' against the opponents knuckles, or indeed against almost any other part of his anatomy.

In the (rather unlikely, usually) event of one conker breaking the other one, the winning conker becomes a 'one-er'. A conker which has won twice, is a 'two-er'. Hence a 'sixer' (although it must be remembered that there are of course the usual collection of bogus seventeeners and sixty-seveners which circulate the black market of the playing field). There is a black art as to how to ensure that your conker becomes a sixer -- baking very slowly in the oven overnight, is one approach, as is soaking for a week in vinegar. Most of these methods tend to make the conkers, if anything, more rather than less brittle. There's probably a lesson for us all in there somewhere.

- [p. 50/49] The legend of Ankh-Morpork being founded by two orphaned

brothers who had been found and suckled by a hippopotamus refers to the legend of Romulus and Remus who were two orphaned brothers raised by a wolf, who later went on to found Rome (the brothers did, not the wolf).

- [p. 58/56] "Hoot Koomi, high priest of Khefin [...] stepped forward."

The name Koot Hoomi (or Kuthhumi) is a Sanskrit word that means 'teacher'.

Koot Hoomi is the author of a series of letters that were published as The Mahatma Letters To A. P. Sinnett, and which form the basis of many theosophical teachings.

- [p. 63/62] "'Look, master Dil,' said Gern, [...]"

Since not everyone is familiar with all those weird English food items, this is probably a good place to point out that there is a red line that runs from 'Dil the Embalmer' to 'Dill the Pickler' to 'dill pickle', a British delicacy.

- [p. 64/62] "'Get it? Your name in lights, see?'"

"Your name in lights" is generally a term indicative of achieved fame and success. In this context, however, not everybody may be aware that 'lights' is also a word originally describing the lungs of sheep, pigs, etc., but more generally used for all kinds of internal organs. Presumably Gern has taken various parts of the dead king and spelt out Dil's name.

- [p. 64/62] "'[...] I didn't think much of the Gottle of Geer routine, either.'"

Ventriloquists who want to demonstrate their skill will include the phrase "bottle of beer" as part of their patter. However, as it is impossible to pronounce the 'B' without moving your lips, it usually comes out as "gottle of geer". Gern has presumably been playing macabre ventriloquism games with the corpse.

- [p. 64/63] "'Good big sinuses, which is what I always look for in a king.'"

In the process of embalming, the Egyptians removed the deceased's brain through the nose cavity. That's all I know about the process, and if it's all right with you people I'd rather keep it that way.

+ [p. 71/69] "'Do I really have to wear this gold mask?'"

Terry has confirmed that the scenes in which Dios dresses up Teppic in his King's outfit (starting with the Flail of Mercy and culminating in the Cabbage of Vegetative Increase) are a parody of the old BBC children's game show Crackerjack. In this show the contestants were asked questions, and for each correct answer they received a prize, which they had to hold on to. If they answered wrong, they were given a large cabbage, increasing the likelihood of dropping everything. The person left at the end who hadn't dropped anything won the game.

+ [p. 73/71] "'Interfamilial marriage is a proud tradition of our lineage,' said Dios."

Teppic is astonished to hear that his great-great-grandmother once declared herself male as a matter of political expediency. It was in fact indeed the custom of the Egyptians to marry their pharaohs to close relatives, and Hatshepsut, daughter of Thutmose I, wife and half-sister of Thutmose II, and mother-in-law of Thutmose III actually did proclaim herself king in order to seize the throne.

Incidentally, Dios is using the wrong word here: A marriage between relatives would be **intra*familial*, not **inter*familial*.

- [p. 90/87] "This thing could put an edge on a rolling pin."

See the annotation for p. 35/35 of *_The Light Fantastic_*. There's another more explicit reference on p. 140/134: "[...] contrary to popular opinion pyramids don't sharpen razor blades".

- [p. 95/91] "Squiggle, constipated eagle, wiggly line, hippo's bottom, squiggle' [...] the Sun God Teppic had Plumbing Installed and Scorned the Pillows of his Forebears."

The constipated eagle is obviously the plumbing system, but what not many people outside Britain will realise is that the hippo's bottom comes from an advert for Slumberdown beds, which featured a hippo sitting down next to a chick.

- [p. 95/92] Pteppic's dream about the seven fat and seven thin cows is a reference to the Bible's Joseph, who had to explain a similar dream (which did not have the bit about the trombone, though), to the Pharaoh. *_Pyramids_* is of course riddled with religious references, most of which are too obvious or too vague to warrant inclusion here.

+ [p. 100/97] "All things are defined by names. Change the name, and you change the thing."

This is a very ancient concept in magic and 'primitive' religions. Although I haven't asked him, I'm willing to bet money that Terry did **not** take his inspiration from Ursula Le Guin's *_A Wizard of Earthsea_*, despite the many e-mails I have received suggesting a connection.

For a definitive reference on this subject, read James George Frazer's *_The Golden Bough_*.

+ [p. 102/99] "[...] I am a stranger in a familiar land."

The phrase "stranger in a strange land" originates from the Bible, Exodus 2:22, "And she bare [Moses] a son, and he called his name Gershom: for he said, I have been a stranger in a strange land."

Since the "strange land" in question was Egypt, there's a nice resonance with *_Pyramids_* itself in Terry's use of the phrase.

These days, people may be more familiar with the quote as the title of Robert Heinlein's 60s cult science fiction book.

- [p. 109/105] ""*Doppelgangs*," he said."

Pun on the German word 'doppelgaenger', meaning 'body double'. Thanks to

dozens of bad sf-movies the word has entered the English language in the mostly sinister meaning of some metamorphic life form taking the shape of a human being.

- [p. 127/121] Notice the sound accompanying the pyramid flares. It phonetically spells 'Cheops'.
- [p. 134/128] "It seemed to Teppic that its very weight was deforming the shape of things, stretching the kingdom like a lead ball on a rubber sheet."

This metaphor ties in neatly with the quantum aspects of the Pyramids: rubber sheets distorted by balls are one popular way of visualising Einstein's general theory of relativity. The sheet represents the space-time-continuum, and the balls are bits of mass (like suns and planets). The balls press down and deform the space around them. When things try to move along the rubber sheet, not only are they attracted into the dimples in the sheet (gravity), but things like light which try to travel in a straight line find little kinks in their path around an object.

- [p. 144/138] "'She can play the dulcimer,' said the ghost of Teppicymon XXVII, apropos of nothing much."

Reference to Samuel Taylor Coleridge's *Kubla Khan*. See also the annotation for p. 127/115 of *Sourcery*.

- [p. 156/150] "[...] distilling the testicles of a small tree-dwelling species of bear with the vomit of a whale, [...]"

Animal substances are extensively used as fixatives in perfume. Examples include musk (from deer-testicles; 'musk' is Sanskrit for 'scrotum'), ambergris (from the intestines of whales) and castor (from a beaver's perineal gland).

- [p. 157/150] "...Phi * 1700[u/v]. Lateral e/v. Equals a tranche of seven to twelve..."

Some confusion has arisen here, because the asterisk symbol '*' is the same one used in at least some of the editions of *Pyramids* as a footnote marker. This has caused a few people to wonder if there's a 'missing footnote' intended for this page. Matters are not helped much by the fact that the American paperback edition *does* contain the text of a footnote on (their equivalent of) p. 157/150. This footnote is simply misplaced and the marker for it occurs on the *previous* page (see also previous annotation).

We'll let Terry have the last word in order to remove any remaining doubt: "I'm pretty sure the missing footnote in *Pyramids* doesn't exist. If it's what I'm thinking of, we just bunged in loads of gibberish maths and among the symbols was, yes, '*'."

I am told that in later paperback editions the asterisk in question has been entirely removed from the text.

- + [p. 168/162] "'I've got as far as 'Goblins Picnic' in Book I.'"

After the children's song called "Teddy Bears' Picnic":

"If you go down to the woods today
You're sure of a big surprise
If you go down to the woods today
You'd better go in disguise
For ev'ry bear that ever there was
Will gather there for certain, because
Today's the day the Teddy Bears have their picnic."

- [p. 176/169] The philosophers shooting arrows at tortoises are discussing one of Zeno's three motion paradoxes. See also Douglas Hofstadter's Goedel, Escher, Bach. Or Zeno.

- [p. 178/171] "The rest of them die of Heisenberg's Uncertainty Principle, [...]"

Heisenberg's Uncertainty Principle (HUP) says that for a quantum particle (e.g. an electron), it is impossible to know with complete accuracy both where it is and how fast it is going. The act of observing it interferes with the event you want to measure (in fact, one might say that at the quantum level the observation **is** the event) in such a way that it is physically impossible to determine both velocity and position of the particle in question.

- [p. 179/171] Philosophers' names.

Xeno refers to Zeno, of aforementioned paradox. Copolymer ("the greatest storyteller in the history of the world") might refer to both Homer (because of the name) and Herodotus, 'the father of history', who was known for his very chatty and discursive style, and who basically made his living as a story-teller/dinner guest. Pthagonal ("a very acute man with an angle") refers to Pythagoras. Iesope ("the greatest teller of fables") to Aesop. Antiphon ("the greatest writer of comic plays") to Aristophanes. And Ibid (whose name reminds us of Ovid) is actually short for ibidem, which means, when citing literature references: 'same author as before'. Hence the quip later on: "Ibid you already know".

The only one left is Endos the Listener, who is perhaps meant to portray the standard second-man-in-a-Socratic-dialogue -- the man who spends the entire dialogue saying things like "That is correct, Socrates", "I agree", "you're right", "your reasoning appears correct", and the like.

Also, an 'antiphon' is a name for a versicle or sentence sung by one choir in response to another (e.g.: "No you can't / Yes I can!" repeated many times with rising pitch. Or a more modern example would perhaps be Queen's 'Bohemian Rhapsody': "No, we will not let you go / Let me go!"). 'Copolymer' is a term from chemistry; it refers to a polymer (plastic) made from more than one kind of monomer (simple compound).

[Finally, my source also suspects that Copolymer's monologue may be a take-off on a particular translation of his Histories. Anybody?]

- [p. 179/172] "'The tortoise **did** beat the hare,' said Xeno sulkily."

Reference to Aesop's classic fable The Hare and the Tortoise.

If you have access to the Internet, you can find an online version of the Aesop fables at the URL:

<ftp://ftp.uu.net/doc/literary/obi/Aesop/Fables.Z>

+ [p. 180/173] "Now their gods existed. They had, as it were, the complete Set."

For those of you whose Egyptian mythology is a little rusty: Set, brother to Isis and Osiris and father of Anubis, was the Egyptian God of evil and darkness.

- [p. 181/174] "'Sacrifice a chicken under his nose.'"

Refers to the old practice of burning a feather under the nose of an unconscious or fainted person.

- [p. 181/174] "'[...] here comes Scarab again... yes, he's gaining height... Jeht hasn't seen him yet, [...].'"

The high priest's commentary on the gods' battle for the sun is obviously based on sports commentators. In particular, several of the phrases are based on the diction of David Coleman, a popular British figure of fun noted for his somewhat loose grasp on reality and his tendency towards redundancy and solecism. In fact, an amusingly redundant comment spoken live by a personality is sometimes referred to as a 'Colemanball', after the column of that name in the satirical magazine *Private Eye*.

Typical Colemanballs include, "...He's a real fighter, this lad, who believes that football's a game of two halves, and that it isn't over until the final whistle blows", or during the test (cricket) matches, "And he's coming up to bowl now... The bowler's Holding, the batsman's Willey...". (That last one wasn't even by David Coleman, but still qualifies as a Colemanball).

+ [p. 197/189] "'Symposium' meant a knife-and-fork tea."

Etymologically, a symposium is indeed a "get-together for a drink". Since the Greeks believed in lubricating intellectual discussion with drink, the term eventually came to be used for a meeting which combined elements of partying and intellectual interchange.

- [p. 197/189] The Tsortean wars refer to the Trojan wars. (Read also *_Eric_*. Or Homer.)

- [p. 201/193] "A philosopher had averred that although truth was beauty, beauty was not necessarily truth, and a fight was breaking out."

A famous quotation from John Keats' 'Ode on a Grecian Urn':

"'Beauty is truth, truth beauty,' -- that is all
Ye know on earth, and all ye need to know."

+ [p. 204/195] "[...] ships called the *_Marie Celeste_*, [...]"

The *_Marie Celeste_* left port in 1872 with a full crew, but was later found (by the crew of the *_Dei Gratia_*), abandoned on the open sea, with no crew, the single lifeboat missing, and half-eaten meals in the mess hall. It was later discovered that captain Morehouse of the *_Dei Gratia_* had dined with the captain of the *_Celeste_* the night before she sailed,

and Morehouse and his crew were eventually tried for murder, but acquitted because there was no hard evidence. The missing crewmen were never found.

+ [p. 205/197] "And one of them had reputedly turned himself into a golden shower in pursuit of his intended."

According to Greek mythology the beautiful Danae had been locked away in a dungeon by her father (King Acrisius of Argos) because a prophecy had foretold that his grandson would slay him. But Zeus, King of the Gods, came upon Danae in a shower of gold, and fathered Perseus upon her.

- [p. 250/239] "'Go, tell the Ephibians --' he began."

This is a paraphrase of "Go tell the Spartans", which is the beginning of the memorial for the Spartan soldiers who got massacred by the Persians at Thermopylae as a result of Greek treachery. The full quote is given by Simonides (5th century BC) as:

"Go, tell the Spartans, thou who passest by,
That here obedient to their laws we lie"

- [p. 270/259] "And it was while he was staring vaguely ahead, [...] that there was a faint pop in the air and an entire river valley opened up in front of him."

People interested in more stories about magically disappearing valleys are referred to R. A. Lafferty's 'Narrow Valley' (to be found in his collection Nine Hundred Grandmothers), where a half a mile wide valley is sorcerously narrowed (with its inhabitants) to a few feet and then opened up again by the end of the story.

+ [p. 271/259] "[...] the birds said more with a simple bowel movement than Ozymandias ever managed to say."

Ozymandias was the Greek name for Ramses the Second. Percy Bysshe Shelley's poem Ozymandias is famous, but because it is short and it has always been a favourite of mine I hope you will forgive me the indulgence of reproducing it here in full:

Ozymandias

I met a traveler from an antique land
Who said: "Two vast and trunkless legs of stone
Stand in the desert... Near them, on the sand,
Half sunk, a shattered visage lies, whose frown,
And wrinkled lip, and sneer of cold command,
Tell that their sculptor well those passions read
Which yet survive, stamped on these lifeless things,
The hand that mocked them and the heart that fed;
And on the pedestal these words appear:
'My name is Ozymandias, king of kings:
Look on my works, ye Mighty, and despair!'
Nothing beside remains. Round the decay
Of that colossal wreck, boundless and bare
The lone and level sands stretch far away."

While I was browsing the net in order to find an on-line copy of

Ozymandias so that I could cut-and-paste the text, I came across a wonderful piece of related information. It appears that in 1817 Shelley held a sonnet-writing session with his friend, the poet Horace Smith. Both wrote a sonnet on the same subject, but while Shelley came up with the aforementioned _Ozymandias_, Mr Smith produced something so delightfully horrendous I simply have to indulge even further, and include it here as well. By now the connection to our original annotation has been completely lost, but I think you might agree with me that Smith's poem would be worthy of Creosote:

On a Stupendous Leg of Granite, Discovered Standing by Itself in the Deserts of Egypt, with the Inscription Inserted Below.

In Egypt's sandy silence, all alone,
Stands a gigantic Leg, which far off throws
The only shadow that the Desert knows.
"I am great Ozymandias," saith the stone,
"The King of kings: this mighty city shows
The wonders of my hand." The city's gone!
Naught but the leg remaining to disclose
The sight of that forgotten Babylon.
We wonder, and some hunter may express
Wonder like ours, when through the wilderness
Where London stood, holding the wolf in chase,
He meets some fragment huge, and stops to guess
What wonderful, but unrecorded, race
Once dwelt in that annihilated place.

The poem was cited by Guy Davenport of the University of Kentucky in a New York Times article a few years ago, which concluded: "Genius may also be knowing how to title a poem."

- [p. 277/265] "'For the asses' milk?' said Koomi [...]"

See the annotation for p. 161/132 of _Mort_.

GUARDS! GUARDS!

- [p. 10/10] "'Hooray, hooray for the spinster's sister's daughter.'"

This recalls the ritual question "Is there no help for the Widow's Son?" in Masonic ritual.

- [p. 16/15] "'Let's say a skion turns up, walks up to the Patrician [...]"

The correct spelling is actually 'scion', meaning "young descendant of a noble family".

+ [p. 18/17] "'Yea, the king will come [...] and Protect and Serve the People with his Sword.'"

This is Terry having fun with foreshadowing again. The prophecy of Brother Plasterer's granddad describes Carrot to a tee, with the "Protect and Serve" tying in neatly with the motto of the City Watch (see the annotation for p. 51/48).

- [p. 20/19] ""They were myths and they were real,' he said loudly. 'Both a wave and a particle.'"

Reference to the wave/particle duality theory of e.g. light, which appears to have the properties of both a wave and a particle, depending upon what context you are working in.

- [p. 21/19] ""That was where you had to walk on ricepaper wasn't it,' said Brother Watchtower conversationally."

Reference to the old David Carradine TV series, Kung Fu. In one of the earliest episodes our Shaolin monk-in-training was tasked to walk along a sheet of ricepaper without ripping it or leaving a mark.

- + [p. 26/24] "It wasn't only the fresh mountain air that had given Carrot his huge physique."

Someone on a.f.p. asked Terry if the name or the character of Carrot was perhaps inspired by an old American comic called Captain Carrot and his Amazing Zoo Crew. Terry answered:

"Never heard of it. The TRUE answer is that when I was writing the book an electrician was rewiring our house and the nickname of his red-haired apprentice was Carrot. It kind of stuck in my mind."

- [p. 29/27] ""And Bob's your uncle.'"

Some people have been wondering just where this expression comes from (the joke also occurs on p. 16/15 and p. 108/98). Terry himself gives the following answer:

"Apparently from a 19th Century Prime Minister, Lord Robert Stanley, who was a great one for nepotism. If you got a good Government job it was because 'Bob's your uncle'. It came to mean 'everything's all right'."

- [p. 52/48] The fizzing and flashing illuminated sign outside Captain Vimes' office is a reference to the tired old visual cliché from most film noir. The seedy detective's office or apartment always has a big neon sign just outside the window.
- [p. 51/48] The motto of the Night Watch, "FABRICATI DIEM, PVNC", is dog Latin for "Make my day, punk".

"Go ahead, make my day" is a well-known Clint 'Dirty Harry' Eastwood quote. The 'punk' comes from another famous Dirty Harry scene (see the annotation for p. 136/124)

Notice also that the translation Terry supplies ("To protect and to serve") is actually the motto of the Los Angeles Police Force.

My source tells me that Hollywood writers and directors, notorious for the accuracy of their movies and TV shows, tend to have **all** police cars bear this motto. In a sort of reverse formation, this has caused some individual police forces across the USA to adopt it, so that by now the motto has become fairly wide-spread.

- [p. 53/49] ""The E. And the T sizzles when it rains.'"

The magic tavern sign Brother Watchtower is stealing has a burnt-out "E" and a sizzling "T" just like the 'HOT L BALTIMORE' sign in the play of the same name.

+ [p. 54/49] "[...] a certain resemblance to a chimpanzee who never got invited to tea parties."

For the entertainment of their younger visitors, British zoos used to have the tradition of holding Chimpanzees' Tea Parties, where the chimps were dressed up and seated at a table, drinking and eating from a plastic tea set.

Chimp tea parties have remained in the British consciousness due to the TV advertisements for PG Tips tea bags featuring chimps pouring tea.

- [p. 55/51] ""*Shershay la fem*, eh? Got a girl into trouble?"

"Cherchez la femme" ("look for the woman") is a cliché phrase of pulp detective fiction: when someone's wife has been murdered one should always search for signs of another woman's involvement.

- [p. 60/55] ""Good day! Good day! What is all of this that is going on here (in this place)?"

Carrot's actions and words in this scene mirror the behaviour of the stereotypical British friendly neighbourhood bobby attempting to break up a family argument or innocent street brawl. Nearly all my correspondents trace this stereotype directly back to the sixties BBC television series Dixon of Dock Green, where every bobby was your friend and it was perfectly acceptable for a copper to walk into a room and say "Ello! 'Ello! What's going on 'ere then?". Calling people 'sunshine' (next footnote on the page), and signing off with "Evening, all" are apparently also Dixonisms.

- [p. 62/56] ""Evenin', Detritus."

'Detritus' is a word meaning "any loose matter, e.g. stones, sand, silt, formed by rock disintegration".

- [p. 64/59] ""What'd he mean, Justices?' he said to Nobby. 'There ain't no Justices.'"

This annotation has been the subject of some heated a.f.p. discussion (and if you think that this is a silly thing to get worked up over, you are obviously not familiar with alt.fan.pratchett. Or with Usenet, for that matter). Anyway, there were a few people who felt that Terry was referring here to Larry Niven's Ringworld series, where the main character, Louis Wu, always uses the phrase "There ain't no justice" (abbreviated as "TANJ"). Other people found this connection incredibly far-fetched for such a generic sentence, and said so rather forcefully.

Eventually, Terry stepped in and short-circuited the entire discussion by writing: "Mostly in the Discworld books, particularly Mort, the phrase is "There's no justice" so that it can be balanced with "There's just me/you/us". And that phrase is truly generic. Really, so is "There ain't no justice" -- it's just that Niven does use it a lot and, I suspect, uses it because it is familiar to readers. Admittedly, it's become 'his' via repetition. But there's a difference between using an established

phrase which another author has commandeered and using one *specifically* associated with one person -- "Make my day" has one owner, whereas "There ain't no justice" is a cliché. To be honest, I didn't have anything particularly in mind when Charley uttered the phrase -- but if you think it's a Niven reference, fair enough."

- [p. 76/70] "'Do *real* wizards leap about after a tiny spell and start chanting 'Here we go, here we go, here we go', Brother Watchtower? *Hmm*?'"

"Here we go, here we go" is a chant (usually sung to the tune of Sousa's 'Stars and Stripes Forever') commonly associated with football (soccer) fans.

According to my correspondent it is also used, historically, by gangs of striking miners just before they realise that the mounted policemen with big sticks are coming their way. Definitely a British phenomenon.

- [p. 91/83] "It was strange, he felt, that so-called intelligent dogs, horses and dolphins never had any difficulty indicating to humans the vital news of the moment [...]"

Just for the record: some famous television/movie dogs fitting this description are Lassie and Rin Tin Tin; horse examples are Champion, Trigger, Silver ("I said *posse*!"), and Black Beauty; the only dolphin example I know of is probably the most famous of them all: Flipper.

Australian fans have expressed their disappointment that Terry left out Skippy the Bush Kangaroo, whose ability to communicate very complex, often extremely abstract concepts with a bit of clicking and hopping around was apparently a wonder to behold.

- [p. 93/85] "'Who loves you, pussycat?', said Nobby under his breath."

Nice amalgamation of TV detective Kojak's use of the word 'pussycat' and his catchphrase "Who loves ya, baby?".

- [p. 94/86] "'I've seen a horsefly [...] And I've seen a housefly. I've even seen a greenfly, but I ain't never seen a dragon fly'"

Sounds reminiscent of the 'I've never seen an elephant fly' song which the crows sing in Walt Disney's 1941 movie Dumbo. Another similar children's song is called 'The Never Song' by Edward Lipton.

- + [p. 97/88] "[...] Gayheart Talon thrust of Ankh stood fourteen thumbs high, [...]"

The breeding of swamp dragons is a parody of British high society's obsession with horse breeding. The height of a horse is traditionally measured in hands.

- [p. 99/90] "'One just has to put up with the occasional total whittle.'"

Describing Errol as a whittle is actually a quite clever pun. On the one hand 'whittle' simply means something reduced in size (usually by means of slicing bits and pieces off it), while on the other hand Sir Frank Whittle was the inventor of the modern aircraft jet engine.

When Whittle showed his original design to his supervisor at Manchester University, the latter said, "Very interesting, Whittle my dear boy, but it will never work".

- [p. 103/94] "'Just give me the facts, m'lady,' he said impatiently."

"Just the facts, ma'am", is a catchphrase from the Dragnet radio series (later a TV series, and later still a Dan Aykroyd/Tom Hanks movie).

- [p. 103/94] "Of all the cities in all the world it could have flown into, he thought, it's flown into mine..."

Pretty obvious Bogart/Casablanca paraphrase, in keeping with Vimes' role as the Discworld equivalent of the ultimate film noir anti-hero.

- [p. 114/104] The bit about the hero killing a monster in a lake, only to have the monster's mum come right down the hall the next day and *complain*, is a reference to Grendel and his mother, two famous monsters from the Beowulf saga.

- [p. 114/104] "Pour encourjay lays ortras."

Discworld version of the French phrase "pour encourager les autres". The phrase originates with Voltaire who, after the British executed their own admiral John Byng in 1757 for failing to relieve Minorca, was inspired to write (in Chapter 23 of Candide) a sentence that translates to: "in this country we find it pays to shoot an admiral from time to time to encourage the others".

- [p. 116/106] "'For example, foxes are always knocking over my dustbins.'"

Terry, at least at one point in his life, lived in the west country, near Bristol. Bristol has become famous for its urban foxes (although they apparently operate in all largish greenish cities in the UK). About 10-12 years ago, BBC Bristol made a famous programme on these urban foxes, called Foxwatch.

On this programme, hitherto unachieved photographs of vixens caring for their sprogs were aired; this made the programme (which was narrated by David Attenborough) very famous. The Archchancellor's rant is a very good approximation of a David Attenborough wildlife programme narration. And according to the Foxwatch myth, foxes knock over dustbins.

- [p. 117/107] "'Did you suggest a working party?', said Wonse."

It is British Government Policy to suggest a working party whenever an intractable problem presents itself. It is usually stocked with opposition MPs.

- [p. 118/108] "Once you've ruled out the impossible then whatever is left, however improbable, must be the truth. [...] There was also the curious incident of the orangutan in the night-time ..."

Two Sherlock Holmes references for the price of one. The original quotes are "It is an old maxim of mine that when you have excluded the impossible, whatever remains, however improbable, must be the truth" from The Adventure of the Beryl Coronet, and "[...] the curious incident of the dog at nightime" in Silver Blaze.

The second reference also reminds me, in a very roundabout way, of Edgar Allan Poe's The Murders in the Rue Morgue.

+ [p. 120/110] "[...] as ghastly an array of faces as ever were seen outside a woodcut about the evils of gin-drinking [...]"

The reference here is to the famous series of 18th century morality woodcuts by William Hogarth, with names like "Gin Lane" and "Beer Street".

- [p. 126/115] "'Dunno where this place is, Captain. It belongs to some posh bint.'"

This is very British slang. Posh, meaning upper class, arises from the days of the Empire. It is an acronym, standing for 'Port Out, Starboard Home'. These were the most pleasant (least hot?) cabins on the ships sailing to the jewel in the crown, India, and therefore the most expensive, meaning that only the aristocracy could afford them.

(The above explanation is in fact quite false -- that is, it's true that posh means upper class, but the acronym is one of these persistent, oh so plausible, after-the-fact etymologies, which are nearly always wrong.)

'Bint' arises as a bit of cockney soldier slang in WWII. It is actually Arabic for 'young girl'. Many British soldiers were stationed in Alexandria, Egypt, in North Africa, and this word was brought into the language by them.

- [p. 134/122] "'So I'm letting you have a place in Pseudopolis Yard.'"

The Watch's second base, affectionately called 'The Yard', is a reference to Scotland Yard, where the British Police Headquarters used to be located (these days, they have moved to New Scotland Yard).

- [p. 136/124] "This is Lord Mountjoy Quickfang Winterforth IV, the hottest dragon in the city. It could burn your head clean off."

Vimes replays here one of the best-known scenes in Clint Eastwood's first 'Dirty Harry' movie, the 1971 Dirty Harry.

"Aha! I know what you're thinking... Did I fire six shots or only five? To tell you the truth, I forgot it myself in all this excitement. This here's a .44 Magnum, the most powerful handgun in the world, and it can blow your head clean off. Now, you must ask yourself one question: "Do I feel lucky?" Well, do you, punk?"

Note how nicely Winter*forth* the *fourth* corresponds to the caliber of the Magnum.

- [p. 143/130] "'E's plain clothes, ma'am,' said Nobby smartly. 'Special Ape Services'."

Special Ape Services shares the acronym SAS with the crack British troops who are sent to storm embassies, shoot prisoners of war, and execute alleged terrorists before anything has been proven by trial, etc. Not that one wants to get political, mind you.

- [p. 156/141] "'Ah. Kings can cure that, you know,' said another protomonarchist knowingly.

See the annotation for p. 103/76 of Lords and Ladies.

+ [p. 162/147] "[...] and stepped out into the naked city."

The Naked City was an American TV cop show in the 50s, mostly forgotten today, except for its prologue narration: "There are eight million stories in the naked city. This is one of them."

+ [p. 164/149] "There are some songs which are never sung sober. 'Nellie Dean' is one. So is any song beginning 'As I was a walking...'"

'Nellie Dean' is an old music hall song:

There's an old mill by the stream
Nellie Dean.
Where we used to sit and dream
Nellie Dean.

For an explanation of songs beginning 'As I was a walking...' see the annotation for p. 313/238 of Men at Arms.

- [p. 200/181] "'This is love-in-a-canoe coffee if ever I tasted it.'"

This refers to the punchline of the old joke (familiar from, for instance, a Monty Python sketch):

Q: What do American beer and making
love in a canoe have in common?
A: They're both fucking close to water.

- [p. 200/182] "'He's called Rex Vivat.'"

Rex Vivat, of course, means: "long live the king". This reminds me a bit of Robert Rankin, who named his lead character in They Came And Ate Us Rex Mundi. Rex's sister has a role in the book too. Her name is Gloria.

Now you may begin to understand why Rankin is so often discussed on alt.fan.pratchett, and why there is so much overlap between his and Terry's audiences.

- [p. 236/214] "'The Duke of Sto Helit is looking for a guard captain, I'm sure.'"

The Duke of Sto Helit, in case anyone had forgotten, is none other than Mort.

+ [p. 241/219] "Someone out there was going to find out that their worst nightmare was a maddened Librarian. With a badge."

The movie 48 Hrs, starring Nick Nolte and Eddy Murphy, has a scene in which Eddy Murphy is in a bar full of rednecks, shouting "I am your worst nightmare! A nigger with a badge!"

- [p. 260/236] "'If that dragon's got any voonerables, that arrow'll find

'em.'"

Killing dragons by shooting a magical arrow in a special location is a standard cliché of mythology and fantasy fiction. One of the best-known contemporary examples can be found in Tolkien's *The Hobbit*, where Bard kills the dragon Smaug with a special black arrow.

- [p. 278/252] "'All for one!' [...] 'All for one what?' said Nobby."

"All for one and one for all" was of course the motto of the Three Musketeers. A whole new generation has learned about this through the combined efforts of an uninspired Disney flick and a particularly nauseating song by Bryan Adams, Rod Stewart and Sting.

+ [p. 282/256] "Both dragons appeared to realise that the fight was the well-known Klatchian standoff."

Or Mexican standoff in our world, which is when two people have loaded, cocked guns pointed right at each other. If either shoots, they both die. This leaves them stuck, since if either just turns away, the other will immediately shoot him.

- [p. 284/257] The scene where Errol's supersonic boom smashes the dragon out of the air is possibly based on another Clint Eastwood movie, the 1982 *Firefox*.

+ [p. 289/262] "'In 1135 a hen was arrested for crowing on Soul Cake Thursday.'"

There are several historical examples in our world of animals being arrested, excommunicated or killed for various crimes. Articles in the October 1994 issue of *Scientific American* and in *The Book of Lists #3* give several examples: a chimpanzee was convicted in Indiana in 1905 of smoking in public; 75 pigeons were executed in 1963 in Tripoli for ferrying stolen money across the Mediterranean; and in 1916, "five-ton Mary" the elephant killed her trainer and was subsequently sentenced to death by hanging -- a sentence that involved a 100-ton derrick and a steam shovel. But the law is fair, and sometimes the animals get the better of it: when in 1713 a Franciscan monastery brought the termites who had been infesting their buildings to trial, a Brazilian court ruled that termites had a valid prior claim to the land, and ordered the monks to give the termites their own plot.

- [p. 313/284] "'Sergeant Colon said he thought we'd get along like a *maison en Flambe*.'"

Maison en Flambe = house on fire.

- [p. 314/285] "'Here's looking at you, kid,' he said."

Another quote from *Casablanca*.

ERIC

- The subtitle to *Eric* ('Faust', crossed out) already indicates what story is being parodied in this novella: that of the German alchemist and demonologist Johannes (or Georg) Faust who sold his soul to the devil.

The most famous version of the Faust legend is perhaps the one told by Goethe in *„Faust“*, with Christopher Marlowe's earlier play *„The Tragical History of Dr. Faustus“* a close second.

- [p. 9/9] "[...] where the adventuresses Herrena the Henna-Haired Harridan, Red Scharron and Diome, Witch of the Night, were meeting for some girl talk [...]"

Herrena is the swordswoman from *„The Light Fantastic“* who hunted Rincewind, and Red Scharron is the Discworld version of Red Sonja. I can't place Diome, though her name sounds horribly familiar. There was a minor Greek goddess called Dione, and a Greek warrior called Diomedes, but neither of those sounds appropriate.

- [p. 27/21] The book Eric uses to summon his demon has the title *„Mallificarum Sumpta Diabolicite Occularis Singularum“*, or the Book of Ultimate Control. But note the initials.

Also, the actual dog Latin translates more or less to: "Evil-making Driver of the Little One-Eyed Devil".

- [p. 26/31] "In the centre of the inferno, rising majestically from a lake of lava substitute and with unparalleled view of the Eight Circles, lies the city of Pandemonium."

The name 'Pandemonium' originates with Milton's *„Paradise Lost“*; it's the city built by Lucifer and his followers after the Fall.

- [p. 46/41] The name of the Tezumen god, 'Quetzovercoatl', puns on the actual Aztec god Quetzalcoatl.

According to Aztec mythology, Quetzalcoatl was also supposed to return to his people at some particular future date.

- [p. 50/46] "There are quite a lot of uses to which you can put a stone disc with a hole in the middle, and the Tezumen had explored all but one of them."

This may refer to the Aztecs (who the Tezumen are obviously modelled on anyway) who, according to popular legend did not know about the wheel either, but reputedly used small discs with holes in them for money, and who had a basketball-like game where the baskets were also stone discs with holes in them. The tale that the losers got sacrificed is probably untrue. But the winners were allowed to take the possession of any spectators they chose -- no one hung around after the game in those days.

Other sources say that it was the *winners* who got the privilege of being sacrificed. Oh well, whether it was losers, spectators, or winners -- at least *somebody* got sacrificed.

- [p. 52/47] "[...] a giant-sized statue of Quetzovercoatl, the Feathered Boa."

Quetzalcoatl the Aztec God was in fact portrayed as a winged serpent. This is almost, but not quite, the same as a feathered boa. A feather boa is of course also an item of women's clothing that became popular in the 1920s.

- [p. 58/51] Ponce da Quirm, looking for the Fountain of Youth, is based on Ponce de Leon, the 15th century Spanish nobleman who did the same.

- [p. 81/69] "Fortunately, Rincewind was able to persuade the man that the future was another country."

Reference to the opening words of The Go-between. See the annotation for p. 13/11 of Lords and Ladies.

- [p. 82/70] "Some talk of Alexander and some of Hercules, of Hector and Lysander and such great names as these."

This is actually the opening line to the march 'The British Grenadiers', an English song dating back to the 17th century with about the same jingoism factor as 'Rule Britannia' or 'Land of Hope and Glory':

"Some talk of Alexander, and some of Hercules,
Of Hector and Lysander, and such great men as these;
But of all the world's brave heroes there's none that can compare
With a tow, row, row, row, row, row, to the British Grenadier."

- [p. 89/75] Lavaeolus is not only a dog Latin translation of 'Rincewind', but the character is also a parody of Ulysses, tragic hero of the Trojan wars. It's really not necessary to annotate all the stuff about wooden horses and such, right? Right?

- [p. 97/81] "'It'll be fifteen choruses of 'The Ball of Philodelphus' next, you mark my words.'"

Refers to an old and rather obscene British drinking song called 'The Ball of Kerrymuir', which, according to Terry: "[...] belongs in the same category as 'Colonel Bogey' -- everyone knows a line or two [sorry... everyone male and in the UK, anyway]".

For a sample of the lyrics to this song, see the Song... section in Chapter 5 of this document.

The song's title was changed into the slightly more convincing-sounding 'The Ball of Philodelphus' in the small-format UK paperback of Eric.

- [p. 99/82] "-- vestal virgins, Came down from
Heliodeliphilodelphiboschromenos, And when the ball was over, There were
--"

From one of the more printable verses of 'The Ball of Kerrymuir' (see previous annotation):

"Four and twenty virgins
Came down from Inverness,
And when the ball was over
There were four and twenty less"

One page later (p. 100/83) there is a final reference to the song: "-- the village harpy she was there --"

- [p. 115/96] "'Multiple choice they call it, it's like painting the -- painting the -- painting something very big that you have to keep on

painting, sort of thing."

The British proverb this refers to is "it's like painting the Forth bridge". The Forth bridge can be found spanning the Forth river (no kidding) between the towns of North Queensferry and South Queensferry, just outside Edinburgh, Scotland. It is so large that when they have finished painting it, it is time to start over again.

In reality, I'm told, they look for bits of the bridge that need painting and paint them. So it is true that they keep on painting, but they do it discretely, not continuously.

- [p. 117/97] "Centuries [...]. Millenia. Iains."

For some reason, Rincewind has problems with the word 'aeons'. See p. 94/86 of Sourcery for the first documented occurrence of this particular blind spot.

- [p. 121/100] "Some ancient and probably fearful warning was edged over the crumbling arch, but it was destined to remain unread because over it someone had pasted a red-and-white notice which read: 'You Don't Have To Be 'Damned' To Work Here, But It Helps!!!"

The original notice (according to Dante, in the translation by Rev. Francis Cary) would have been the famous: "Through me you pass into the city of woe: Through me you pass into eternal pain: Through me among the people lost for aye. Justice the founder of my fabric moved: To rear me was the task of power divine, Supreme wisdom, and primeval love. Before me things create were none, save things Eternal, and eternal I endure. All hope abandon, ye who enter here."

The more obvious reference (included here only to stop the e-mail from people who thought I missed it) is of course the cheesy legend "You Don't Have To Be Mad To Work Here, But It Helps!".

- [p. 121/101] "Multiple exclamation marks [...] are a sure sign of a diseased mind."

People like using this particular quip in Usenet conversations or in their signatures, and every time somebody will follow-up with "hey, you're wrong, that's a quote from Reaper Man that is!".

The answer is of course simply that similar quotes occur in *both* books (in Reaper Man it's on p. 215/189, and goes: "Five exclamation marks, the sure sign of an insane mind"). Hopefully this entry will lay the confusion to rest for once and for all.

- [p. 122/101] "[...] I think it's quite possible that we're in Hell."

The whole sequence in Hell is based loosely on Dante's Inferno (which in turn is based on Vergil's Aeneid) in much the same way the book as a whole is based on Faust. Rincewind and Eric correspond to Vergil (who is Dante's guide to Hell) and Dante in the same way that they are Mephistopheles and Faust. The various references to the geographical topology build on how Dante organised Hell in nine concentric circles (this of course had to become eight circles for the Discworld version!). The outer circles contained lesser sinners, such as Julius Caesar and Socrates, while the inner circles were reserved for mortal sinners

(mostly Dante's political enemies; some people down there weren't dead at the time of publication, but got a mention anyway). At the centre, in the 9th circle, Lucifer sits chewing away on Brutus, Crassus and Judas. If you climb over him you get to Purgatory, meeting Cato the younger on the way.

- [p. 125/103] "I mean, I heard where we're supposed to have all the *best* tunes,"

Refers to the old saying "the devil has all the good tunes".

- [p. 131/107] "[...] his punishment was to be chained to that rock and every day an eagle would come down and peck his liver out. Bit of an old favourite, that one."

Most people will associate this particular punishment with Prometheus (who stole the secret of fire from the Gods and gave it to mankind), but in fact Prometheus underwent his punishment chained to a rock in the Caucasus (from which Hercules later freed him). The chap who had to go through to the same thing in the Underworld was the giant Tityus, who had tried to rape Leto, the mother of Artemis and Apollo. As the demon says: this particular punishment is a bit of an old favourite with Zeus.

- [p. 132/108] "'Man who went and defied the gods or something. Got to keep pushing that rock up the hill even though it rolls back all the time--'"

Eric is thinking of king Sisyphus of Corinth, who betrayed Zeus to the father of the girl Aegina, whom Zeus had abducted (the girl, not the father).

- [p. 135/110] "'According to Ephebian mythology, there's a girl who comes down here every winter.'"

In Greece she was called Persephone, daughter of Ceres, the goddess of agriculture. Hades abducted Persephone, imprisoned her in the underworld, and took her for his wife. Ceres went into mourning and there was a worldwide death of crops and famine. The gods negotiated a deal with Hades whereby he would release Persephone from the underworld, but only if she had eaten nothing while down there (she hadn't thus far, being too upset). Upon hearing of her impending release, Persephone's heart was gladdened, and before she could be stopped, she started eating a pomegranate. She spit it out, but it was found she had swallowed six pomegranate seeds. Hades therefore demanded that she should spend 6 months out of each year in the underworld. During the 6 months that Persephone is down below, her mother, Ceres, neglects her duties and this causes the winter. Hence: "'I think the story says she actually *creates* the winter, sort of.' 'I've known women like that,' said Rincewind, nodding wisely."

- + [p. 136/110] "'Or it helps if you've got a lyre, I think.'"

A reference to the legend of Orpheus (see also the annotation for p. 93/93 of The Light Fantastic), who charmed Hades and Persephone into releasing Eurydice by virtue of his lyre-playing.

- [p. 153/124] "Pour encouragye le -- poor encoura -- to make everyone sit up and damn well take notice."

"Pour encourager les autres." See the annotation for p. 114/104 of _Guards! Guards!_

MOVING PICTURES

This one has uncountable references to classic Hollywood movies and anecdotes.

- Terry actually meant for Gaspode to die at the end of the book, but his editors/beta-readers made him reconsider.
- People have noticed that the two femmes fatale of this novel are called Ginger and Ruby, both names signifying a red colour. Terry Pratchett says that he did **not** intend this as a reference to _Gone with the Wind_'s Scarlett.
- Instead, Ruby got her name because like all trolls she needed a mineral name. Ginger got her name because Terry wanted to use the Fred Astaire quote (see a few annotations further down) about her partner, and so Ginger was an obvious choice for the leading lady's name.

- [p. 9/7] "This is space. It's sometimes called the final frontier."

See the annotation for p. 221/191 of _The Colour of Magic_.

- [p. 15/12] "'Looking,' it said [...] 'fr a word. Tip of my tongue.'"

The word is 'Eureka'. See the annotation for p. 139/101 of _Small Gods_.

- [p. 18/14] "'I thought they were trying to cure the philosopher's stones, or somethin',' said the Archchancellor."

That should be: trying to **find** the Philosopher's Stone: the quest of all alchemists is to discover a substance that will turn all base metals into gold.

- [p. 19/15] Archchancellor Ridcully's wizard name is 'Ridcully the Brown'.

In Tolkien's _The Lord of the Rings_ there's a (relatively) minor wizard called 'Radagast the Brown', who was also very well in tune with nature, and definitely of the "roams-the-high-forest-with-every-beast-his-brother" type. Talked to the birds, too.

- [p. 22/18] "And then a voice said: 'That's all, folks.'"

Anybody out there who has never seen Porky Pig use this phrase to end one of those classic Looney Tunes animated cartoons?

- [p. 23/19] "They often didn't notice them, or thought they were walruses."

Sometimes people send me annotations that are so beautifully outrageous that I simply **have** to include them. For instance, the walruses may be connected to the boiling mercury mentioned earlier in the text, via the chain: boiling mercury --> mad hatters --> Lewis Carroll --> walrus.

Isn't it a beauty?

- [p. 34/28] "[...] what is the name of the outer-dimensional monster whose distinctive cry is 'Yerwhatyerwhatyerwhat?'

I had been getting some conflicting stories concerning this annotation, so I hope that this time I have managed to get it right.

Apparently "Yer what?" is a common London phrase, used when you didn't catch what someone said, or you want them to repeat it because you can't believe it.

The longer form is more typically associated with soccer fans, as part of a chant, usually made in response to an opposing supporter army's war cries in an attempt to imply a certain lack of volume (and hence numbers) to the other side's support:

"Yerwhat (pause)
Yerwhat (pause)
Yerwhatyerwhatyerwhat."

- [p. 34/28] "'Yob Soddoth,' said Ponder promptly."

Yob Soddoth should be pronounced: "Yob sod off". 'Sod off' is a British form of 'bugger off', and 'yob' is an old term now almost entirely synonymous to the phrase "English football supporter" (apparently Mark Twain once said: "they are not fit to be called boys, they should be called yobs"). The word probably derives from 'back-chat' -- a 19th century London thieves' argot in which words were turned round in order to confuse police eavesdroppers. Not so far removed from Polari, in fact (see the _Words From The Master_ section in Chapter 5").

At the same time it is also a pun on H. P. Lovecraft's 'Yog-Sothoth', one of the chief supernatural nasties in the Cthulhu mythos (see especially the novelette _The Dunwich Horror_ and the novel _The Lurker at the Threshold_).

Finally, Ponder and Victor are studying the _Necrotelicomnicom_ in this scene. See the annotation for p. 111/109 of _Equal Rites_ for more information on the Lovecraft connection there.

- [p. 34/28] "Tshup Aklathep, Infernal Star Toad with A Million Young"

Another one of Lovecraft's Cthulhu mythos nasties is 'Shub-Niggurath', The Goat with a Thousand Young. ('The Black Goat of the Woods with a Thousand Young' is the full, but less common, title).

- [p. 35/29] Victor Tugelbend's university career, with his uncle's will and all that, shows parallels to similar situations described in Roger Zelazny's (highly recommended) science fiction novel _Doorways in the Sand_, and in Richard Gordon's 'Doctor' series of medical comedy books/movies (_Doctor in the House_, _Doctor in Love_, _Doctor at Sea_, etc.)

I had noticed the Zelazny parallel when I first read _Moving Pictures_, but thought the reference was too unlikely and too obscure to warrant inclusion. Since then *two* other people have pointed it out to me...

Terry later remarked, in response to someone mentioning the _Doctor in the House_ movie on the net: "I remember that film -- the student in question was played by Kenneth More. All he had to do, though, was fail -- the people who drew up the will involving Victor thought they were cleverer than that. Maybe they'd seen the film..."

- [p. 41/34] Movie producer Thomas Silverfish is directly modelled on movie mogul Samuel Goldwyn, whose real name was Samuel Gelbfisch, and who spent a short time as Samuel Goldfish before changing his name a second time to Goldwyn.

Goldwyn was responsible for a whole sequence of malapropisms known collectively as Goldwynisms, some of which are so well known now as to have passed into the common parlance. A number of Goldwyn quips are repeated (in one form or another) by Silverfish throughout the book ("you'll never work in this town again", "include me out", "a verbal contract isn't worth the paper it's printed on", etc.).

- [p. 50/41] "No-one would have believed, in the final years of the Century of the Fruitbat, that Discworld affairs were being watched keenly and impatiently by intelligences greater than Man's, or at least much nastier; that their affairs were being scrutinised and studied as a man with a three-day appetite might study the All-You-Can-Gobble-For-A-Dollar menu outside Harga's House of Ribs..."

This paragraph is a word-by-word parody of H. G. Wells' _War of the Worlds_, which begins with:

"No one would have believed in the last years of the nineteenth century that this world was being watched keenly and closely by intelligences greater than man's and yet as mortal as his own; that as men busied themselves about their various concerns they were scrutinised and studied, perhaps almost as narrowly as a man with a microscope might scrutinise the transient creatures that swarm and multiply in a drop of water."

- [p. 56/47] "'Can't sing. Can't dance. Can handle a sword a little.'"

Refers to the quip: "Can't act. Can't sing. Can dance a little.", made about Fred Astaire, reputedly by a studio-executive at RKO after Astaire's first screen test.

When somebody once asked Astaire's producer about the story, however, he was told that it was complete and obvious nonsense, since Fred Astaire already was an established major Broadway star at the time.

- + [p. 58/48] "'This is Gaffer Bird,' beamed Silverfish."

'Gaffer' not only means 'old man', but a gaffer is also the head electrician in a film production unit, charged principally with taking care of the lighting. Gaffer's tape is a less sticky form of duct tape, used universally in the theatre, concert and movie worlds to keep people from stumbling over cables.

If you enjoy annoying people, go over to the Kate Bush newsgroup rec.music.gaffa, and ask there if her song 'Suspended in Gaffa' refers to Gaffer's tape or not.

+ [p. 73/61] "'Or Rock. Rock's a nice name.'"

Presumably in reference to late actor Rock Hudson, with 'Flint' punning on Errol Flynn.

- [p. 75/62] "[...] Victor fights the dreaded Balgrog".

In Tolkien's The Lord of the Rings you can find a very nasty monster called a Balrog.

- [p. 81/67] Ginger's real name is Theda Withel, which might be a very oblique reference to Theda Bara, famous movie star of the 1910s, a kind of Elvira, Mistress of the Dark, avant la lettre ('Theda Bara' is an anagram of 'Arab Death!'). Her portrayal of evil women in movies like When a Woman Sins and The She Devil caused the current meaning of the word 'vamp' to be added to the English language.

Just as Dibbler later describes Ginger to Bezam Planter as "the daughter of a Klatchian pirate and his wild, headstrong captive", so does a studio biography describe Theda Bara as born in the Sahara to a French artiste and his Egyptian concubine. But in fact, Theda's father was a Cincinnati tailor.

- [p. 82/69] The resograph built by Riktor the Tinkerer.

Terry says: "The reality meter in Moving Pictures is loosely based on a Han dynasty (2nd Century AD) seismograph; a pendulum inside the vase moves and causes one of eight dragons to spit a ball in the direction of the tremor."

Also, the name 'Riktor' refers to our 'Richter', of the earthquake scale fame.

- [p. 86/71] "And perhaps even a few elves, the most elusive of Discworld races."

Some people were wondering if this doesn't contradict the information we get about Elves later, in Lords and Ladies, such as that they can only enter our World during Circle Time -- besides, Elves would hardly be the type of beings to become actors, one should think.

The answer can be found in Lords and Ladies as well, however, on p. 229/165:

Ridcully: "Elves? Everyone knows elves don't exist any more. Not proper elves. I mean, there's a few folk who say they're elves --"

Granny Weatherwax: "Oh, yeah. Elvish ancestry. Elves and humans breed all right, as if that's anything to be proud of. But you just get a race o' skinny types with pointy ears and a tendency to giggle and burn easily in sunshine. I ain't talking about them. There's no harm in them. I'm talking about real wild elves, what we ain't seen here for --"

- [p. 88/73] "'We just call it the 'Hiho' song. That's all it was. Hihohiho. Hihohiho.'"

The best-known song in Walt Disney's 1937 full length animation movie

Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs is sung by the seven dwarfs and starts:

"Heigh-ho, Heigh-ho
It's off to work we go"

- [p. 97/80] _The Boke Of The Film_

Traditional (if somewhat archaic by now) subtitle for movie novelisations. The related phrase "The Book of the Series" is still alive and well, mostly in the context of documentaries.

- [p. 97/80] "This is the Chronical of the Keeprs of the ParaMountain [...]"

Another fleeting reference to the movie company Paramount.

- [p. 101/84] "'And my daughter Calliope plays the organ really nice, [...]"

Calliope is not only the name of the Muse of Epic Poetry, but a calliope is also a large, organ-like musical instrument consisting of whistles operated by steam. There exists a very funny Donald Duck story, called 'Land of the Totem Poles' (written by the one and only Carl Barks), in which Donald somehow manages to become a travelling calliope salesman. Highly recommended.

- [p. 103/86] "The sharp runes spelled out _The Blue Lias_. It was a troll bar."

'Lias' is a blue limestone rock found in the south-west of England.

+ [p. 105/87] "'Cos he was her troll and he done her wrong."

Ruby's song 'Amber and Jasper' is the Discworld version of the folk song 'Frankie and Johnny':

Frankie and Johnny were lovers,
Oh, Lordie how they could love!
They swore to be true to each other,
Just as true as the stars above,
He was her man, but he done her wrong.

- [p. 111/93] Ruby's song: "Vunce again I am fallink in luf / Vy iss it I now am a blue colour? / Vot is the action I should take this time / I can't help it. Hiya, big boy."

In the 1930 movie _Blue Angel_ Marlene Dietrich plays Lola-Lola, the cabaret entertainer who ruins the life of the stuffy professor who falls in love with her. In the movie, Marlene performs a song called 'Falling in Love':

"Falling in love again
Why am I so blue?
What am I to do?
I can't help it."

Marlene Dietrich sang this with her characteristic German accent, hence the "fallink" and "vy" in the parody. The line "Hiya, big boy" may also have been spoken by Marlene Dietrich in one of her movies, but I haven't

been able to confirm this so far.

- [p. 115/95] "[...] Victor couldn't understand a word."

The duck's incomprehensibility brings to mind the animated incarnation of Donald Duck. In fact, all of the Holy Wood animals have begun to act a bit like famous cartoon animals; for instance the cat and the mouse acting out a Tom & Jerry scene (although the speech impediment of the cat is more reminiscent of Sylvester).

- [p. 115/95] "'What's up, Duck?' said the rabbit."

One of Bugs Bunny's catch phrases: "What's up, doc?". (There is in fact a cartoon where Bugs actually says "What's up, duck?" to Daffy Duck...)

+ [p. 147/123] "'Rev Counter for Use in Ecclesiastical Areas'"

'Rev' is short for both 'Reverend' and for 'revolutions'. On the one hand it stands to reason that in Ecclesiastical areas you'll find lots of clergymen, which you may want to count. On the other hand the Biblical book of Ecclesiastes contains the words used by the Byrds in their song 'Turn! Turn! Turn!', so perhaps Riktor's counter was indeed intended to count actual revolutions after all.

- [p. 149/124] "'Go, Sow, Thank You Doe.'"

The usual slang for a one-night stand or a quickie at the local brothel is "Wham, Bam, thank you, Ma'am."

- [p. 151/126] "'A rock on the head may be quite sentimental, [...], but diamonds are a girl's best friend.'"

In the 1949 movie Gentlemen Prefer Blondes, Marilyn Monroe sings:

"A kiss on the hand may be quite continental
But diamonds are a girl's best friend"

+ [p. 154/129] "'What's it called?' 'Laddie,' said the handler."

Laddie is the Discworld counterpart to our world's famous movie collie, Lassie.

In the movie Son of Lassie the protagonist was in fact called Laddie, but was played by Pal, the dog who had previously played Lassie in the original movie Lassie Come Home. Interestingly enough, Pal had a real-life son who *was* called Laddie, but this Laddie was only used for stunt and distance shots since he wasn't as pretty as his brother, who eventually got to play Lassie in the CBS TV show, and who was the only dog ever in the role to actually be called Lassie, or rather, Lassie Jr.

Lassie was always played by a male dog, mainly because a bitch tends to go into heat, during which time she becomes unphotogenic because of severe shedding. It also gets bothersome to have to deal with the constant disruptions on the set caused by various male dogs in the area wanting to, um, propose to her.

Finally, two odd little coincidences. First, the Lassie dogs often had small dogs as companions. Second, Pal/Lassie's trainer was a man by the

name of Rudd Weatherwax...

- [p. 158/132] Film studio names.

Untied Alchemists is United Artists. Fir Wood Studios is Pinewood Studios. Microlithic Pictures is Paramount (tiny rock vs. big mountain), and Century Of The Fruitbat is Twentieth Century Fox. Terry says: "I've already gone electronically hoarse explaining that Floating Bladder Productions was just picked out of the air [...]"

- [p. 159/132] "[...] we're doing one about going to see a wizard. Something about following a yellow sick toad,' [...]"

That's a yellow brick road, and the reference is of course to The Wizard of Oz.

Terry's pun also reminded a correspondent of an old joke about an Oz frog with a bright yellow penis who hops up to a man and says: "I'm looking for the wizard to help me with my 'problem'." The man answers: "No problem, just follow this road until you get to the emerald city." The frog thanks him and hops off along the road. Shortly afterwards, Dorothy and Toto come along and she also asks the man where she can find the wizard, and then he says: "Just follow the yellow dick toad".

Well, *I* thought it was funny.

- [p. 165/137] "It was about a young ape who is abandoned in the big city and grows up being able to speak the language of humans."

The Librarian's script is of course a reversal of Edgar Rice Burroughs' Tarzan story. Since Tarzan is supposed to be one of those five or so cultural icons that are so truly universal that **everybody** in the world is familiar with them, I expect this may well turn out to be the APF's Most Unnecessary Annotation of all...

- [p. 172/143] "It sounded like 'I want to be a lawn', I thought?'"

Ginger echoes movie star Greta Garbo's famous quote: "I want to be alone".

Garbo later claimed, by the way, that what she had actually said at the time was "I want to be **let** alone", which is of course not quite the same thing at all...

- [p. 174/145] The Necrotelicomnicom.

On the Discworld the Necrotelicomnicom (see also the entry for p. 111/109 of Equal Rites) was written by the Klatchian necromancer Achmed the Mad (although he preferred to be called Achmed the I Just Get These Headaches). In real life, horror author H. P. Lovecraft assures us that the Necronomicon was written by the mad Arab Abdul al-Hazred.

- [p. 178/148] "It's fifteen hundred miles to Ankh-Morpork," he said. "We've got three hundred and sixty elephants, fifty carts of forage, the monsoon's about to break and we're wearing... we're wearing... sort of things, like glass, only dark... dark glass things on our eyes..."

Paraphrases a well-known quote from the Blues Brothers movie, fifteen

minutes before the end, just as the famous chase scene is about to begin and Jake and Elwood are sitting in their car:

Elwood: "It's a hundred and six miles to Chicago, we've got a full tank of gas, half a pack of cigarettes, it's dark, and we're wearing sunglasses"

Jake: "Hit it."

- [p. 197/164] "'In a word -- im-possible!' 'That's two words,' said Dibbler."

Another Goldwynism: "I can tell you in two words: im-possible."

+ [p. 206/171] "'If you cut me, do I not bleed?'" said Rock.

Paraphrased from Shylock's famous monologue in Shakespeare's *The Merchant of Venice*, act 3, scene 1: "If you prick us, do we not bleed?"

- [p. 221/184] "'Just one picture had all that effect?'"

Dibbler and Gaffer don't put a name to it, but they are discussing the theory of subliminal messages here. It's one of those theories that somehow manages to sound so 'right' you just **want** it to be true. Studies have been done, however, but none has ever shown tricks like subliminal advertising to actually have any measurable effect on an audience.

- [p. 223/186] "'It always starts off with this mountain --'"

Ginger's dream describes the characteristic 'logo' scenes of all the major movie companies. The mountain is from Paramount ("there are stars around it"), and after that we get Columbia ("a woman holding a torch over her head"), 20th Century Fox ("a lot of lights"), and MGM ("this roar, like a lion or tiger").

- [p. 229/191] "'And Howondaland Smith, Balgrog Hunter, practic'ly eats the dark for his tea,' said Gaspode."

Smith's name is derived from Indiana Jones, and for the explanation about 'Balgrog' see the annotation for p. 75/62.

'Howondaland' also brings to mind Gondwanaland, a name for the southern continents mashed together by continental drift.

- [p. 245/204] "'You find nice place to indulge in bit of 'What is the health of your parent?' [...]"

"How's your father" is a British euphemism for "sexual intercourse", made popular by the *Carry On* series of films.

- [p. 282/235] "Twopence more and up goes the donkey!"

Terry explains: "[...] In *Moving Pictures* and *Reaper Man* a lot of use is indeed made of, god help me, Victorian street sayings that were the equivalent of 'sez you'. "Tuppence more and up goes the donkey", a favourite saying of Windle Poons, comes from the parties of strolling acrobats who'd carry their props on a donkey. They'd make a human pyramid and collectors would go around with the hat declaring that "tuppence more

and up goes the donkey" as well. But the donkey never got elevated because, of course, the collectors always needed "tuppence more".

"It belongs in the same general category of promise as 'Free Beer Tomorrow'."

- [p. 297/249] The climactic scene of the novel is not only a King Kong reversal spoof. Terry says the 50 ft. woman also refers to the protagonist from the 1958 movie Attack of the 50 Ft. Woman (recently and redundantly remade with Daryl Hannah in the title role -- if there's one movie that did not need to be remade it was this one, trust me).

- [p. 304/254] "'If it bleeds, we can kill it!'"

This line is from the 1987 movie Predator, starring Arnold Schwarzenegger. 'It' in this case was a green-blooded, invisible alien hunter.

- [p. 305/255] "YOU BELONG DEAD, he said."

This is based on Boris Karloff's final words in the 1935 movie Bride of Frankenstein: "We belong dead".

- [p. 305/255] "'Careful,' said the Dean. 'That is not dead which can eternal lie.'"

This is from a famous H. P. Lovecraft quote (which was also used by metal groups Iron Maiden (on the Live After Death album cover) and Metallica (in the song 'The Thing That Should Not Be')):

"That is not dead which can eternal lie
And with strange aeons even death may die"

It is supposed to be a quote from Abdul al-Hazred's Necronomicon (see annotation for p. 174/145), and Lovecraft uses the verse in several stories, particularly in The Call of Cthulhu and The Nameless City.

In reality, I'm told the quote originated with the Victorian decadent poet Algernon Charles Swinburne, but I have no definite reference on this.

- [p. 306/256] ""'Twas beauty killed the beast,' said the Dean, who liked to say things like that."

Last line of King Kong, said under similar circumstances.

- + [p. 310/259] "[...] everyone has this way of remembering even things that happened to their ancestors, I mean, it's like there's this great big pool of memory and we're linked up to it [...]"

This is Carl Jung's theory of the collective unconscious.

- [p. 312/261] "'A fine mess you got me into.'"

See the annotation for p. 73/65 of The Colour of Magic.

- [p. 319/266] Detritus hitting the gong in the underground theatre refers to the Rank Organisation's man-with-the-gong trademark, which Rank used

at the start of each film just as Columbia used the Statue of Liberty and MGM the roaring lion.

+ [p. 323/270] "'Play it again, Sham,' said Holy Wood."

The most famous line never uttered in *Casablanca*: "Play it again, Sam."
It should perhaps be pointed out that Sham Hargraves is a character we already met in *Mort*. Terry did *not* just create him in order to be able to make this pun.

- [p. 324/271] "'And that includes you, Dozy!'"

One of the dwarfs in Disney's *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs* was called Sleepy, another was called Dopey.

+ [p. 327/274] "'Cheer up,' she said. 'Tomorrow is another day.'"

The final line of *Gone with the Wind*.

- [p. 329/276] "'Uselessium, more like,' murmured Silverfish."

The paragraph where this quote occurs of course describes how Silverfish discovers the Discworld equivalent of Uranium. In this light, it may be interesting to recall that before he became a full-time writer Terry Pratchett worked as press officer for nuclear power stations.

+ As far as the giant statue is concerned (and the running gag about it reminding everyone of their uncle Oswald or Osric etc.): the nickname 'Oscar' for the Academy Awards statuette apparently originated with the Academy Librarian (oook!), who remarked that the statue looked like her uncle Oscar. The nickname first appeared in print in a 1934 column by Hollywood columnist Sidney Skolsky, and quickly became a household word.

REAPER MAN

- The title *Reaper Man* is a play on Alex Cox's 1984 cult movie *Repo Man*.

More accurately, *Repo Man* is a pun on 'reaper man', a very ancient name for Death (compare also e.g. 'the grim reaper'). But apparently Terry has said elsewhere (i.e. not on the net), that his 'Reaper Man' was indeed meant as a pun on the movie-title (much to the chagrin of his publishers, who would have probably preferred it if he had called it *Mort II*).

- The 'Bill Door' sections of this novel have many parallels with classic Westerns, e.g. *High Plains Drifter*.

- If you liked the idea of the trolley life-form, you may also want to check out a short story by Avram Davidson called *Or All The Sea With Oysters*. It's all about the life cycle of bicycles and their larval stages: paperclips and coat hangers.

- [p. 5/7] "It is danced under blue skies to celebrate the quickening of the soil..."

Whatever the original idea behind Morris dancing was, it long ago indeed became associated with Spring ("As fit as [...] a morris for May Day" --

Shakespeare), and nowadays many Morris teams begin their dancing season with a May Day performance. See the ...and Dance section of Chapter 5 for more on Morris dancing.

- [p. 5/7] "It is danced innocently by raggedy-bearded young mathematicians [...]"

The Morris used to be a peasants' dance, but these days Morris dancers often are, for some reason, scientists, mathematicians, or (ook!) librarians.

- [p. 7/9] Azrael is not a reference to Gargamel's cat in the Smurf cartoons. Rather, both Azraels are references to the Islamic Angel of Death, supposedly the very last creature to die, ever.

In the actual legend, Azrael is bound in chains thousands of miles long, and possesses millions of eyes: one for every person that has ever lived or will ever live. When a person dies, the eye in question closes forever, and when Azrael goes blind it will be the end of the human race.

- [p. 13/14] "The front gates of Nos 31, 7 and 34 Elm Street, Ankh Morpork."

Minor inconsistency: we are told the conversation between the pines lasts seventeen years, so when the old one finally gets chopped down, its age should have been 31751 years, not still 31734.

- [p. 15/16] "The pendulum is a blade that would have made Edgar Allan Poe give it all up and start again as a stand-up comedian [...]"

Refers to Poe's famous story The Pit and the Pendulum in which a victim of the inquisition is tied up beneath a giant descending, sweeping, razor-sharp pendulum.

If you have access to the Internet, you can find an online version of this story at the URL:

<ftp://ftp.uu.net/doc/literary/obi/Edgar.Allan.Poe/The.Pit.And.The.Pendulum.Z>

- [p. 25/24] "'What I could do with right now is one of Mr Dibbler's famous meat pies --' And then he died."

The attributed last words of William Pitt the younger were: "I think I could eat one of Bellamy's veal pies."

- [p. 31/30] "'Did you see his eyes? Like gimlets!' [...] 'You mean like that Dwarf who runs the delicatessen on Cable Street?'"

A Gimlet Eye is a piercing stare or squint. See also the annotation for p. 35/27 of Soul Music.

- [p. 32/30] "'Anyway, you can't trust those voodoo gods. Never trust a god who grins all the time and wears a top hat, that's my motto.'"

This god is Baron Samedi (or Saturday), the most important (and best-known) voodoo god or loa. He is the God of the Dead, and is traditionally associated with cross-roads.

For more information about Baron Samedi you should, of course, read _Witches Abroad_ (see also the annotation for p. 179/157 of that book).

- [p. 37/35] "'Yes, but they drink blood,' said the Senior Wrangler."

I suppose most people will know that a wrangler is somebody who rounds up cattle or horses, but it may be less common knowledge that a 'Senior Wrangler' is in fact the title given to the top 12 maths graduates at Cambridge University. In maths, those who get firsts are called Wranglers, seconds are senior optimes, and thirds are junior optimes.

- [p. 58/53] "'Celery,' said the Bursar."

A few correspondents thought that the Bursar's particular choice of vegetable might have been motivated by an old episode of the _Goon Show_, where a sketch goes in part:

Sheriff of Nottingham: "What? Tie him to a stake?"

Bluebottle: "No, do not tie me to a stake" (pause) "I'm a vegetarian!"

Prince John: "Then tie him to a stick of celery."

- [p. 60/55] The address of the Fresh Start Club: _668 Elm Street_.

Connects a reference to the _Nightmare on Elm Street_ series of horror movies with the tentative title for a _Good Omens_ sequel: _668 -- The Neighbour of the Beast_ (see the _Good Omens_ annotation on that subject).

- [p. 66/60] Ridcully's uncle disappeared under mysterious circumstances after eating a charcoal biscuit on top of a meal spiced up by half a pint of Wow-Wow Sauce.

The circumstances may become less mysterious once you realise that charcoal, sulphur and saltpetre are the basic ingredients of gunpowder.

Also, there actually exists a condiment called Wow-Wow Sauce, which was popular during the 1800s. More information can be found in the _Discworld Companion_.

- [p. 72/65] "Many songs have been written about the bustling metropolis, [...]"

Ok, let's see.

'Ankh-Morpork! Ankh-Morpork! So good they named it Ankh-Morpork!' comes from 'New York, New York' (see also the annotation for p. 142/130 of _Johnny and the Dead_), 'Carry Me Away From Old Ankh-Morpork' is 'Carry Me Back To Old Virginia', and 'Ankh-Morpork Malady' may be 'Broadway melody'.

'I Fear I'm Going Back to Ankh-Morpork' has not been traced to a particular song title, but general opinion holds that it is a spoof of the Bee Gees song 'Massachussets', which starts out "Feel I'm goin' back to Massachussets".

- [p. 76/69] "'Did it take long to get it looking like that?' 'About five hundred years, I think.'"

Or, as Terry explains more poignantly in a Sourcery footnote (on p. 21/22): "You mows it and you rolls it for five hundred years and then a bunch of bastards walks across it."

A few people thought these might have been references to a scene in one of the Asterix comics, but this is another case of two authors both using the same, older source.

As Terry explains: "The lawns line was I believe a comment made by a University gardener to an American tourist years and years ago; it turns up from time to time."

+ [p. 77/69] "Isn't that one off Treacle Mine Road?"

And on p. 176/155 we learn that One-Man-Bucket was run over by a cart on Treacle Street. Treacle is another word for molasses, and most people will be familiar with the concept of "a hole in the ground from which you get molasses" through Alice in Wonderland's Mad Tea Party.

Terry jokes: "Treacle mining is a lost British tradition. There used to be treacle mines in Bisham (near Marlow, on the Thames) and in several northern towns, I believe. But the natural treacle was too sharp and coarse for modern tastes and the industry was finally killed off by the bulk import of cheap white sugar in the last century."

"I know the Bisham treacle was very crudely melted into moulds and sold in slabs. Shops used to smash the slabs up and sell the solid treacle as sweets. It's quite a different stuff to the crude 'golden syrup' treacle still occasionally sold."

- [p. 80/72] "A couple of'em had a bit of a tiff or something? Messing around with golden apples or something?"

In Greek mythology it was a golden apple that indirectly led to the Trojan war and to the accompanying complete division of the divine pantheon into two opposing camps.

- [p. 88/79] "[...] honorary vestigial virgining [..]"

Pun on the Vestal virgins (priestesses of the goddess Vesta) in ancient Rome. 'Vestigial' of course means "remaining or surviving in a degenerate or imperfect condition or form".

- [p. 97/87] "Who is he going to call! *We're* the wizards around here."

A reference to the catchphrase "Who ya gonna call?!" from the movie Ghostbusters.

- [p. 98/88] "Mr so-called Amazing Maurice and His Educated Rodents!"

Send-up of the folk-story The Pied Piper of Hamelin.

If you have access to the Internet, you can find an online version of this fairy tale at the URL:

<ftp://ftp.uu.net/doc/literary/obi/Fairy.Tales/Grimm/pied.piper.of.hamelin.txt.Z>

- [p. 100/89] "[...] it puts a bloody RSVP on it! 'Oh Good. I like

sherry,' said the Bursar."

VSOP is a type of brandy, not sherry. RSVP, of course, stands for "Repondez s'il vous plait" -- i.e. please reply [to this invitation].

- [p. 105/94] "'Don't stand in the doorway, friend. Don't block up the hall.'"

This is an almost verbatim line from Bob Dylan's 'The Times They Are A Changin'.

- [p. 105/94] "Or sporting a Glad To Be Grey badge"

'Glad To Be Gay' was the well-known slogan of the Gay Liberation movement, a decade or so ago (as well as the title of an excellent Tom Robinson song). In the late 80s, 'Glad To Be Grey' badges were actually commercially available.

+ [p. 106/95] The names of the Fresh Start Club members.

Count Notfaroutoe refers to Count Nosferatu, the vampire from Friedrich Murnau's classic 1922 movie *Nosferatu, eine Symphonie des Grauens* (remade in 1979 by Werner Herzog, starring Klaus Kinski). 'Lupus' is Latin for wolf, so 'Lupine' means 'wolfish', similar to e.g. 'feline'. Finally, there exists a mineral called ixiolite. Note, by the way, that banshees are traditionally supposed to be female creatures.

When someone on a.f.p. asked if Reg Shoe was based on Reg, the leader of the Judean Peoples' Front in Monty Python's *Life of Brian*, Terry answered:

"No. Not consciously, anyway.

As with other 'real world' Discworld names, like Susan, Victor, Albert, etc, I picked the name because of... er... associational harmonics. Albert is an 'old' name. Reg is a good working class name and has a post-war feel to it. It's hard to explain it further, but all popular names carry a burden of associations. The best examples in the last decade have been Sharon and Tracy; whatever the *truth*, the perception is that these are working-class, Essex bimbo names, although twenty or thirty years ago they'd have been considered glamorous (which is why, the myth runs, the kids got given them). Any Brit would probably associate a type or age with names like, say, Victoria, Emma, Kylie, Sid, Wayne and Darron. Reg is a good name for a dependable guy, the sort who runs the skittles league (I know this, 'cos my Uncle Reg did...)"

- [p. 108/97] "Every full moon I turn into a wolfman. The rest of the time I'm just a ... wolf."

This interesting twist on the age-old werewolf idea has been thought of and used by others a few times before. I'd particularly recommend 'What Good is a Glass Dagger', an excellent short story by Larry Niven. (I realise that merely by mentioning it here I may have spoilt it for you, but I think the story is still very enjoyable, regardless).

+ [p. 113/100] "'[...] songs like 'The Streets of Ankh-Morpork' [...]"

Refers to the classic Ralph McTell song 'The Streets of London'. An

impressive set of lyrics for 'The Streets of Ankh-Morpork' can be found on the Pratchett Archives.

- [p. 135/120] "I EXPECT, he said, THAT YOU COULD MURDER A PIECE OF CHEESE?"

Echoes p. 24/21 of *_Mort_*, where Death says to Mort: "I DON'T KNOW ABOUT YOU, BUT I COULD MURDER A CURRY".

- [p. 146/129] "LAST YEAR SOMEONE GOT THREE STREETS AND ALL THE UTILITIES."

The game 'Exclusive Possessions' is of course the Discworld equivalent of Monopoly.

+ [p. 149/132] "On the fabled hidden continent of Xxxx, somewhere near the rim, there is a lost colony of wizards who wear corks around their pointy hats and live on nothing but prawns."

The continent referred to in this quote is Australia (which means that we are talking here about the Wizards of Oz, right?), where there exists a brand of beer called 'XXXX' (pronounced 'Four Ex'), produced by the Castlemaine Tooheys brewery. A New Zealand correspondent tells me that the reason the beer is called 'XXXX' is that if it had been called 'BEER' the Australians wouldn't have been able to spell it. Ahem.

The corks around the pointy hats refer to the supposedly traditional headwear of Australian Swagmen: Akubra hats with pieces of cork dangling on strings around the wide rim in order to keep the flies off the wearer's face. Needless to say, you can live a lifetime in Australia and never get to actually see somebody who looks like this. Monty Python's 'Philosophers' sketch is a good send-up of the stereotype.

Since then, the stereotype has been reinforced by a series of Australian Tourism Commission ads promoting Australia in America and Britain on 1980s television, which featured Paul 'Crocodile Dundee' Hogan saying something along the lines of: "Come on down here, and we'll throw another shrimp on the barbie for you" ('barbie' = barbecue).

At the risk of boring you all to death with this, I must admit that I am curious as to the exact wording of that Hogan ad. I have received extraordinary amounts of mail about this annotation, and so far there have been seven different phrases mentioned, namely:

- toss another shrimp on the barbie for you
- throw another shrimp on the barbie
- chuck another prawn on the barbie
- slap a prawn on the barbie for you
- shove a couple more prawns on the barbie
- pop another prawn on the barbie for you
- put another prawn on the barbie for you

So, can anybody tell me (a) whether the ad said 'shrimp' or 'prawn', (b) whether the "for you" was actually part of the sentence or not, and (c) whether these poor animals were in fact tossed, thrown, chucked, slapped, shoved, popped, or simply put on the barbie?

Finally, an Australian correspondent tells me that "Don't come the raw prawn with me, sport" is a local saying having a meaning somewhere in

between "Pull the other one, it's got bells on" and "Don't give me that crap". Use this information at your own peril.

Annotation update: Some time after the above annotation appeared in APF 7.0 I received e-mail from a correspondent who had actually managed to obtain a compilation video from the Australian Tourist Commission, containing all the ads Paul Hogan did for them in the 1984-89 period. Among those was, indeed, one he did for the internationally targeted campaign, at the end of which he clinches his spiel by saying:

"C'mon. Come and say g'day. I'll slip an extra shrimp on the barbie for ya."

I find it highly ironic that the actual mystery verb turns out to be one that was not mentioned by **any** of my previous correspondents...

+ [p. 154/136] "'I don't hold with all that stuff with cards and trumpets and Oo-jar boards, mind you.'"

An Ouija board is a well-known means of communicating with the dead. It's a board with letters and symbols on it, and the spirits supposedly move a glass over it and spell out messages. The name 'Ouija' derives from 'oui' and 'ja', two words meaning 'yes', one of the symbols on the board.

- [p. 151/133] "'Everyone thought you were to do with taxes.' NO. NOT TAXES."

As Benjamin Franklin once wrote: In this world nothing can be said to be certain, except death and taxes.

- [p. 156/138] "[...] especially if they **do** let the younger wizards build whatever that blasted thing is they keep wanting to build in the squash court."

This is a reference to the fact that the first nuclear reactor, built by Enrico Fermi, was indeed erected under a squash court.

Irrelevant, but interesting, is that for a long time Russian physicists, misled by a poor translation, believed that Fermi's work was done in a 'pumpkin field'.

+ [p. 168/147] "'Ah... many a slip 'twixt dress and drawers,' said Duke."

See the annotation for p. 189/188 of _Wyrd Sisters_.

- [p. 175/153] "Behind him, the kettle boiled over and put the fire out. Simnel fought his way through the steam."

The joke here is that Ned Simnel is trying to think of a new, better way to power his Combination Harvester, when he is interrupted by the "pointless distraction" of his kettle boiling over. This refers to our world's anecdote about James Watt, who supposedly got his idea for improving the steam engine when he watched the condensing steam from a kettle on the boil.

(Note that contrary to popular belief, Watt **didn't** invent the steam engine itself: what he did was have revolutionary new ideas (e.g. the use of a condenser) on how to make the steam engine really (cost-)efficient,

practical and portable.)

For more information on steam engines, see also the annotation for p. 259/186 of Small Gods.

- [p. 178/157] "Mustrum Ridcully trotted into his study and took his wizard's staff from its rack over the fireplace. He licked his finger and gingerly touched the top of his staff."

Gary Cooper does this a few times in the 1941 movie Sergeant York. According to my source, Cooper's explanation in the movie was "It cuts down the haze a mite" -- or something along those lines.

- [p. 182/160] "'It's from the Dungeon Dimensions!' said the Dean. 'Cream the basket!'"

Basket is a British euphemism for bastard. In this case it of course also applies to the shopping trolley (or basket).

- [p. 187/164] "'No, Not 'with milk'", said Windle."

See the annotation for p. 277/243.

- [p. 192/168] The harvesting battle between Death and the Combined Harvester has echoes of various similar contests in American folklore.

There is for instance the story of the legendary American lumberjack Paul Bunyan and the Lumber Machine. According to that legend (as told in the Disney cartoon, ahem), Paul realised, after a magnificent battle at the end of which the Machine had won by a quarter-inch more timber, that the age of the great lumberjacks was over, and he wandered off with his steed Babe the Blue Ox, never to be seen again.

There's also the much older American folk song 'John Henry', which describes a similar contest in which John Henry beats the new steam-driven pile-driver (he was a railway builder, and drove in the spikes that held the rails down), but dies of the effort.

- + [p. 201/176] "Stripfettle's Believe-It-Or-Not Grimoire"

Ripley's Believe It Or Not! was more or less the forerunner of today's tabloids of the '500 pound baby' variety. However, his items were supposedly true and he had a standing offer to provide notarised proof if you didn't believe him. Typical items included potatoes that looked like President Eisenhower, dogs that could hold a dozen tennis balls in their mouths, and a fireplace that cast a shadow that looked like the profile of the owner of the house, but would only cast the shadow at the exact time of the owner's death.

- [p. 204/179] "Remember -- wild, uncontrolled bursts..."

From the movie Aliens: "Remember -- short, controlled bursts...". This entire section is filled with action-movie references ('Yo!'), but Alien / Aliens seems to have been a particularly fruitful source. Many quotes and events have direct counterparts: "Yeah, but secreted from what?", "No one touch *anything*", "It's coming from *everywhere*!", and "We are *going*" are only a few examples, and of course there is the matter of the Queen...

- [p. 217/191] "The raven cleared its throat. Reg Shoe spun around. 'You say one word,' he said, 'just one bloody *word*...'"

Edgar Allen Poe rears his head once more in a reference to his famous poem, The Raven, which is all about death, doom and gloom. In the poem, the ominous raven in question constantly repeats just a single word: Nevermore.

- [p. 233/204] "Windle snapped his fingers in front of the Dean's pale eyes. There was no response. 'He's not dead,' said Reg. 'Just resting,' said Windle."

Just two words: Parrot Sketch.

- + [p. 234/204] "'I used to know a golem looked like him, [...] You just have to write a special holy word on 'em to start 'em up.'"

For those needing a refresher course in Jewish magic, a golem is indeed a clay automaton. The special holy word is either the name of God, or the Hebrew word for truth, 'emet' (aleph-mem-tav). To turn the golem off, you erase the name, or, if you used 'emet', the initial aleph, which changes the word to 'met' (mem-tav), meaning dead.

- + [p. 235/206] "'Artor! Nobblyesse obligay!'"

From the phrase noblesse oblige, meaning "rank imposes certain obligations".

- [p. 246/215] "'Bonsai!'"

A typical Pratchettian mix-up of two different things: 'Banzai!' is the Japanese war cry shouted by kamikaze pilots as they performed their suicide runs. It means 'ten thousand years', and was originally an honorary greeting used in front of the Emperor, whom the kamikazes were, of course, dying for.

'Bonsai' is the art of growing tiny potted trees shaped and stunted into very particular growth patterns.

- + [p. 246/215] "'Like... small trees. Bush-i-do. Yeah.'"

'Bushido' means "the way of the warrior", and is pronounced bu-shi-do.

- + [p. 247/216] "Occasionally people would climb the mountain and add a stone or two to the cairn at the top, [...]"

My correspondents tell me that there are many such mountains to be found around the world. In Ireland there is one specific mountain called Maeves Grave. On the top of it is a heap of stones which is believed to be the grave of the evil Celtic Queen Maeve. To prevent her from ever leaving the grave, each visitor to the mountain is supposed to pick up a stone, and carry it up the hill and put it on the grave.

- [p. 258/226] "'I'm just going out,' he said. 'I may be some time.'"

A quote that Terry uses again in another, similar situation. See the annotation for p. 236/170 of Small Gods.

- [p. 259/226] The idea of a were-man and were-woman who fall in love, but whose animal and human phases are out of sync with respect to each other was the main plot element in the 1985 fantasy movie *Ladyhawke*, starring Rutger Hauer and Michelle Pfeiffer.

+ [p. 264/230] "Azrael, the Great Attractor, the Death of Universes, [...]"

In previous editions of the APF, I said that the Great Attractor was part of an astronomical theory that had been discredited some time ago. It turns out that this is far from the truth.

Basically, astronomers have discovered that there are large regions of the cosmos being held back from the smooth overall expansion (or Hubble flow) as dictated by the Big Bang/Expanding Universe theory.

The culprit would seem to be something or some things within a vast clumping of galaxies that appears to be causing an acceleration of all the surrounding galaxies in its direction. In an offhand comment during a press conference, Alan Dressler referred to this galactic pileup as the 'Great Attractor', and the name immediately stuck.

Although the theory was not universally accepted by all scientists, I understand the evidence for it has held up well, and in fact I saw a recent newspaper article claiming that the Great Attractor had actually been identified by a group of international astronomers as the cluster Abel 3627.

- [p. 264/231] "LORD, WHAT CAN THE HARVEST HOPE FOR, IF NOT FOR THE CARE OF THE REAPER MAN?"

Some folks thought that this line sounded familiar and wondered if it was a quote, but Terry has assured us that he made this one up all by himself.

- [p. 265/232] "**YES**"

In the hardcover edition of *Reaper Man*, this super-large word appears on a left page, so that it takes the reader by surprise as she turns the page. In the paperback edition this is not the case, thus spoiling the effect entirely.

When questioned about this, Terry said: "Do you really think I'm some kind of dumbo to miss that kind of opportunity? I wrote 400 extra words to get it on a left-hand page in the hardcover -- then Corgi shuffled people in the production department when it was going through and my careful instructions disappeared into a black hole. Go on... tell me more about comic timing..."

The American paperback edition, by the way, also gets it right.

- [p. 267/235] "To deliver a box of chocolates like this, dark strangers drop from chairlifts and abseil down buildings."

A reference to a UK TV commercial for 'Milk Tray' chocolates, in which a James Bond-like figure does death-defying stunts, only to leave a box of chocolates in some place where a woman finds them at the end of the ad.

- [p. 267/235] "'DARK ENCHANTMENTS', he said."

A reference to a brand of chocolates called 'Black Magic'.

- [p. 270/237] "'Chap with a whip got as far as the big sharp spikes last week,' said the low priest."

Refers to the _Raiders of the Lost Ark_ movies, in which Indiana Jones (with trademark whip) always steals stuff from sacred temples loaded with spikes, big rolling balls, and nasty insects.

- [p. 271/238] "The priests heard the chink of a very large diamond being lifted out of its socket."

This is the sequence where Death enters the Lost Jewelled Temple of Doom of Offler the Crocodile God and purloins the massive diamond called the Tear of Offler from the statue therein.

On p. 109/109 of the _The Light Fantastic_, however, Twoflower tells Bethan the story of Cohen the Barbarian stealing this very same sacred diamond.

There are ways around this inconsistency, of course. The most reasonable one seems to me the fact that there is no reason why we have to assume that all the stories told about Cohen are necessarily true.

- [p. 275/242] "'Let's see ... something like 'Corn be ripe, nuts be brown, petticoats up ...' something.'"

This is a paraphrase or alternate version of an existing "ould Sussex Folk Song", quoted in Spike Milligan's autobiography _Adolf Hitler: My Part in his Downfall_ as follows:

"Apples be ripe, nuts be brown,
Petticoats up, trousers down."

- [p. 275/242] "'I take it you *do* dance, Mr Bill Door?' FAMED FOR IT, MISS FLITWORTH."

Dancing with death is of course a metaphor as familiar as playing a game of chess or Exclusive Possessions with Death.

+ [p. 276/242] "[...] 'Do-si-do!' [...]"

A dosi-do is a square dance figure in which two dancers start facing each other, then circle round each other, passing back to back.

- [p. 277/243] "'I know this one! It's the Quirmish bullfight dance! Oh-lay!' 'WITH MILK?'"

Oh-lay!, a phonetic version of the Spanish cry _Ole!_, sounds also the same as the pronunciation of the French phrase "au lait" which means "with milk", as in e.g. 'cafe au lait'.

- [p. 280/246] "One yodel out of place would attract, not the jolly echo of a lonely goatherd, but fifty tons of express-delivery snow."

A reference to the puppet sequence in _The Sound of Music_, a song in

which both yodelling and lonely goatherds are featured.

- [p. 280/246] "'And who was that masked man?' They both looked around. There was no one there."

Refers to the Lone Ranger.

- [p. 282/248] "'Just me, your lordship,' said the watchman cheerfully. 'Turning up like a bad copper.'"

'Copper' is a British colloquialism for policemen (see also the annotation for p. 185/140 of *Men at Arms*), but 'copper' is also a somewhat archaic synonym for 'penny', which gives the link to the saying: "turning up like a bad penny".

Hence also the old joke: 'What do you call a policeman's night shift pay?' 'Copper nitrate'.

- [p. 283/249] "'You know,' said Windle, 'it's a wonderful afterlife.'"

It's A Wonderful Life is the title of Frank Capra's classic 1946 movie about a special kind of undead (or rather: unliving) man.

- [p. 284/250] "WINDLE POONS? 'Yes?' THAT WAS YOUR LIFE."

Reference to the TV show *This Is Your Life*, where a noted celebrity is surprised and (hopefully) embarrassed by having the high (and occasionally low) points of his/her life recounted by friends and acquaintances during a half hour programme.

WITCHES ABROAD

- [p. 7/7] "'Hurrah, I've discovered Boyle's Third Law.'"

Sinking to the ultimate depths of trivial annotating, I suppose I should point out here, if only for completeness' sake, that (a) there is only one single 'Boyle's law', which (b) says that if temperature is kept constant, the volume and pressure of a gas are inversely related.

- [p. 7/7] "Like finding that bloody butterfly whose flapping wings cause all these storms we've been having lately [...]"

Rather literal interpretation of one of the most often-cited examples of Chaos theory, called the Butterfly effect: a butterfly flapping its wings can cause a storm because in Chaos theory results are not proportional to causes.

- [p. 9/9] The three urban legends Terry mentions briefly in the footnote are all quite well-known, and can be found in any decent collection of such stories, but just in case not everyone is familiar with them:

The first story is about a family whose grandmother dies on vacation. In order to avoid bureaucratic hassle they decide to strap her to the roof-rack of the car, and cross the border back to their own country. During a rest-room stop, somebody steals the car, grandmother and all.

The second story is that of the people who return home after a night out,

and find their dog choking to death in front of the door. They race him to the vet, who discovers that the dog is choking on a human finger he must have bitten off a burglar.

The third story is that of a man and woman having sex in the back seat of a car, when some serious accident happens and they become trapped. In order to free them from their predicament, the car has to be cut open with a torch, after which the woman supposedly comments: "My husband will be furious, it was **his** car".

Much more information about these and countless other urban legends can be found in Jan Harold Brunvand's books. If you're on the net, you may want to check out alt.folklore.urban.

- [p. 10/9] "She had called upon Mister Safe Way, Lady Bon Anna, Hotaloga Andrews and Stride Wide Man."

Safeway is the name of a supermarket chain. Terry says: "I needed some good names that sounded genuinely voodoo. Now, one of the names of one of the classic gods is Carrefour. It's also the name of a supermarket chain in my part of the world, and I used to grin every time I drove past. Hence, by DW logic, Safeway. Bon Anna I'm pretty sure is a genuine voodoo goddess. The other two are entirely made up but out of, er, the right sort of verbal components."

+ [p. 12/11] "Desiderata Hollow was making her will."

'Desiderata' literally means: "things missing and felt to be needed". It is the name of a popular prose poem, written by Max Ehrman in 1927, full of advice about life and how to deal with it.

DESIDERATA is copyrighted material, and can not be reproduced or sold without permission. Any violation is the basis for legal action. Books containing DESIDERATA are published by Crown Publishers, N.Y.C. and can be obtained from Tim Tiley Ltd., Bristol. The author was Max Ehrmann. Other permissions must be obtained from the owner of the copyright - Robert L. Bell, 427 South Shore Drive, Sarasota, Florida, USA 34234.

+ [p. 16/15] "'Wish **I** was going to Genua,' she said."

Terry writes: "This may or may not already be an annotation somewhere, but Genua is a 'sort of' New Orleans with a 'sort of' Magic Kingdom grafted on top of it.

It had its genesis some years ago when I drove from Orlando to New Orleans and formed some opinions about both places: in one, you go there and Fun is manufactured and presented to you, in the other you just eat and drink a lot and fun happens."

- [p. 17/15] "'Mr Chert the troll down at the sawmill does a very good deal on coffins [...]"

This confirms the unwritten rule that says all Discworld trolls must have mineral names: 'chert' is a dark-coloured, flintlike quartz.

- [p. 17/16] "Her name was Lady Lilith de Tempscire, [...]"

Tempscire is actually a French transliteration of Weatherwax.

- [p. 19/17] "[...] at least two of those present tonight were wearing Granny Weatherwax's famous goose-grease-and-sage chest liniment."

In Victorian times, children's chests were often smeared with a large helping of goose grease in order to keep out the cold.

Channel swimmers also used to use goose grease. Perhaps they still do...

- [p. 20/18] "'Tempers Fuggit. Means that was then and this is now,' said Nanny."

Well -- almost. The actual Latin phrase is "tempus fugit": "time flies".

- [p. 27/24] "As Nanny Ogg would put it, when it's teatime in Genua it's Tuesday over here..."

This refers to an old and very silly song by J. Kendis and Lew Brown, which goes:

"When it's night-time in Italy, it's Wednesday over here.
Oh! the onions in Sicily make people cry in California.
Why does a fly? When does a bee?
How does a wasp sit down to have his tea?
If you talk to an Eskimo, his breath will freeze your ear.
When it's night-time in Italy, it's Wednesday over here."

- [p. 30/26] "'You can't get the wood,' she said."

This was Henry Crun's standard excuse for not actually building anything he'd invented, on the Goon Show.

- [p. 33/29] "The author, Grand Master Lobsang Dibbler, had an address in Ankh-Morpork."

This is yet another incarnation of Cut-Me-Own-Throat Dibbler, the Ankhian entrepreneur we learn much more about in Moving Pictures, and who also appears in Small Gods as the Omnian businessman Dhblah.

Also, the name is a direct reference to Tuesday Lobsang Rampa, who was one of our world's more successful psychic hoaxers: actually named Cyril Hoskin, and son of a Devon plumber, Lobsang Rampa claimed to be a Tibetan monk with paranormal powers. He wrote the best-selling 1956 book The Third Eye which, even though Rampa was exposed as a fraud by Time Magazine in 1958, is still being printed and sold as the real thing 30 years later. Rich, gullible people like actress Shirley MacLaine still pay money to have their 'third eye' opened up by contemporary Rampa equivalents.

When questioned about the name, Terry answered: "I know all kindsa Tibetan names... Kelsang, Jambel, Tsong, Tenzin, Tupten (drops Tibetan reference book on foot)... but Lobsang is, thanks to Mr Rampa, probably the best known."

- [p. 33/29] "There was a knock on the door. Magrat went and opened it. 'Hai?', she said."

Apart from being Magrat's ninja war cry, 'Hai?' also means 'Yes?' in

Japanese.

- [p. 38/34] "'Shut up. Anyway, she's non compos mental,' said Granny."

"Non compos mentis" is a Latin phrase meaning "not of sound mind".

- [p. 42/37] "'Anno Domini, I said.'"

Anno Domini of course means 'year of our Lord' (as in 1993 AD). It is indeed used to denote old age, although this use is a fairly recent literary invention, which was started by James Hilton in 'Goodbye, Mr Chips' (1934).

- [p. 47/41] "No one ran up them wearing dirndls and singing. They were not nice mountains."

Refers to the opening scene of 'The Sound of Music', where Julie Andrews does just that: running up the mountains, and singing, and wearing dirndls (if you want to know what a dirndl looks like, go see the movie).

- + [p. 48/42] "The witches flew along a maze of twisty little canyons, all alike."

This refers back to a legendary message that appeared in Crowther & Woods' text adventure game 'ADVENT' (see also the annotation for p. 130/114 of 'The Colour of Magic'): "You are in a maze of twisty little passages, all alike."

Many games have included variants of this. It also appeared in 'Zork' ("The second of the great early experiments in computer fantasy gaming", as 'The New Hacker's Dictionary' describes it), and in the 'Hitch Hiker's Guide to the Galaxy' game you appear in your own brain, in "a maze of twisty synapses".

- [p. 48/42] The section dealing with dwarfs (and in fact, almost *everything* Terry writes about dwarfs) is a parody of Tolkien's dwarves.

In particular, compare the witches' musings on mine entries and invisible runes to Tolkien's scenes outside Moria. Dwarf bread is a direct reference to Tolkien's 'cram', the dwarvish travel bread. And as the witches leave the dwarfs, they have an encounter with a wretched creature mumbling something about his birthday...

- [p. 49/43] "[...] and spake thusly: 'Open up, you little sods!'"

In Tolkien's 'The Lord of the Rings' there is a famous scene outside the dwarven mines of Moria, where invisible runes written on the door (and revealed by the wizard Gandalf) give our heroes the clue as to how to get the door to open, namely by saying the word 'friend'.

Personally, I like Nanny Ogg's way better.

- [p. 51/45] "[...] if more trolls stopped wearing suits and walking upright, and went back to living under bridges [...]"

See the annotation for p. 193/140 of 'Lords and Ladies'.

- [p. 52/45] "It's often said that eskimos have fifty words for snow. This

is not true."

In fact, the situation regarding eskimos and snow is pretty much the same as the one Terry subsequently describes for dwarfs and rocks: eskimos have a number of different words for different *kinds* of snow and ice, but nothing out of the ordinary.

- [p. 58/51] "'[...] whenever I deals with dwarfs, the phrase 'Duck's Arse' swims across my mind.'"

From the phrase "tight as a duck's arse", implying excessive meanness.

- [p. 61/53] "'I knows all about folk songs. Hah! You think you're listenin' to a nice song about... about cuckoos and fiddlers and nightingales and whatnot, and then it turns out to be about... about something else entirely,' she added darkly."

Just as an example of the type of song Granny may have in mind, here are a few verses of 'The Cuckoo's Nest':

"As I went a-walking one morning in May
I spied a pretty fair maid and unto her did say
For love I am inclined and I'll tell you of my mind
That my inclination lies in your cuckoo's nest.

Some like a girl who is pretty in the face
And some like a girl who is slender in the waist
Ah, but give me a girl who will wriggle and will twist
At the bottom of the belly lies the cuckoo's nest."

When this annotation led to a torrent of similar folk songs being discussed on a.f.p., at one point Terry chimed in with: "My favourite was something I think by a guy called Diz Disley back in the very early 70s. From memory:

"As I walked out one May morning,
In the month of Februaryyy,
I saw a pretty serving maid a-comin'
out the dairy;

A handsome knight came ridin' by
I politely raised my cap and
They went behind the stable
and I never saw what happened.'"

- [p. 62/54] "'Thank goodness witches float.'"

An obvious joke, but easily missed: refers to ducking suspected witches. If they drowned, they were innocent.

- [p. 62/55] "The maiden, the mother and the... other one."

The "other one" is the crone. See also the annotation for p. 248/218.

- [p. 67/59] "'Der flabberghast,' muttered Nanny. 'What's that?' said Magrat. 'It's foreign for bat.'"

Well no, it isn't, actually. The German word for bat is 'Fledermaus', as

in Johann Strauss' famous operette Die Fledermaus. 'Flabberghast' seems to derive more from the plain English 'flabbergasted' (meaning: astonished beyond belief). Similarly, 'die flabbergast' apparently was a Mozart-spoofing sketch that Dudley Moore did in Beyond The Fringe.

- [p. 87/75] The names the witches are considering for themselves are puns on existing airline companies or their acronyms. Nanny Ogg starts to say Virgin Airlines, but is rudely interrupted by a gust of wind.

- [p. 88/77] "'I like stuff that tells you plain what it is, like... well... Bubble and Squeak, or... or... 'Spotted Dick,' said Nanny absently."

Americans might be amazed to learn that Bubble and Squeak, Spotted Dick, and Toad-in-the-Hole (which is mentioned a few lines further down) are all actually the names of existing British delicacies.

Nanny Ogg is correct in identifying Toad-in-the-Hole as a sausage embedded in a sort of tart filled with pancake batter.

Bubble and Squeak is traditionally made on Boxing Day from Christmas leftovers (potato, onion, cabbage and Brussels sprouts appear to be favourite ingredients among alt.fan.pratchett readers, fried up together in lard.

Spotted Dick is a suet-sponge pudding with currants or sultanas in it.

- [p. 89/78] "'Magrat says she will write a book called Travelling on One Dollar a Day, and it's always the same dollar.'"

Refers to the famous traveller's guide originally titled Europe on Five Dollars a Day. This is of course also extensively parodied in the Hitch Hiker's Guide to the Galaxy ("see the wonders of the universe for only twenty Altairian dollars per day").

- [p. 91/79] "What does cojones mean?"

'Cojones' is Spanish for 'hen's eggs', colloquially used for 'balls'. The whole 'Thing with the Bulls' section spoofs the annual bull running festival of Pamplona in our world. Ernest Hemingway was very impressed with this macho activity, and used the word 'cojones' to describe the bravery displayed by the young men participating in the event.

- [p. 95/83] "'S called the Vieux River.' 'Yes?' 'Know what that means?' 'No.' 'The Old (Masculine) River,' said Nanny. 'Yes?' 'Words have sex in foreign parts,' said Nanny hopefully."

The Mississippi River is often known as 'Old Man River', for instance in the classic song from the 1936 Kern/Hammerstein musical Show Boat. Near the mouth of the Mississippi lies New Orleans, on which Genua seems to be largely based. And then there are the riverboats, with the gamblers...

- [p. 96/84] "[...] she wants to make it a Magic Kingdom, a Happy and Peaseful place [...]"

The most famous part of the Walt Disney World theme park in Orlando, Florida, is officially called the 'Magic Kingdom'.

- [p. 97/84] "[...] Samedi Nuit Mort, the last night of carnivale, [...]"

Samedi Nuit Mort = Saturday Night Dead, a reference to the television comedy show Saturday Night Live.

- [p. 97/85] "'That means Fat Lunchtime,' said Nanny Ogg, international linguist.

Actually, 'Mardi Gras' means Fat Tuesday. Nanny Ogg is confusing 'Mardi' with 'Midi', which mean 'midday', i.e. lunchtime.

- [p. 114/99] "Even Magrat knew about Black Aliss."

In Terry Pratchett's universe Black Aliss is obviously the evil witch of *all* fairy tales. The stories referred to here are Sleeping Beauty, Rumpelstiltskin and Hansel And Gretel, all of which are available as on-line versions (see the annotation for p. 34/34 of The Light Fantastic).

- [p. 122/107] "Are you the taxgatherers, dear?' 'No, ma'am, we're --' '--fairies,' said Fairy Hedgehog quickly."

This is a Blues Brothers reference: in the film, the dialogue goes: "'Are you the police?' 'No, ma'am, we're musicians.'"

- [p. 134/117] "[...] there's been other odd things happening in this forest."

Magrat then goes on to describe more or less what happened in the fairy tales of Goldilocks and the Three Bears and The Three Little Pigs.

- [p. 134/118] "[...] some ole enchantress in history who lived on an island and turned shipwrecked sailors into pigs."

For once, Nanny Ogg *doesn't* mix up two or more real-world tales, but gets the story (almost) right: Circe was the name of the sorceress from the Odyssey who lived on the island Aea, and turned Ulysses' shipmates into pigs when they landed (but didn't shipwreck) there.

- + [p. 136/119] "[...] around Defcon II in the lexicon of squabble."

In the jargon of American military planners, the DEFCON scale (for Defence Readiness Condition) is used to describe the level of preparedness of U.S. military forces. I quote from The Language of Nuclear War -- An Intelligent Citizen's Dictionary by H. Eric Semler, James J. Benjamin, Jr., and Adam P. Gross:

"DEFCON 5 describes a state in which forces are at normal readiness, while DEFCON 1, referred to as the "cocked pistol," indicates a state of extreme emergency, when forces are poised for attack. Not all U.S. military forces are simultaneously at the same DEFCON. The DEFCON varies depending upon the type of weapon with which the troops are equipped and the region in which they are deployed. For example, U.S. troops in South Korea are always at DEFCON 4 but soldiers tending nuclear missiles deployed in the continental U.S. are normally kept at DEFCON 5. During the Cuban Missile Crisis, President John F. Kennedy raised the DEFCON of U.S. forces to DEFCON 2 (a status just below wartime conditions)."

- [p. 137/120] "'Oh? It's all wishing on stars and fairy dust, is it?'"

Fairly standard magic-related concepts, but perhaps it should be noted that wishing on stars is done in Disney's *_Pinocchio_*, while fairy dust features heavily in *_Peter Pan_* (both the original play and the subsequent Disney movie).

- [p. 137/120] "'[...] and no one doesn't get burned who sticks their hand in a fire.'"

I feel that in *_Witches Abroad_* Terry was experimenting much more than usual with the literary device of foreshadowing. This is only one of the many instances in the book where something is said that means nothing to the reader first time around, but which suddenly becomes very significant when you notice it during a re-read, and you already know what is going to happen later.

- [p. 139/122] "'What some people need,' said Magrat, [...], 'is a bit more heart.' 'What some people need,' said Granny Weatherwax, [...], 'is a lot more brain.' [...] What *I* need, thought Nanny Ogg fervently, is a drink.'"

These are references to the Tin Man, Scarecrow and Lion respectively, once you remember that an alcoholic drink is also known as 'Dutch courage'. In fact, in the original book the courage the Lion is given comes in a bottle, and many feel that Baum had alcohol in mind when he wrote it.

- [p. 139/122] The farmhouse landing on Nanny Ogg, and the subsequent events involving dwarfs looking for ruby-coloured footwear are references to *_The Wizard of Oz_*.

All Terry's references are to the movie version, incidentally, not the book. In the book Dorothy obtains Silver Shoes instead of Ruby Slippers, doesn't say anything approaching "... we're not in Kansas any more", and of course the book doesn't have a 'dingdong' song.

- [p. 140/123] "'You know, Greebo,' she said. 'I don't think we're in Lancre.'"

Dorothy, to her dog, in *_The Wizard of Oz_*: "Toto, I've a feeling we're not in Kansas anymore."

- [p. 148/130] "'[...] that girl with the long pigtails in a tower [...] Rumpelstiltskin or someone.'"

The girl with the long hair is Rapunzel from the famous fairy tale of the same name. 'Rumpelstiltskin' is a different, unrelated fairy tale involving a dwarf spinning gold out of straw.

- [p. 153/134] "Not a Ronald in sight."

Terry says: "Yep... direct use of existing East London rhyming slang there (Richard the Third = turd)."

- [p. 159/139] "'That's 'cos you're a wet hen, Magrat Garlick,' said Granny.'"

When questioned about the phrase, Terry explained: "Perfectly good British slang. A 'wet hen' is bedraggled, sad and useless. Probably not as useless as a big girl's blouse, though, and better off than a lame duck."

+ [p. 173/152] "'My full name's Erzulie Gogol,' said Mrs Gogol. 'People call me Mrs Gogol.'"

This resonates with In the Heat of the Night (see the annotation for p. 365/277 of Men at Arms), in so much as we have two persons of the same profession, one of them black, the other white, and one of them *way* out of her territory.

The name 'Erzuli' comes directly from Voodoo religion. Maitresse Erzulie (also known as Ezili) is the ideal figure of womanhood, and the spirit of love and beauty.

- [p. 174/153] "'This is Legba, a dark and dangerous spirit,' said Mrs Gogol."

Legba (also known as Papa Legba or Legba Ati-bon) is the Voodoo spirit of the cross-roads, where the Above meets the Below. He is "on both sides of the mirror". He leans on a stick, and another of his symbols is the macoutte (straw sack). Chickens are sacrificed to him by twisting their neck till they are dead.

- [p. 176/154] "So he said 'Get me an alligator sandwich -- and make it quick!'"

It is obvious that Granny is trying to tell a joke here -- and failing miserably. The problem was that quite a few readers (including yours truly) were having trouble figuring out what that joke was supposed to be in the first place.

People started asking about the Alligator Joke so frequently on alt.fan.pratchett, that eventually Terry himself posted the following "definitive explanation of the alligator joke":

"It is (I hope) obvious that Granny Weatherwax has absolutely no sense of humour but she has, as it were, heard about it. She has no grasp of how or why jokes work -- she's one of those people who say "And then what happened?" after you've told them the punchline. She can vaguely remember the one-liner "Give me an alligator sandwich -- and make it snappy!" but since she's got no idea of why it's even mildly amusing she gets confused... all that she can remember is that apparently the man wants it quickly."

When conversation on the net then turned to the origins of the joke, he followed up with:

"As a matter of fact, I'm pretty sure I first came across the joke in an ancient US comedy routine -- Durante or someone like him. It sounds burlesque."

See the annotation for p. 195/159 of Mort for another type of meta-joke based on the alligator joke.

- [p. 177/155] Emberella --> Embers; Cinderella --> Cinders...

- [p. 179/157] "'I am called Saturday.' 'Man Saturday, eh?' said Nanny Ogg.

Nanny is thinking of Man Friday as in Robinson Crusoe's native friend. But Saturday is of course none other than Baron Samedi (Samedi = Saturday), the Voodoo keeper of cemeteries and lord of zombies. He appears as a skeleton wearing a top hat and a black cane.

- [p. 197/172] "Nanny Ogg waved the jug again. 'Up your eye!' she said. 'Mud in your bottom!'"

The two traditional English toasts being mixed up here are "bottoms up" and "here's mud in your eye".

- [p. 198/174] "[...] Nanny Ogg and the coachmen were getting along, as she put it, like a maison en flambe."

See the annotation for p. 313/284 of *_Guards! Guards!_*

- [p. 199/175] "[...] Nanny Ogg kept calling them 'Magrats', but they were trousers, and very practical."

Calling them Magrats is a reference to Bloomers, originally a female costume consisting of jacket, shirt and Turkish trousers gathered closely around the ankles, introduced by Mrs Amelia Bloomer of New York in 1849. Associated with the Woman's Rights Movement, the outfit met with little success. Nowadays 'bloomers' is applied to the trouser portion only.

- [p. 228/201] "'This is [...] Sir, Roger de Coverley.'"

'Sir Roger de Coverley' is the title of a folk dance.

- [p. 228/201] "'...my name is Colonel Moutarde...'"

'Moutarde' is French for 'mustard'. Colonel Mustard is the name of one of the characters in the board game (and subsequent movie) *_Clue_* (or *_Cluedo_*).

- [p. 229/201] Casanunda, "the world's greatest lover", refers to our world's Casanova. Notice that Casanova is often roughly pronounced as 'Casanover' (emphasis on the 'over'), and that Casanunda (emphasis on the 'unda') is a dwarf...

Actually, Casanunda is lying, because we later find out he's only the world's **second** greatest lover. But this should not surprise us, since yet even later (in *_Lords and Ladies_*) we also find out that he is an Outrageous Liar.

- [p. 235/207] "Nanny Ogg's voyages on the sea of intersexual dalliance had gone rather further than twice around the lighthouse, [...]"

A popular way of staving off boredom at typical British seaside holiday resorts is to take a trip in a small boat, which will often journey out as far as the local lighthouse and circumnavigate it. Hence the above colloquialism, implying that Nanny's experiences were not limited to the inshore waters of male/female relationships.

- [p. 248/218] "The maiden, the mother and the crone."

Traditionally, the wiccan goddess (see Equal Rites annotation) is viewed as the triple entity maiden/mother/crone, and our witches indeed echo this model. Neil Gaiman uses the triple goddess quite often in his Sandman series.

- [p. 249/219] "Mrs Gogol's hut travelled on four large duck feet, which were now rising out of the swamp."

Baba Yaga is a witch in Russian folklore, who had a hut that stood, and was able to turn around, on chicken feet. I don't believe that hut could walk, however. (Neil Gaiman seemed to think it could, though: Baba Yaga and a walking hut figure in Book 3 of his excellent Books of Magic.)

One of Mussorgsky's Pictures at an Exhibition ('House on hen's legs') also refers back to Baba Yaga, by way of another Russian's painting of said fairy tale hut.

- + [p. 252/222] "'I'm a world-famous liar.' 'Is that true?' 'No.'"

Casanunda here recreates the famous liar paradox: Epimenides the Cretan saying "All Cretans are liars". For more information on this paradox see any good book about logic puzzles, although I particularly recommend Douglas R. Hofstadter's Metamagical Themas.

- [p. 252/222] "'Well, maybe I'm only No. 2,' said Casanunda. 'But I try harder.'"

This was the catchphrase from a well-known ad campaign in the late 60s. The No. 2 was car rental firm Avis; Hertz was No. 1.

- [p. 274/241] "'[...] what was that Tsortean bloke who could only be wounded if you hit 'im in the right place?'"

Nanny is thinking of the Discworld version of Achilles, who was invincible except for a small spot on his heel.

- [p. 285/252] "Nanny kicked her red boots together idly. 'Well, I suppose there's no place like home,' she said."

Another Wizard of Oz reference (kicking her shoes together three times and saying a similar sentence invoked the spell that transported Dorothy home from Oz).

- + [p. 285/252] "But they went the long way, and saw the elephant."

Several people were immediately reminded of Fritz Leiber's Hugo award winning novelette Gonna Roll The Bones, which ends: "Then he turned and headed straight for home, but he took the long way, around the world." Terry has said there is no conscious connection, however.

"Seeing the elephant" also resonates nicely with The Lord of the Rings, where Bilbo complains wistfully that he never got to see an elephant on *his* adventures 'abroad': "[...] Aragorn's affairs, and the White Council, and Gondor, and the Horsemen, and Southrons, and oliphaunts -- did you really see one, Sam? -- and caves and towers and golden trees and goodness knows what besides. I evidently came back by much too straight a road from my trip. I think Gandalf might have shown me round a bit."

Also, "to have seen the elephant" is British military slang dating back to the 19th century, and means to have taken part in one's first battle.

SMALL GODS

- [p. 8/7] "'I remember,' said Lu-Tze."

Lu-Tze is probably meant to parallel Lao-Tze, the writer of the _Tao Te Ching_ and thus one of the founders of Taoism. The mountain range he carries with him is reminiscent of stories told by and of Taoist and Buddhist sages.

- [p. 8/7] "'Young fellow called Ossory, wasn't there?'"

For what it's worth: an ossuary is a place where the bones of the dead are kept.

- [p. 9/8] The name 'Brutha' is of course pronounced as a jive-ified 'brother'.

- [p. 11/9] Brother Nhumrod.

Brother Nhumrod's name is not only an obvious pun on the man's sexual problems, but also refers to the Biblical Nimrod who was "a mighty hunter before the Lord" (Genesis 10:8).

- [p. 12/10] "Give me a boy up to the age of seven, Nhumrod had always said."

This is a reference to the Jesuit saying: "'Give me a child for the first seven years, and you may do what you like with him afterwards."

The Jesuits boasted that they could convert anyone if they just started early enough.

- + [p. 15/12] The Cenobiarch.

A cenobite is a "member of a religious order following a communal way of life". The 'arch' suffix denotes leadership (as in e.g. 'matriarch').

- [p. 15/12] "[...] and torturers, and Vestigial Virgins..."

See the annotation for p. 88/79 of _Reaper Man_.

- [p. 19/15] _You Don't Have To Be Pitilessly Sadistic To Work Here But It Helps!!!_

Refers to those lame stickers and signs in offices and work areas all over the world that say: "You don't have to be insane to work here but it helps!".

In _Eric_ a similar slogan is pasted on the door to the Discworld Hell ("You don't have to be 'Damned' to work here...").

- [p. 31/23] "De Chelonian Mobile [...] The Turtle Moves."

This whole theory parodies Galileo Galilei's struggle to get his theory of a moving earth (moving around the sun, that is) accepted by the Christian Church.

The specific phrasing of the motto refers to what Galileo supposedly uttered under his breath after recanting his theory to the Inquisition (mirrored by Didactylos having to do the same in front of Vorbis); "E pur si muove" -- "And yet it moves". This explains why the Chelonists say "The Turtle Moves" and not, say, "It's A Turtle" or "We're On A Turtle". After all, the point of contention is the existence of the turtle, not whether it's mobile or stationary.

+ [p. 31/23] "And what does that stand on?" he said."

This is the classic objection to the turtle theory, at least according to an anecdote that has been told about every big name scientist from Bertrand Russell to William James. In the story, the scientist, after giving a lecture on astronomy, is approached by a little old lady who says that he's got it all wrong and that the world in fact rests on the back of a giant turtle. The scientist then asks the lady what the turtle is standing on, and she answers: on the back of a second, even larger turtle. But, asks the scientist, what does *that* turtle stand on? To which the lady triumphantly answers: "You're very clever, young man, but it's no use -- it's turtles all the way down!".

+ [p. 53/39] "He was eight feet tall? With a very long beard? And a huge staff? And the glow of the holy horns shining out of his head?"

Michaelangelo depicted Moses with horns after coming down from Mount Sinai. This can be traced back to a dubious translation from the original Hebrew word 'keren', which can mean both 'horn' and 'ray of light'.

- [p. 55/40] "I was beginning to think I was a tortoise dreaming about being a god."

This parallels one of the writings of Chuang Tzu, a Taoist sage:

"Once Chuang Chou dreamt he was a butterfly, a butterfly flitting and fluttering around, happy with himself and doing as he pleased. He didn't know he was Chuang Chou. Suddenly he woke up, and there he was, solid and unmistakable Chuang Chou. But he didn't know if he was Chuang Chou who had dreamt he was a butterfly, or a butterfly dreaming he was Chuang Chou."

- [p. 60/44] "The other novices make fun of him, sometimes. Call him The Big Dumb Ox."

St Thomas Aquinas (1224-1274) was called the "the dumb ox" by his fellow students due to his silence during theological disputes at the university. He just listened, or perhaps lurked is a better term. He also had a large and awkward frame, like Brutha.

The story goes that Thomas' teacher (Albertus Magnus, see the annotation for p. 221/180 of *_Mort_*) rebuked the insensitive students by saying: "His name will be remembered long after yours are all forgotten". He was right. Thomas Aquinas was canonised less than a century later. (And so was Albertus Magnus, but not until 1931.)

- [p. 78/57] "He was good at raking paths. He left scallop patterns and gentle soothing curves."

This is a description of a Zen rock garden.

- + [p. 80/59] "'Nice fresh indulgences? Lizards? Onna stick?'"

Given the Medieval Catholic nature of Omnianism, Dhblah's trade in indulgences (time off for a loved one in Purgatory) isn't at all surprising.

- [p. 83/60] "Below it, the doors of the Great Temple, each one made of forty tons of gilded bronze, opened by the breath (it was said) of the Great God Himself, swung open ponderously and -- and this was the holy part -- silently."

The doors of a temple in Alexandria were opened by a steam engine designed by the Greek philosopher Hero. With similar legends surrounding it.

This is a myth, however. Hero *did* invent a steam "engine", but it was merely a small sphere that rotated due to steam pressure (history's earliest executive toy?) There is no evidence that he ever used the invention for any real work (e.g. opening doors).

- [p. 87/64] "'And -- that other one. The *eminence* grease*.'"

Eminence grise = "grey eminence", as in "shadowy power".

- [p. 90/66] "'[...] they have to cross a terrible desert and you weigh their heart in some scales [...] And if it weighs less than a feather, they are spared the hells.'"

In Egyptian myth, a dead man was judged by Osiris, Thoth, Anubis and forty-two Assessors in the Hall of Judgement in the Underworld. His heart was balanced against the Feather of Truth while he made his Confession. If his heart was heavy (with guilt), then the monster Amit ate the heart. See the Egyptian Book of the Dead for more details.

- + [p. 92/67] "Give me that old-time religion..."

This is the title to a song, originally belonging to the evangelist revival camp meeting category, which has the chorus:

"Give me that old time religion,
Give me that old time religion,
Give me that old time religion,
Cos it's good enough for me."

It has been taken up by the SF filk community ('filk' = folk singing, but with funny or parodying lyrics), which has added verses like:

"Let's sing praise to Aphrodite
She may seem a little flighty,
but she wears a green gauze nighty,
And she's good enough for me."

and the Lovecraftian:

"We will worship old Cthulhu,
Yes, we'll worship old Cthulhu,
I can't find a rhyme for Cthulhu
And that's good enough for me."

- [p. 100/73] "You have to walk a lonesome desert... You have to walk it all alone..."

Terry said in an article to a.f.p: "This probably is a good time to raise the 'lonesome valley/lonesome desert' lines from _Small Gods_, with apologies to you who, because of finance, heel-dragging by publishers or because you threw all that tea in the harbour, haven't read it yet. Yes, I know variants of the song have turned up on various folk/country/spiritual albums over the last forty years, but some American friends tracked variations of it back to the last century and the anonymous mists of folk Christianity. So I used it, like everyone else has done. Like 'Lord of the Dance', it's one of those songs that transcends a specific religion -- and also a very attractive use of language."

+ [p. 105/77] "The Voice of the Turtle was heard in the land."

The Bible, Song of Solomon 2:12:

The flowers appear on the earth;
the time of the singing of birds is come,
and the voice of the turtle is heard in our land;

The fig tree putteth forth her green figs,
and the vines with the tender grape give a good smell.
Arise, my love, my fair one, and come away.

Note that the biblical 'turtle' in fact refers to the turtledove.

+ [p. 106/77] "'I am what I am. I can't help it if people think something else.'"

This is **not** a Popeye reference! "I am that I am" is what God said to Moses in answer to the questions "What is his name? What shall I say to them?" (Exodus 3:14).

- [p. 108/79] "There was Sergeant Simony, a muscular young man [...]"

'Simony' is the religious crime of selling benefices. Since Terry doesn't refer to or joke about this second meaning at all in the rest of the book, I had left this annotation out of previous versions of the APF, but people kept writing me about it, so this time I've put it in for completeness' sake.

- [p. 114/83] "'Three years before the shell.'"

The phrase "x years before the mast" was used by sailors to indicate the length of time they've been in their profession. Common seamen slept in the forward part of the ship, i.e. before the main mast on sailing ships. Officers slept in the after part of the ship where they could get easy access to the tiller.

- [p. 117/85] Terry Pratchett translates the book title *Ego-Video Liber Deorum* here as *Gods: A Spotter's Guide*.

Actually, the dog Latin translates more literally to *The I-Spy Book of Gods*. I-Spy books are little books for children with lists of things to look out for. When you see one of these things you tick a box and get some points. When you get enough points you can send off for a badge. They have titles like *The I-Spy Book of Birds* and *The I-Spy Book of Cars*.

- [p. 117/85] "Or, to put it another way the existence of a badly put-together watch proved the existence of a blind watchmaker."

This whole section is parodying the creationist argument that complex creatures such as those which exist in the world could only be the product of deliberate design and hence must have been created by a Supreme Being rather than by a 'blind' process such as evolution. Evolutionary biologist Richard Dawkins provided a counter-argument in his book *The Blind Watchmaker*.

- [p. 119/87] "It was worse than women aboard. It was worse than albatrosses."

Both women and albatrosses are traditionally considered bad luck on a ship. For a classic example of the latter, just recall Samuel Taylor Coleridge's poem *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner*.

- + [p. 126/92] "The shepherd had a hundred sheep, and it might have been surprising that he was prepared to spend days searching for one sheep; [...]"

Another Biblical allusion. Jesus used this as a parable for the mercy of God, in Matthew 18:12: "How think ye? if a man have an hundred sheep, and one of them be gone astray, doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and goeth into the mountains, and seeketh that which is gone astray?"

- [p. 127/92] "[...] the priests of Ur-Gilash [...]"

The name is a composite of several ancient names. The Epic of Gilgamesh is an ancient Babylonian tale which contains some interesting parallels to contemporary Biblical stories. Gil-Galash was ruler of one of the Euphrates civilisations. And Ur was, of course, a Babylonian city, as well as a prefix signifying "primal" or "original".

- + [p. 131/95] "'According to Book One of the Septateuch, anyway.'"

A reference to the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible/Torah. I am surprised that on the Discworld this didn't become the Octateuch...

- + [p. 138/100] "'There's one of 'em that sits around playing a flute most of the time and chasing milkmaids.'"

This describes Krishna, an avatar or incarnation of the god Vishnu in Indian mythology, who spent his youth playing the flute and dancing with as many as 100 milkmaids at a time.

- [p. 139/101] Legibus's entrance incorporates some concepts borrowed from several legends of famous philosophers.

Archimedes was the one who jumped out of the bath and ran naked down the street shouting 'Eureka!' after he'd discovered the principle of fluid displacement. He also said "Give me but a place to stand and a long enough lever, and I can move the world", a quote that Terry repeatedly uses in different forms. The "Number Nine pot and some string, please" probably refers to the ancient method of calculating the curvature of the Earth's surface as done by Eratosthenes of Cyrene. The drawing of triangles vaguely recalls Pythagoras.

- [p. 142/103] "[...] putting a thirty-foot parabolic reflector on a high place to shoot the rays of the sun at an enemy's ships [...]"

Legend has it that Archimedes did just this in the defence of the city of Syracuse in 213 BC.

- [p. 143/103] ""[...] some intricate device that demonstrated the principles of leverage by incidentally hurling balls of burning sulphur two miles.""

This is a description of the Ballista, another weapon supposedly invented by Archimedes.

- [p. 152/110] "[...] if Xeno the Ephebian said, 'All Ephebians are liars --'"

This is the Liar Paradox again. See the annotation for p. 252/222 of Witches Abroad.

- [p. 153/111] ""That's right,' he said. 'We're philosophers. We think, therefore we am.'"

Play on Descartes' famous philosophical pronouncement "Cogito, ergo sum" -- "I think, therefore I am".

- + [p. 153/111] ""Thesis plus antithesis equals hysteresis" said Ibid."

A play on the central tenet of dialectical materialism, which was lifted (by Marx and Engels) from Hegelian philosophy: "Thesis plus antithesis yields synthesis".

- [p. 154/112] ""Fedecks the Messenger of the Gods, one of the all-time greats,' said Xeno."

Federal Express (or FedEx) is an overnight shipping courier service.

- [p. 154/112] A running gag in the book is the penguin associated with Patina, the Goddess of Wisdom. This refers to Minerva or Pallas Athena (*Pal*-las A-*thena*, get it, get it?), who was the Roman/Greek goddess of wisdom, and whose symbol was an owl.

- + [p. 159/115] The Greek name Didactylos, besides having the word 'didactic' as its root (very appropriate for a philosopher), also translates as 'Two-fingers'.

The British equivalent of "giving someone the finger" consists of extending two fingers upwards, palm facing the gesturer, in a kind of rotated 'V for Victory' sign.

The origin of this rude gesture is supposed to date back to the battle of Agincourt. In those days the French used to cut the index and middle fingers off the right hands of any British archers they happened to catch, in order to render them useless for further shooting should they e.g. ever manage to escape and rejoin their army.

When the English finally won the battle (largely thanks to their longbowmen) the gesture quickly evolved from a Frenchmen-ridiculing "look what I still got" statement into a more general rudeness.

Whether this story, charming as it may be, is in fact completely incorrect, or only partially incorrect, or completely correct after all, is something I will no longer be attempting to resolve in this annotation, since proponents of all three theories have been supplying me with quotes from various history books in order to support their claim.

- [p. 164/118] "Candidates for the Tyrantship were elected by the placing of black or white balls in various urns, thus giving rise to a well-known comment about politics."

That comment probably being: "It's all a load of balls".

- [p. 168/121] *_Nil Illegitimo Carborundum_* is dog Latin for "Don't let the bastards grind you down".

Variants of it crop up in various places, most notably *_Nil Carborundi Illegitimo_* which apparently is a key phrase in the Illuminati mythos.

- [p. 170/122] Urn's name is a reference to the old joke:

Question: "What's a Greek urn?"
Answer: "About \$2,50 an hour!"

Or, as the *_Goon Show_* put it:

-- "What's a Greek urn?"
-- "It's a vase made by Greeks for storing liquid."
-- "I wasn't expecting that answer."
-- "Neither were quite a few smart-alec listeners."

- [p. 178/128] "'Worried, eh? Feeling a bit *Avis Domestica*? Cluck-cluck?'"

Actually, the Latin name for 'chicken' is *_Gallus Domesticus_* -- even though 'avis' by itself does mean 'bird'.

- [p. 178/129] "He caught a glimpse of a circle of damp sand, covered with geometrical figures. Om was sitting in the middle of them."

The whole scene with Om drawing shapes in the sand is a reference to the computer programming language Logo, in which figures are drawn by a turtle-shaped cursor ('turtle graphics'). In fact, it was also possible to get a real 'turtle': a little robot attached to a Logo machine by a long cable which would walk around on a big sheet of paper.

- [p. 180/130] "'Ah,' said Didactylos. 'Ambi-sinister?' 'What?' 'He means incompetent with both hands,' said Om."

Ambidextrous means able to use both hands equally well. 'dextr-' is the prefix meaning "right" as in "right hand". 'Sinistr-' is the prefix meaning "left". Hence: ambi-sinister = having two left hands.

- [p. 182/131] "The Library of Ephebe was -- before it burned down -- the second biggest on the Disc."

Refers of course to our world's Alexandrian Library. Brewer tells us that this Library was supposed to have contained 700,000 volumes. It was already burned and partially consumed in 391, but when the city fell into the hands of the calif Omar, in 642, the Arabs found books sufficient to "heat the baths of the city for six months".

Legend has it that Omar ordered the Library torched because all the books in it either agreed with the Koran, and were therefore superfluous; or else disagreed with the Koran, and were therefore heretical, but this is probably just apocryphal. Other references say that the inhabitants of Alexandria torched the scrolls themselves in order to keep the knowledge out of the hands of the Arabs.

- [p. 182/131] "[...] a whole gallery of unwritten books [...]"

Libraries of unwritten books are of course very rare, but do tend to crop up occasionally in L-Space. The library described in the opening section of _Beyond Life_ by James Branch Cabell contains the novels of David Copperfield as well as Milton's _King Arthur_. In Neil Gaiman's _Sandman_, Lucien's library (a direct homage to Cabell) also contains books that were never written, such as _Alice's Journey Beyond The Moon_ by Lewis Carroll, _The Lost Road_ by J. R. R. Tolkien, and P. G. Wodehouse's _Psmith and Jeeves_. There's also a library of future books in Robin McKinley's novel _Beauty_.

Finally, other people were reminded of the library in Jorge Luis Borges' story _The Library of Babel_, where a vast universe is described which contains *all* possible books (assuming a finite alphabet and a fixed book size the number of all possible books is mindbogglingly huge, but finite) -- in random order. Most books in such a library would appear written by the 'monkey and typewriter' brigade, but all the coherent books, whether actually written or not, are in there as well.

All libraries are connected through L-Space anyway, aren't they?

- [p. 183/132] Didactylos carrying a lantern and living in a barrel is a reference to Diogenes, the famous philosopher who is reputed to have done the same.
- [p. 184/132] Aristocrates = Aristotle + Socrates + aristocratic.
- [p. 185/133] "Art was not permitted in Omnia."

The comment about no art and pictures being allowed in Om resonates with similar prohibitions in various real world religions, ranging from the Muslims to the Amish.

- [p. 208/150] "'Ah gentlemen,' said Didactylos. 'Pray don't disturb my circles.'"

Legend has it that when Syracuse was eventually taken the Roman soldiers

entered Archimedes' house as he was trying to solve a geometrical problem. He had just been drawing some figures on the floor of his house when the soldiers entered. "Gentlemen, pray don't disturb my circles," Archimedes is reported to have said to the soldiers, one of whom then drew his sword and slew him on the spot.

- [p. 209/150] "'You don't belong to the Quisition,' said the Corporal. 'No. But I know a man who does,' said Brutha."

In the UK there were a series of adverts for the AA (Automobile Association) where people were in various dire motoring trouble. They were asked by a passenger (say) if they knew how to get out of it. They replied either: "No. But I know a man who can." or "No. But I know a man who does." It's now very much a part of English idiom.

- + [p. 215/154] "'Describe what an Ambiguous Puzuma looks like,' he demanded."

Brutha goes on to describe the Puzuma as having its ears laid flat against its head. Of course, as we learned in the footnote on p. 178/171 of Pyramids, in a Puzuma's "natural state", everything is laid flat against everything else...

- [p. 220/158] "'One minute upright, next minute a draught-excluder.'"

Discussions on a.f.p., initiated by a puzzled American reader, revealed that the concept of a 'draught-excluder' is one of those things only British readers are familiar with. Many English houses, especially older ones, have doors with a gap at the bottom, which will allow cold draughts into the room. To solve this, rather than simple expedients such as making doors that fit, the English instead place a cylindrical stuffed object (often shaped amusingly like a snake with felt eyes and tongue, for the tackily inclined) along the bottom of the door to keep out the draughts. Hence: a draught excluder.

I have been informed that the English exported their draught excluders to Australia as well, and that Croatians also know them, but use them for windows rather than for doors.

- [p. 225/161] "'Tell him you can't recall!'"

"I can't recall" was the mantra of the White House officials during the investigation of the Iran-Contra scandal in the late 1980s.

- [p. 226/162] "'Life in this world,' he said, 'is, as it were, a sojourn in a cave.'"

This paragraph is a very loose parody of a famous Socratic dialogue in Plato's Republic, Book VII. I quote (and edit down a wee bit) from Labyrinths of Reason by William Poundstone, p. 203:

"Behold! human beings living in an underground den, which has a mouth open toward the light and reaching all along the den; here they have been from childhood, and have their legs and necks chained so that they cannot move, and can only see before them, being prevented by the chains from turning round their heads. Above and behind them a fire is blazing at a distance, and between the fire and the prisoners there is a raised way, like the screen which marionette players have in front of them, over

which they show the puppets.

[...] and they see only their own shadows, or the shadows of one another, which the fire throws on the opposite wall of the cave? [...] And of the objects which are being carried in like manner they would see only the shadows? [...] And if they were able to converse with one another, would they not suppose they were naming what was actually before them? [...] To them, I said, the truth would be literally nothing but the shadows of the images."

- [p. 226/162] "Go on, do Deformed Rabbit ...it's my favourite."

Reference to the art of making shadow animals with your hands, as described on p. 43/36 of *_Moving Pictures_*: "Mainly my uncle did 'Deformed Rabbit', said Victor. 'He wasn't very good at it, you see.'"

- [p. 226/162] "'And the wrong sort of ash', said Vorbis."

The (true) story goes that British Rail was having difficulty one winter getting trains to run on time, which they blamed on the snow. They were then quizzed as to why their snow-ploughs couldn't deal with the problem. They replied that it was "the wrong sort of snow", a phrase that has now entered the English idiom.

In defence of British Rail it should be pointed out that their remark wasn't as silly as it seems at first sight: what happened was that fine, dry, powdery snow blew inside the traction motor cooling slots and, melting, caused the motors to arc over. It simply is very rare for British snow to be cold and dry enough to do this, hence the "wrong sort of snow" comment which the press, seeking as usual for any excuse to make fun of British Rail, leapt upon with great glee.

- [p. 231/166] Didactylos' anecdote about the royal road to learning parodies a similar one told about Aristotle and Alexander the Great.

- [p. 236/170] "'I'm just going out,' said Brutha. 'I may be some time.'"

Brutha here repeats the last words of Captain Oates, who walked out in a blizzard on Scott's unsuccessful Antarctic expedition, in order to try and save food for the remaining expedition members. He was never seen again. It didn't work.

+ [p. 249/179] "The scalbie took no notice. [...] It had perched on Om's shell."

Resonates with the *_B.C._* comic strip, which occasionally features a bird of indeterminate species standing on a turtle's shell. They don't get along very well, either.

- [p. 254/182] "'Got to have a whole parcel of worshippers to live on Nob Hill.'"

Nob Hill is an affluent section of San Francisco (which in turn got its name from 'nob', a British term of derision for upper-class people, especially those who are a little ostentatious with their wealth).

- [p. 259/186] "'Something that'd open the valve if there was too much steam. I think I could do something with a pair of revolving balls.'"

Urn's steam engines are more or less identical to the ones that were described by Archimedes and used in ancient Ephebe -- I mean Greece. These engines also used copper spheres as heating vessels, and these spheres did, in fact, have a regrettable tendency to explode, which is what limited their use until some bright person thought of adding overpressure relief valves.

These steam engines never really caught on, because of various practical problems and the greater cost-effectiveness of slave-power. See also the James Watt annotation for p. 175/153 of Reaper Man.

The contraption with revolving balls Urn is thinking of in the sentence quoted above was identified by several readers as something called a speed governor, invented by James Watt. This consists of two balls spinning on two opposite movable arms around a rotating central axis. When the centrifugal force gets large enough to lift the balls up, the movement opens a safety valve that lets off the steam, causing the rotation to slow down and the balls to come down again, closing the valve, etc. -- a simple but ingenious negative feedback device.

+ [p. 264/190] "There was a city once [...] there were canals, and gardens. There was a lake. They had floating gardens on the lake, [...]. Great pyramid temples that reached to the sky. Thousands were sacrificed."

This description evokes Tenochtitlan (now Mexico City), the capital of the ancient Aztec Empire. Tenochtitlan was built on islands in a lake (now drained) and was crossed by canals, and the floating gardens may still be seen, as may ruins of many pyramid temples on which thousands were indeed sacrificed.

+ [p. 277/198] "'About life being like a sparrow flying through a room? Nothing but darkness outside? And it flies through the room and there's just a moment of warmth and light?'"

This story appears in the Anglo-Saxon historian St Bede's account of the conversion of England to Christianity in the year 625. A noble relates this metaphor for human existence to King Edwin of Northumbria, and concludes, "Of what went before and of what is to follow, we are utterly ignorant. If therefore this new faith [Christianity] can give us some greater certainty, it justly deserves that we should follow it."

The original meaning of the parable was to describe the human condition, with life as a moment of light between two dark unknowns; it's a nice twist of irony that Terry here uses it to describe the **divine** condition instead.

- [p. 286/205] "Like many early thinkers, the Ephebians believed that thoughts originated in the heart, and that the brain was merely a device to cool the blood."

In our world this idea was originally proposed by none other than Aristotle. Aristotle got almost everything to do with natural history dead wrong, although in his defense it must be said that it was not his fault that later cultures took his works to be Absolute Truth instead of trying to experiment and find things out for themselves.

+ [p. 287/206] "[...] promises in his head."

The Small Gods' offer that "All this can be yours, if you just worship *me*..." parallels the Temptation of Christ in the desert, during his forty days' fast before starting his preaching.

The offer of food is similar, but more closely related to St Peter's vision in Acts 10:11, in which a blanket is lowered from heaven, containing all sorts of ritually unclean food, notably Pork (the Roast Pig which is proffered by the Small Gods).

+ [p. 289/207] "The wheel had been nailed flat on the top of a slim pole."

St Simon Stylites (or Simon the Elder), a Syrian Monk, spent the last 39 years of his life living atop a pole. There are quite a few accounts of pole sitting in Syrian Monasticism, and a variety of other hermits and extremely pious lunatics also lived this way.

- [p. 290/208] "'My parents named me Sevrian Thaddeus Ungulant, [...]"

The hero of Gene Wolfe's science fiction novel *Book of the New Sun* is called Severian. Like Brutha, Severian has a problem with forgetting things.

St. Ungulant's sidekick Angus resonates with the breed of cattle of the same name (the Aberdeen Angus), which in turn may not be entirely unrelated to the fact that an 'ungulate' is a hoofed mammal.

- [p. 307/220] "'A nod's as good as a poke with a sharp stick to a deaf camel, as they say.'"

A reference to the British saying "A nod's as good as a wink to a blind horse", meaning that no hint is useful to one who does not notice it, implying that a hint is currently in progress. Terry combines this in typical fashion with the saying "It's better than a poke in the eye with a sharp stick".

Monty Python had similar fun with this proverb in their "Nudge nudge" sketch: "'A nod's as good as a poke with a sharp stick to a deaf camel, as they say.'"

- [p. 321/230] "'What've you got? He's got an army! You've got an army? How many divisions have you got?'"

As the Allies in World War II were planning the landing in Italy, they had frequent meetings to discuss methods and consequences. On one of these meetings, Churchill made a reference to what the Pope would think about all this. To which Stalin replied, "The pope? How many divisions does he have?"

- [p. 324/232] "I don't know what effect it's going to have on the enemy, he thought, but it scares the hells out of me."

Paraphrases a comment made by the Duke of Wellington immediately before the Battle of Waterloo, about his own troops, in particular about the Highland regiments (large, hairy, kilts, bagpipes, etc.).

+ [p. 325/233] "'We said, the first thing we'll do, we'll kill all the priests!'"

Paraphrases a line from Shakespeare's *King Henry VI*, part 2, act 4, scene 2 (a play that's also about bloody revolution): "The first thing we do, let's kill all the lawyers."

- [p. 327/234] "Bishops move diagonally."

Reference to chess moves.

+ [p. 340/244] "[...] plunged his beak through the brown feathers between the talons, and *gripped*."

While I agree with Terry that biological correctness shouldn't stand in the way of a good joke or plot point, I feel it should still be pointed out that the organs Om is presumably aiming for don't exist in birds. They simply haven't got the balls.

- [p. 341/244] "When you have their full attention in your grip, their hearts and minds will follow."

'Testiculos' does not *quite* translate as 'full attention'.

The correct version of the quote originates with Chuck Colson, one of Richard Nixon's Watergate henchmen.

- [p. 346/248] "[...] two pounds of tortoise, travelling at three metres a second, hit him between the eyes."

Brewer tells us that in 456 BC Aeschylus, "the most sublime of the Greek tragic poets", was "killed by a tortoise thrown by an eagle (to break the shell) against his bald head, which it mistook for a stone".

Somebody on alt.fan.pratchett accused Terry of using 'deus ex machina' solutions too often in the Discworld novels, and cited this as a particular example. After all, everything has been going just swimmingly for Vorbis right until the very end, when the situation is simply resolved by having Om smash into him. In answer to this, Terry wrote:

"This is a valid point... but the key is whether the 'solution' is inherent in the story.

Consider one of the most basic lessons of folk tale. The young adventurer meets the old woman begging for food and gives her some; subsequently (she being, of course, a witch) he becomes king/wins the princess/etc with her aid, because of his actions earlier.

A solution doesn't 'come along'; it's built into the fabric of the story from an early stage. *Guards! Guards!* and *Interesting Times* both use this device. I'd suggest that such a resolution is perfectly valid -- as they say, using a gun to shoot the bad guy in Act 3 is only okay if the gun has been on the wall since Act 1. In *Small Gods*, though, not a single new thing is introduced or resurrected in order to defeat Vorbis -- he's defeated because of the way various characters react to events. The problem contains the solution coiled inside.

If it's cowardice not to kill off your heroes but let them survive because luck runs their way, then I'll plead guilty in the certain knowledge that I won't get within a mile of the dock because of the

crowds of authors and directors already there....-)"

- [p. 352/252] "'Right. Right. That's all I'm looking for. Just trying to make ends hummus.'"

Hummus is a meat substitute, made from chickpeas, usually eaten in Middle Eastern countries.

- + [p. 355/254] "YOU HAVE PERHAPS HEARD THE PHRASE, he said, THAT HELL IS OTHER PEOPLE?"

"Hell is other people" is a quote from, and the message of, Jean-Paul Sartre's play *No Exit*.

- [p. 355/255] Could the name Fasta Benj possibly be derived from 'Faster, Ben Johnson'?
- [p. 377/270] "REMIND ME AGAIN, he said, HOW THE LITTLE HORSE-SHAPED ONES MOVE."

Refers back to a joke on p. 12/14 of *Sourcery*, where we are told that Death dreads playing symbolic last chess games because "he could never remember how the knight was supposed to move".

- There is a rumour going round that there was to be a crucifixion scene at the end of this book but that the publishers made Terry take it out. To quote Terry on this: "Crucifixion in *Small Gods*: this is a familiar thing to me, a DW 'fact' that's gone through several retellings. Nothing's been taken out of *Small Gods*, or put in, and there was no pressure to do either."

LORDS AND LADIES

- [p. 5/5] "[...] young Magrat, she of the [...] tendency to be soppy about raindrops and roses and whiskers on kittens."

One of the best songs from *The Sound of Music* is called 'My Favourite Things' (it's the song Maria sings for the Von Trapp children when they are all frightened of the thunderstorm). The opening verse goes:

"Raindrops on roses and whiskers on kittens,
Bright copper kettles and warm woollen mittens,
Brown paper packages, tied up with strings,
These are a few of my favourite things."

The Von Trapp children would probably have murdered Magrat if she had been their governess.

- + [p. 13/11] "But that was a long time ago, in the past [footnote: Which is another country]"

This might refer to *Hamlet*, where the future is described as "The undiscover'd country from whose bourn / No traveller returns", or perhaps Terry has read *The Go-between*, a 1950 book by L. P. Hartley, which opens with the words: "The past is a foreign country; they do things differently there", which has become a familiar quotation in England.

- [p. 13/11] "And besides, the bitch is... ..older."

This is another Christopher Marlowe quote, from The Jew of Malta (act IV, scene i):

Barnadine: "Thou hast committed --"

Barabas: "Fornication? But that was in another country;
and besides, the wench is dead."

- [p. 20/16] "This was the octarine grass country."

A reference to (Kentucky) bluegrass country.

- [p. 20/16] "Then, [...] the young corn lay down. In a circle."

An explanation of the Crop Circle phenomenon might be in order here.

Crop Circles are circular patches of flattened crops which have appeared in fields of cereals in the South and West of England over the last few years. There is no firm evidence pointing to their cause: this has been taken by certain parties as a *prima facie* proof that they are of course caused by either alien spacecraft or by some supernatural intelligence, possibly in an attempt to communicate.

In recent years, circle systems have become increasingly elaborate, most notably in the case of a circle in the shape of the Mandelbrot Set, and another system which is shown on the cover of the recent Led Zeppelin compilation album, which seems to indicate that whoever's up there they probably have long hair and say Wow! and Yeah! a lot. A number of staged circle-forging challenges in the summer of '92 have demonstrated both how easy it is to produce an impressive circle by mundane, not to say frivolous methods, and also the surprisingly poor ability of 'cereologists' to distinguish what they describe as a "genuine" circle from one "merely made by hoaxers".

Anyone with a burning desire to believe in paranormal explanations is invited to post to the newsgroup [sci.skeptic](#) an article asserting essentially "I believe that crop circles are produced by UFO's/Sun Spots/The Conservative Government/The Easter Bunny" and see how far they get....

- [p. 24/19] "Nanny Ogg never did any housework herself, but she was the cause of housework in other people."

Over on [alt.fan.pratchett](#) it was postulated that this sounded a bit too much like a quote not to be a quote (annotation-hunters can get downright paranoid at times), but it took us a while to figure out where it originated, although in retrospect we could have used Occam's razor and looked it up in Shakespeare immediately. In King Henry IV, part 2, act 1, scene 2, Falstaff says:

"I am not only witty in myself,
but the cause that wit is in other men."

- [p. 27/21] "Some people are born to kingship. Some achieve kingship, or at least Arch-Generalissimo-Father-of-His-Countryship. But Verence had kingship thrust upon him."

The original quote is (as usual) by William Shakespeare, from Twelfth Night (act 2, scene 5), where Malvolio reads in a letter (which he thinks was written to him by his mistress):

"In my stars I am above thee; but be not afraid of greatness: some are born great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon 'em."

The dictator most associated with the phrase 'Arch-Generalissimo-Father-of-His-Countryship' is probably Franco.

- [p. 28/21] "Now he was inspecting a complicated piece of equipment. It had a pair of shafts for a horse, and the rest of it looked like a cartful of windmills. [...] 'It's a patent crop rotator,' said Verence."

The patent crop rotator is an agricultural tool that might not figure very prominently in your day-to-day conversation (possibly since no such machine exists: crop rotation means growing different things in a field in successive years) but British comedy writers are apparently fascinated by it. Several people wrote to tell me that the cult TV comedy series The Young Ones also used the patent crop rotator in their episode Bambi.

When Neil (the hippy) is testing Rick (the nerd) on medieval history, the following dialogue ensues (edited somewhat for clarity):

Rick: 'Crop rotation in the 14th century was considerably more widespread... after... God I know this... don't tell me... after 1172?'

Neil: 'John.'

Rick: 'Crop rotation in the 14th century was considerably more widespread after John?'

Neil: '...Lloyd invented the patent crop rotator.'

- [p. 29/22] "'I asked Boggi's in Ankh-Morpork to send up their best dress-maker [...]'"

Boggi's = Gucci's.

- [p. 38/29] "[...] it was always cheaper to build a new 33-MegaLith circle than upgrade an old slow one [...]"

Think CPU's and MHz.

- [p. 40/30] "I LIKE TO THINK I AM A PICKER-UP OF UNCONSIDERED TRIFLES. Death grinned hopefully."

In Shakespeare's The Winter's Tale we find the character Autolycus ("a Rogue"), saying in act 4, scene 2:

"My father named me Autolycus; who being, as I am, littered under Mercury, was likewise a snapper-up of unconsidered trifles."

- [p. 42/31] "'My lord Lankin?'"

Lord Lankin is a character in a traditional folk ballad:

"Then Lankin's tane a sharp knife

that hung down by his gaire
And he has gi'en the bonny nane
A deep wound and a sair"

- [p. 67/50] "One of them was known as Herne the Hunted. He was the god of the chase and the hunt. More or less."

See the annotation for p. 145/144 of _Wyrd Sisters_.

- [p. 78/57] The names of the would-be junior witches.

Two of the names resonate with the names used in _Good Omens_: Agnes Nitt is similar to Agnes Nutter, and Amanita DeVice (Amanita is also the name of a gender of deadly poisonous mushrooms) is similar to Anathema Device. There's also a Perdita in Shakespeare's _The Winter's Tale_; the name means 'damned' or 'lost'.

In fact, all these names are based on the names of the so-called Lancashire Witches. The deeds of this group on and around Pendle Hill were the subject of probably England's most famous 17th century witchhunt and trials. The story is described in some fictional detail in a little-known book called, surprise, _The Lancashire Witches_, written at the end of the nineteenth century in Manchester by William Harrison Ainsworth.

Interestingly enough, Ainsworth also wrote a book called _Windsor Castle_ in which Herne the Hunter appears as a major character (see previous annotation).

- [p. 85/62] The names of the "new directions".

'East of the Sun, West of the Moon': a fairly well-known phrase used, amongst others, by Tolkien in a poem, by Theodore Roosevelt as the title for a book on hunting, and by pop-group A-ha as an album title. It originally is the title of an old Scandinavian fairy tale, which can be found in a book by Kay Nielsen, titled _East of the Sun and West of the Moon -- Old Tales from the North_. Terry has confirmed that this book was his source for the phrase.

'Behind the North Wind': from the title of a book by George McDonald: _At the Back of the North Wind_, the term itself being a translation of _Hyperborea_.

'At the Back Of Beyond': an idiom, perhaps originating from Sir Walter Scott's _The Antiquary_: "Whirled them to the back o' beyont".

'There and Back Again': The sub-title of Tolkien's _The Hobbit_.

'Beyond the Fields We Know': from Lord Dunsany's novel _The King of Elfland's Daughter_, where "the fields we know" refers to our world, as opposed to Elfland, which lies 'beyond'. The phrase was also used as the title of a collection of Dunsany's stories.

- [p. 86/63] ""You know, ooh-jar boards and cards [...] and paddlin' with the occult.""

ooh-jar = Ouija. See the annotation for p. 154/136 of _Reaper Man_.

- [p. 90/66] "'... and to my freind Gytha Ogg I leave my bedde and the rag rugge the smith in Bad Ass made for me, [...]"

The origins of the 'rag rugge' are more fully explained in Equal Rites.

- [p. 103/76] "'Kings are a bit magical, mind. They can cure dandruff and that.'"

Well, for one thing kings can cure dandruff by permanently removing people's heads from their shoulders, but I think that what Terry is probably referring to here is the folk-superstition that says that a King's touch can cure scrofula (also known as the King's Evil), which is a tubercular infection of the lymphatic glands.

A similar type of legend occurs in Tolkien's The Lord of the Rings, but Shakespeare also has a lot to say on the subject in Macbeth, act 4, scene 3.

+ [p. 105/76] "Within were the eight members of the Lancre Morris Men [...] getting to grips with a new art form."

In fact, many real life Morris teams put on so-called 'Mummers Plays': traditional plays with a common theme of death and resurrection. These ritual plays are performed on certain key days of the year, such as Midwinter's Day (Magrat's wedding is on Midsummer's Eve!), Easter, or All Souls Day (Halloween), at which time the Soul Cake play is performed. I am also told that a Soul Cake, traditionally served at All Souls, is similar to a Madeira Sponge (or 'yellow cake' as the Americans call it).

- [p. 106/77] "'We could do the Stick and Bucket Dance,' volunteered Baker the weaver."

There are Morris dances that use sticks, but according to my sources there aren't any that use buckets. Jason's reluctance to do this dance has its parallels in real world Morris dancing: at least in one area (upstate New York), a dance called the Webley Twizzle has a reputation for being hazardous to one's health, which is perhaps why it's hardly ever danced. It has even been claimed that someone broke his leg doing it, although no one seems to know any details. Of course, the reluctance of the Lancre Morris Men to perform the 'Stick and Bucket' may also have to do with the fact that the name of the dance very probably indicates another 'mettyfor' along the lines of maypoles and broomsticks.

See the ...and Dance section in Chapter 5 for more information about Morris dancing.

- [p. 106/77] "'And why's there got to be a lion in it?' said Baker the weaver."

Because the play-within-a-play performed by the rude mechanicals in A Midsummer Night's Dream (act 1, scene 2) also features a lion in a starring role, of course.

The Morris Men's discussions on plays and lions reminded one of my sources of the play written by Moominpapa in Moominsummer Madness by Tove Jansson. When asked about it, Terry said that although he has read the Moomin books, the lion dialogue is not connected with them.

- [p. 106/78] "'Hah, I can just see a real playsmith putting *donkeys* in a play!'"

A Midsummer Night's Dream, by that mediocre hack-writer William S., is an example of a real play that *has* a donkey in it. Or to be absolutely precise, a character magically cursed with a donkey's head.

- [p. 109/79] "The Librarian looked out at the jolting scenery. He was sulking. This had a lot to do with the new bright collar around his neck with the word "PONGO" on it. Someone was going to suffer for this."

The taxonomic name for orangutans is 'Pongo pygmaeus'. And of course Pongo is a popular dog name as well, doubling the insult.

- [p. 118/86] "[...] universes swoop and spiral around one another like [...] a squadron of Yossarians with middle-ear trouble."

Terry writes: "Can it be that this is forgotten? Yossarian -- the 'hero' of Catch-22 -- was the bomber pilot who flew to the target twisting and jinking in an effort to avoid the flak -- as opposed to the Ivy League types who just flew nice and straight..."

A minor correction: Yossarian was not the pilot, but rather the bombardier, who kept screaming instructions to the pilot over the intercom, to turn hard right, dive, etc.

+ [p. 118/86] "The universe doesn't much care if you step on a butterfly. There are plenty more butterflies."

This immediately recalls the famous science fiction short story A Sound of Thunder, by Ray Bradbury, which has as its basic premise that the universe cares very much indeed if someone steps on a butterfly.

+ [p. 121/89] "Good morning, Hodgesaargh," she said.

Hodgesaargh is based on Dave Hodges, a UK fan who runs a project called The REAL Hitch Hiker's Guide to the Galaxy. This is a computer database containing a couple of thousand entries (the project began in 1987) in the style of Douglas Adams's Hitch Hiker's Guide. Dave takes his Guide along with him to SF conventions and events, where he auctions off printed versions of the Guide in order to raise money for charity. This is why the Guide is not readily available, e.g. on the Internet.

One of the entries in the Guide concerns a computer virus called "Terry", which, it says, "autographs all the files on the disk as well as any nearby manuals".

In real life Dave Hodges works for a firm that keeps birds away from airports and other places. To this purpose he sometimes uses a falcon called, yes, Lady Jane, who bites all the time, which gave Terry the idea for the character Hodgesaargh.

Note that there exist at least two other "let's write a Hitch Hikers Guide" projects on the Internet that I know of. One of these is the Project Galactic Guide, which can be reached on the Web through the appropriate URL: <http://megadodo.com/>

+ [p. 123/89] "Verence, being king, was allowed a gyrfalcon [...]"

The complex issues of class distinction in falconry apparently existed in medieval times just as Terry describes them here. In The Once and Future King, T. H. White quotes a paragraph by Abbess Juliana Berners: "An emperor was allowed an eagle, a king could have a jerfalcon, and after that there was the peregrine for an earl, the merlin for a lady, the goshawk for a yeoman, the sparrow hawk for a priest, and the musket for a holy-water clerk."

- [p. 133/97] "[...] five flavours, known as 'up', 'down', 'sideways', 'sex appeal', and 'peppermint'."

The flavours of resons are a satire of the somewhat odd naming scheme modern physicists have chosen for the different known quarks, namely: 'up', 'down', 'strange', 'charm', and 'beauty' (in order of discovery and increasing mass).

Since theoretical physicists don't like odd numbers they have postulated the existence of a sixth quark -- 'truth', which was only recently created at FermiLab in the USA.

The beauty and truth quarks are often called 'bottom' and 'top' respectively. In earlier times (and sometimes even now), the strange quark was indeed called 'sideways'.

- + [p. 133/97] "_resons_ [footnote: Lit: 'Thing-ies']"

In Latin 'res' does indeed mean 'thing'.

- [p. 141/103] "'You are in my kingdom, woman,' said the Queen. 'You do not come or go without the leave of me.'"

This has echoes of another traditional ballad, this time 'Tam Lin':

"Why come you to Carterhaugh
Without command of me?
I'll come and go, young Janet said,
And ask no leave of thee"

As with some of the other folk song extracts Terry is closer to the recorded (in this case Fairport Convention) version than to the very early text in (say) the Oxford Book of Ballads.

- + [p. 144/104] "'Head for the gap between the Piper and the Drummer!'"

There are several stone circles in England similar to the Dancers. Usually, legend has it that a group of dancers, revellers, ball players, etc. got turned to stone by the devil's trickery, for not keeping the Sabbath, or for having too much fun, or some other awful transgression. The Merry Maidens stone circle, with two nearby standing stones known as the Pipers, is one such site in Cornwall; the Stanton Drew stone circles near Bristol, the petrified remains of a wedding party that got out of control, also include a stone circle said to be dancers with a nearby set of stones representing the fiddlers.

- [p. 153/111] "Magrat had tried explaining things to Mrs Scorbic the cook, but the woman's three chins wobbled so menacingly at words like 'vitamins' that she'd made an excuse to back out of the kitchen."

The technical name for vitamin C is ascorbic acid.

+ [p. 163/118] ""Like the horseshoe thing. [...] Nothing to do with its shape.""

Granny refers to the traditional explanation for hanging horseshoes over the door, which is that they bring luck, but only if placed with the open side up -- otherwise the luck would just run out the bottom.

- [p. 172/125] ""Good morrow, brothers, and wherehap do we whist this merry day?" said Carter the baker."

It is impossible to list all the ways in which the sections about the Lancre Morris Men and the play they are performing parodies the play-within-a-play that occurs in *A Midsummer Night's Dream*. The only way to get full enjoyment here is to just go out and read Shakespeare. While you're at it, pay particular attention to the names and occupations of both Terry's and William's 'Rude Mechanicals'.

+ [p. 173/125] ""And we're Rude Mechanicals as well?" said Baker the weaver."

Baker's next three lines are "Bum!", "Drawers!" and "Belly!". These come from a song by Flanders and Swann, which is called 'P**! P*! B****! B**! D*****!'. The first verse goes:

Ma's out, Pa's out, let's talk rude!
Pee! Po! Belly! Bum! Drawers!
Dance in the garden in the nude,
Pee! Po! Belly! Bum! Drawers!
Let's write rude words all down the street;
Stick out our tongues at the people we meet;
Let's have an intellectual treat!
Pee! Po! Belly! Bum! Drawers!

- [p. 174/126] ""Yeah, everyone knows 'tis your delight on a shining night', said Thatcher the carter."

It is relevant that Thatcher is making this remark to Carpenter the poacher, because it is a line from the chorus of an English folk song called 'The Lincolnshire Poacher':

"When I was bound apprentice in famous Lincolnshire
Full well I served my master for more than seven year'
'Til I took up to poaching, as you shall quickly hear

Oh 'tis my delight on a shining night
In the season of the year!"

- [p. 174/126] The three paths leading from the cross-roads in the woods are variously described as being "all thorns and briars", "all winding", and the last (which the Lancre Morris Men decide to take) as "Ferns grew thickly alongside it".

This echoes the poem and folk song 'Thomas the Rhymer', about a man who follows the Queen of Elves to Elfland:

"O see ye not yon narrow road,
So thick beset wi' thorns and riers?
That is the Path of Righteousness,
Though after it but few enquires.

And see ye not yon braid, braid road,
That lies across the lily leven?
That is the Path of Wickedness,
Though some call it the Road to Heaven.

And see ye not yon bonny road
That winds about the fernie brae?
That is the Road to fair Elfland,
Where thou and I this night maun gae."

- [p. 177/128] "'But it ain't April!', neighbours told themselves [...]"

Inconsistency time! On p. 154/135 of Witches Abroad, Granny responds to Nanny Ogg's intention of taking a bath with the words "My word, doesn't autumn roll around quickly".

In subsequent discussions on the net it was postulated that Nanny's bath habits could well be explained by taking into account the fact that the Discworld has eight seasons (see first footnote in The Colour of Magic on p. 11/11), which might result in e.g. two autumns a year. And of course, on our world April *is* indeed a month in Autumn -- in the southern hemisphere (don't ask me if that also holds for a Discworld, though).

Personally, I tend to agree with Terry, who has once said: "There are *no* inconsistencies in the Discworld books; occasionally, however, there are alternate pasts".

- [p. 191/138] "[...] fed up with books of etiquette and lineage and Twurp's Peerage [...]"

Burke's Peerage is a book that lists the hereditary titled nobility of the British Realm (the Peers of the Realm, hence the title of the book). It contains biographical facts such as when they were born, what title(s) they hold, who they're married to, children, relationships to other peers, etc. For example, under 'Westminster, Duke of' it will give details of when the title was created, who has held it and who holds it now.

Also, 'twerp' and 'berk' (also spelt as 'burk') are both terms of abuse, with 'twerp' being relatively innocent, but with 'berk' coming from the Cockney rhyming slang for 'Berkshire Hunt', meaning 'cunt'.

- [p. 191/138] "It probably looked beautiful on the Lady of Shallot, [...]"

Alfred, Lord Tennyson wrote a well-known poem called The Lady of Shalott (see also e.g. Agatha Christie's The Mirror Crack'd). A shallot (double l, single t), however, is a small greenish/purple (octarine?) onion.

- [p. 193/139] "'I mean, we used to have a tradition of rolling boiled eggs downhill on Soul Cake Tuesday, but --'"

It is in fact a Lithuanian tradition (one of many) to roll boiled eggs downhill on Easter Sunday in a game similar to lawn bowls. The idea is to either (1) break the other person's egg, thereby eliminating them from the competition (although this can be risky, since your own egg may also break) or (2) to get your egg to just hit someone else's, in which case you win their egg. Similar traditions undoubtedly exist in many other European countries (in fact, I'm told it is also done in some English villages), though not in the Netherlands, where we'd be having extreme difficulties finding a spot high enough for an egg to be rolled down from in the first place.

- [p. 193/140] "Even these people would consider it tactless to mention the word 'billygoat' to a troll."

This sentence used to have me completely stumped, until I discovered (with the help of the ever helpful alt.fan.pratchett correspondents) that this refers to a well-known British fairy tale of Scandinavian origin called 'The Three Billygoats Gruff'.

That tale tells the story of three billygoat brothers who try to cross a bridge guarded by, you guessed it, a mean troll who wants to eat them. Luckily, the troll wasn't very smart, so the first two goats were able to outwit him by passing him one at a time, each saying "Don't eat me, just wait for my brother who's much bigger and fatter than I am". The third goat, Big Billygoat Gruff, was big, all right. Big enough to take on the troll and butt him off the bridge and right over the mountains far from the green meadow (loud cheers from listening audience). So the troll was both tricked and trounced.

- [p. 204/147] "'I'll be as rich as Creosote.'"

Creosote = Croesus. See the annotation for p. 125/113 of _Sourcery_.

- [p. 216/156] "'All the hort mond are here,' Nanny observed [...]"

Hort mond = haut monde = high society.

- [p. 226/162] "'And there's this damn cat they've discovered that you can put in a box and it's dead and alive at the same time. Or something.'"

This is Schroedinger's cat. See also the annotation for p. 279/199.

- + [p. 239/172] "This made some of the _grand guignol_ melodramas a little unusual, [...]"

Grand guignol, after the Montmartre, Paris theatre _Le Grand Guignol_, is the name given to a form of gory and macabre drama so laboriously horrific as to fall into absurdity.

- [p. 243/175] "'Mind you, that bramble jam tasted of fish, to my mind.' 'S caviar,' murmured Casanunda."

Many people recognised this joke, and mentioned a variety of different sources. Terry replied: "It's very, very old. I first heard it from another journalist about 25 years ago, and he said he heard it on the (wartime) radio when he was a kid. I've also been told it is a music-hall line."

- [p. 248/178] "Quite a lot of trouble had once been caused in Unseen University by a former Archchancellor's hat, [...]"

Refers back to certain events described more fully in Sourcery.

- [p. 250/180] Jane's All The World Siege Weapons

Jane's is a well known series of books/catalogues for military equipment of all sorts and types. There is a Jane's for aeroplanes, for boats, etc.

- [p. 276/199] "[...] in this case there were three determinate states the cat could be in: these being Alive, Dead, and Bloody Furious."

This is a reference to the well-known 'Schroedinger's cat' quantum theory thought-experiment in which a cat in a box is probabilistically killed, leaving it in a superposition of being alive and being dead until the box is opened and the wavefunction collapses.

- + [p. 276/199] "Shawn dived sideways as Greebo went off like a Claymore mine."

A Claymore mine is an ingenious and therefore extremely nasty device. It is a small metal box, slightly curved. On the convex side is written "THIS SIDE TOWARDS THE ENEMY" which explains why literacy is a survival trait even with US marines. The box is filled with explosive and 600 steel balls. It has a tripod and a trigger mechanism, which can be operated either by a tripwire or, when the operator doesn't want to miss the fun, manually. When triggered, the device explodes and showers the half of the world which could have read the letters with the steel balls. Killing radius 100 ft., serious maiming radius a good deal more. Used to great effect in Vietnam by both sides.

- + [p. 277/199] "Green-blue blood was streaming from a dozen wounds [...]"

This is a brilliant bit of logical extrapolation on Terry's part. Since iron is anathema to elves, they obviously can't have haemoglobin-based red blood. Copper-based (green) blood is used by some Earth animals, notably crayfish, so it's an obvious alternative. Of course, it was Star Trek that really made pointy-eared, green-blooded characters famous...

- + [p. 285/205] "'This girl had her fiance stolen by the Queen of Elves and she didn't hang around whining, [...]"

A reference to the folk song 'Tam Lin', in which Fair Janet successfully wrests her Tam Lin from the Queen of Fairies, despite various alarming transformations inflicted on him.

- [p. 285/205] "'I'll be back.'"

Catchphrase used by Arnold Schwarzenegger in (almost) all his movies.

- [p. 287/207] "Ancient fragments chimed together now in Magrat's head."

The six lines given make up three different poems. From The Fairies, by Irish poet William Allingham (1850):

"Up the airy mountain, down the rushy glen

We dare not go a-hunting for fear of little men"

From a traditional Cornish prayer:

"From ghoulies and ghosties and long-leggety beasties
and things that go bump in the night
Good Lord deliver us"

And finally from a traditional school girls' skipping rhyme:

"My mother said I never should
Play with the fairies in the wood
If I did, she would say
You naughty girl to disobey
Your hair won't grow, your shoes won't shine
You naughty little girl, you shan't be mine!"

- [p. 295/213] "[...] one and six, beetle crushers! [...] one, two,
forward... bean setting!"

This section demonstrates that Terry is not a Morris dancer himself; the terminology isn't quite authentic enough. But "beetle crushers" is an actual Morris step, and "bean setting" is the name of a dance and, by extension, a name for a move used in that dance.

+ [p. 298/215] "Girls used to go up there if they wanted to get --"

Women who wished to conceive would spend the night on the um, appropriate bit of the Cerne Abbas Giant site in Dorset. See the annotation for p. 302/217.

- [p. 300/216] "[...] the only other one ever flying around here is Mr Ixolite the banshee, and he's very good about slipping us a note under the door when he's going to be about."

If you haven't read Reaper Man yet, you may not realise that the reason why Mr Ixolite slips notes under the door is that he is the only banshee in the world with a speech impediment.

+ [p. 302/217] "They're nervy of going close to the Long Man. [...] Here it's the landscape saying: I've got a great big tonker."

The Discworld's Long Man is a set of three burial mounds. In Britain there is a famous monument called the Long Man of Wilmington, in East Sussex. It's not a mound, but a chalk-cut figure on a hillside; the turf was scraped away to expose the chalk underneath, outlining a standing giant 70 meters tall. There are several such figures in England, but only two human figures, this and the Cerne Abbas Giant.

Chalk-cut figures have to be recut periodically, which provides opportunities to bowdlerize them. This is probably why the Long Man of Wilmington is sexless; it was recut in the 1870s, when, presumably, public displays of great big tonkers were rather frowned upon. However, the other chalk-cut giant in Britain, the Cerne Abbas Giant in Dorset, is a nude, 55-meter-tall giant wielding a club, who has a tonker about 12 meters long, and proudly upraised. Nearby is a small earth enclosure where maypole dancing, etc. was once held.

+ [p. 305/219] "They showed a figure of an owl-eyed man wearing an animal skin and horns."

I am told this description applies to the cave painting known as The Sorcerer (aka The Magician, aka The Shaman) in the Trois Freres cave in Ariegues, France.

- [p. 305/219] "There was a runic inscription underneath. [...] 'It's a variant of Oggham,' she said."

Ogham is the name of an existing runic script found in the British Isles (mostly in Ireland) and dating back at least to the 5th century. The Pratchett Archives contain a file with more information about the oghamic alphabet, including pictures of the individual characters.

- [p. 307/221] "'Hiho, hiho --'"

See the annotation for p. 88/73 of _Moving Pictures_.

- [p. 308/222] "'It's some old king and his warriors [...] supposed to wake up for some final battle when a wolf eats the sun.'"

Another one of Terry's famous Mixed Legends along the lines of the princess and the pea fairy tale in _Mort_.

The wolf bit is straight from Norse mythology. The wolf Fenris, one of Loki's monster children, will one day break free from his chains and eat the sun. This is one of the signs that the Goetterdaemmerung or Ragnarok has begun, and at this point the frost giants <<Who presumably have *still* not returned the Gods' lawnmower>> will cross the Rainbow Bridge and fight the final battle with the gods of Asgard and the heroes who have died and gone to Valhalla. See the last part of Richard Wagner's Ring cycle for details.

The sleeping king is one of the oldest and deepest folk-myths of western culture, some versions of the popular legend even have King Arthur and his warriors sleeping on the island of Anglesea. For more information, see e.g. the section about the Fisher King in Frazer's _The Golden Bough_, Jessie Weston's _From Ritual To Romance_ and all the stuff that this leads into, such as Elliot's _The Wasteland_ and David Lodge's _Small World_.

+ [p. 316/227] "The place looked as though it had been visited by Genghiz Cohen."

Much later, in _Interesting Times_, we learn that Cohen the Barbarian's first name is, in fact, Genghiz.

With respect to the original pun on Genghiz Kahn, Terry says:

"As a matter of interest, I'm told there's a kosher Mongolian restaurant in LA called Genghiz Cohen's. It's a fairly obvious pun, if your mind is wired that way."

- [p. 316/227] "Queen Ynci wouldn't have obeyed..."

The ancient warrior queen Ynci is modelled on Boadicea (who led a British rebellion against the Romans). Boadicea's husband was the ruler of a

tribe called the Iceni, which is almost Ynci backwards.

+ [p. 321/231] "...I think at some point I remember someone asking us to clap our hands..."

From J. M. Barrie's *Peter Pan*:

[...] [Tinkerbell the Fairy] was saying that she thought she could get well again if children believed in fairies. [...] "If you believe," [Peter Pan] shouted to them, "clap your hands; don't let Tink die."

+ [p. 324/233] "'Millennium hand and shrimp.'"

One of the truly frequently asked questions on alt.fan.pratchett is "Where does this phrase come from?" (Foul Ole Ron also uses it, in *Soul Music*.)

The answer concerns Terry's experiments with computer-generated texts:

"It was a program called Babble, or something similar. I put in all kinds of stuff, including the menu of the Dragon House Chinese take-away because it was lying on my desk. The program attempted to make 'coherent' phrases (!) out of it all."

One of the other things Terry must have fed it were the lyrics to the song 'Particle Man' by They Might Be Giants (see the annotation for p. 264/199 of *Soul Music*):

"Universe man, universe man
Size of the entire universe man
Usually kind to smaller men, universe man
He's got a watch with a minute hand
A millennium hand, and an eon hand
When they meet it's happyland
Powerful man, universe man."

- [p. 328/236] "'I've got five years' worth of *Bows And Ammo*, Mum,' said Shawn.

In our world there is a magazine *Guns And Ammo*; this appears to be the Discworld equivalent.

- [p. 328/236] Shawn's speech.

Shawn's speech is a parody of the 'St. Crispin's Day' speech in Shakespeare's *King Henry V*. See also the annotation for p. 239/303 of *Wyrd Sisters*.

- [p. 329/236] "[...] imitate the action of the Lancre Reciprocating Fox and stiffen some sinews while leaving them flexible enough [...]"

And this one is from the even more famous 'Once more unto the breach' speech, also from *King Henry V*:

"Then imitate the action of the tiger; stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood."

- [p. 341/245] "'Ain't that so, Fairy Peaseblossom?'"

One of the fairies in A Midsummer Night's Dream is called Peasblossom. In itself this is not very interesting, but it is directly relevant when you consider the point Granny is trying to make to the Elf Queen.

- [p. 350/252] "The King held out a hand, and said something. Only Magrat heard it. Something about meeting by moonlight, she said later."

In A Midsummer Night's Dream (act 2, scene 2), Oberon, King of the Fairies, says to Titania, Queen of the Fairies (with whom he has a kind of love/hate relationship): "Ill met by moonlight, proud Titania".

- [p. 353/253] "'You know, sir, sometimes I think there's a great ocean of truth out there and I'm just sitting on the beach playing with... with *stones*.'"

This paraphrases Isaac Newton. The original quote can be found in Brewster's Memoirs of Newton, Volume II, Chapter 27:

"I do not know what I may appear to the world, but to myself I seem to have been only like a boy playing on the seashore, and diverting myself in now and then finding a smoother pebble or a prettier shell than ordinary, whilst the great ocean of truth lay all undiscovered before me."

- [p. 363/261] "'Go ahead, [...] bake my quiche.'"

Clint Eastwood's Dirty Harry again, another satire of the line which also inspired "FABRICATI DIEM, PVNC" (see the annotation for p. 51/48 of Guards! Guards!).

- [p. 364/261] "'On with the motley. Magrat'll appreciate it.'"

"On with the motley" is a direct translation of the Italian "Vesti la giubba" which is the first line of a famous aria from the opera I Pagliacci. (Operatic arias are usually known by their first line or first few words). It is the bitter aria in which the actor Canio laments that he must go on stage even though his heart is breaking, and climaxes with the line 'Ridi Pagliaccio'.

- [p. 367/264] "Do not meddle in the affairs of wizards, especially simian ones. They are not all that subtle."

Definitely a Tolkien reference this time. See the annotation for p. 183/149 of Mort.

There is a version frequently seen on the net in people's .signatures, which I am sure will have Terry's full approval. It runs: "Do not meddle in the affairs of cats, for they are subtle and will piss on your computer".

- + [p. 371/267] "'My great-grandma's husband hammered it out of a tin bath and a couple of saucepans.'"

On a.f.p. the question was asked why, if Magrat's armour was fake and not made of iron at all, was it so effective against the Elves? Terry answers:

"A tin bath isn't made out of tin. It's invariably galvanised iron -- ie, zinc dipped. They certainly rust after a while."

- [p. 382/274] "[...] he called it _The Taming Of The Vole_ [...]"

Shakespeare again, of course. A vole is a small animal, somewhat similar to a shrew.

MEN AT ARMS

- Starting with "Men at Arms", the word 'Discworld' appeared on the copyright page with a 'registered trademark' symbol appended to it.

When asked if this indicated a tougher policy against possible copyright infringements, Terry replied:

"Discworld and some associated names are subject to various forms of trademark, but we don't make a big thing about it. We've had to take some very gentle action in the past and the trademarking is a precautionary measure -- it's too late to do it when you're knee-deep in lawyers. There will be a computer game next year, and possibly a record album. We have to do this stuff.

But -- I stress -- it's not done to discourage fans, or prevent the general usage of Discworld, etc, in what I'd loosely call fandom. By now afp readers ought to know that. It's been done so that we have a decent lever if there's a BIG problem."

- Someone complained on the net that the picture of the Gonne on the back cover of _Men at Arms_ gives away too much information about the story. Terry replied:

"Hmm. We wondered about the cover 'giving away half the plot' and decided to go with it -- especially since Josh got the Gonne exactly right from the description. But I'd say it's pretty obvious VERY early in the book what sort of thing we're dealing with. That's what distinguishes a 'police procedural' from a mystery; after all, you know from the start whodunit in a Columbo plot, but the fun is watching him shuffle around solving it his way..."

- On the cover, Josh Kirby draws Cuddy without a beard, even though it is mentioned many times in the text that he has one.

- [p. 8/6] "But Edward d'Eath didn't cry, for three reasons."

De'ath is an existing old English name. The De'aths came over with William the Conqueror, and tend to get very upset if ignorant peasants pronounce their name... well, you know, instead of 'Dee-ath' as it's supposed to be pronounced.

- [p. 12/8] "'[...] an iconograph box which, is a thing with a brownei inside that paints pictures of thing's, [...]"

Kodak's first mass-produced affordable camera was called the "box brownie". A brownie is also the name of a helpful type of goblin. And we all know how cameras work on the Discworld...

- [p. 20/14] "'Twurp's P-eerage,' he shouted."

Burke's Peerage. See the annotation for p. 191/138 of Lords and Ladies.

- [p. 20/15] "'My nurse told me,' said Viscount Skater, 'that a *true* king could pull a sword from a stone.'"

Arthurian legend, Holy Grail, that kind of stuff.

- [p. 24/18] "Silicon Anti-Defamation League had been going on at the Patrician, and now --"

Cf. the real life Jewish Anti-Defamation League.

- [p. 25/18] "[...] the upturned face of Lance-Constable Cuddy, with its helpful intelligent expression and one glass eye."

Columbo had a glass eye (or rather, Peter Falk, who played the part, had one). And he was rather short.

- [p. 29/22] "'Oh, _nil desperandum_, Mr Flannel, _nil desperandum_,' said Carrot cheerfully."

"Nil desperandum" is a genuine old Latin phrase, still occasionally in use, meaning "don't despair".

- [p. 44/33] "'Remember when he was going to go all the way up to Dunmanifestin to steal the Secret of Fire from the gods?' said Nobby."

Reference to Prometheus, who gave fire to man and got severely shafted for it by the previous owners. See also the annotation for p. 131/107 of Eric.

- [p. 44/33] "Fingers-Mazda, the first thief in the world, stole fire from the gods."

The name 'Fingers-Mazda' puns on Ahura-Mazda, or Ormuzd, the Zoroastrian equivalent of God.

- [p. 46/34] "'Remember,' he said, 'let's be careful out there.'"

The desk sergeant in Hill Street Blues used to say this in each episode of the TV series, at the end of the force's morning briefing.

- [p. 49/37] "'Morning, Mr Bauxite!'"

Bauxite is the name of the rock that contains aluminium ore. I have fond memories of this red-coloured rock, because I grew up in a country (Suriname) whose economy depended entirely upon bauxite and aluminium.

- [p. 54/41] "Mr Morecombe had been the Ramkins' family solicitor for a long time. Centuries, in fact. He was a vampire."

In other words: a bloodsucking lawyer, right?

- [p. 56/42] "[...] turn in their graves if they knew that the Watch had taken on a w--"

Only funny the second time you read the book, because it is then that you realise that the first time every reader will have gotten this wrong...

- [p. 62/47] "'No one ever eats the black pudding.'"

Not very surprising at the Assassin's Guild: black pudding is made with blood.

+ [p. 64/47] "Captain Vimes paused at the doorway, and then thumped the palm of his hand on his forehead. [...] 'Sorry, excuse me -- mind like a sieve these days -- [...]'"

Acting like a bumbling fool, making as if to leave, then smacking his head, 'remembering' something in the doorway, and unleashing an absolute killer question is exactly how TV Detective Columbo always drives his suspects to despair.

- [p. 72/54] "'NEITHER RAIN NOR SNOW NOR GLOOM OF NIGHT CAN STAY THESE MESSENGERS ABOUT THEIR DUTY'"

This paraphrases the motto of the US postal service: "Neither snow nor rain nor heat nor gloom of night stay these couriers from the swift completion of their appointed rounds".

In Tom Burnam's More Misinformation it is explained that this quote by Herodotus is not really the official motto of the Postal service, since there is no such thing. But it is a quote that is inscribed on the General Post Office building in New York, and has been construed as a motto by the general populace. It refers to a system of mounted postal couriers used by the Persians when the Greeks attacked Persia, around 500 BC.

- [p. 76/57] Capability Brown.

Lancelot 'Capability' Brown (1715-1783) actually existed, and was a well known landscape gardener and architect. His nickname derived from his frequent statement to prospective employers that their estates held great "capabilities". The existence of Sagacity Smith and Intuition De Vere Slave-Gore must be questioned, at least in this particular trouser-leg of time.

- [p. 77/58] "It contained the hoho, which was like a haha only deeper."

A haha is a boundary to a garden or park, usually a buried wall or shallow ditch designed not to be seen until closely approached.

I'm told there's a rather nice haha at Elvaston Castle just outside Derby. From the house there appears to be an unobstructed vista into the distance, despite the presence of the main road to Derby crossing the field of view about 200 yards away. Unfortunately, when the house was designed, they hadn't invented double-decker buses or lorries, so the effect is a bit spoilt by the sudden appearance of the top half of a bus going past from time to time.

- [p. 88/66] "'I think perhaps Lance-Constable Angua shouldn't have another go with the longbow until we've worked out how to stop her... her getting in the way.'"

The Amazons of legend had a famously cutting way of solving this particular problem...

- [p. 94/71] "There's a bar like it in every big city. It's where the coppers drink."

Quite stereotypical of course, but the bar from the TV series *Hill Street Blues* is the one that I was immediately reminded of.

- + [p. 94/71] "'That's three beers, one milk, one molten sulphur on coke with phosphoric acid --'

Phosphoric acid is in fact an ingredient of Coca Cola. It's part of the 0.5 % that isn't water or sugar.

- [p. 94/71] "'A Slow Comfortable Double-Entendre with Lemonade.'"

There is an existing cocktail called a 'Slow Comfortable Screw', or, in its more advanced incarnation, a 'A Long Slow Comfortable Screw Up against the Wall'.

This drink consists of Sloe Gin (hence the 'slow'), Southern Comfort (hence the 'comfortable'), Orange Juice (which is what makes a screwdriver a screwdriver and not merely a bloody big vodka; hence the 'screw'), a float of Galliano (which is in a Harvey Wallbanger; hence the 'up against the wall'), served in a long glass (hence... oh, work it out for yourself).

- + [p. 113/85] "[...] or a hubland bear across the snow [...]"

Scattered across the Discworld canon are numerous little changes in terminology to reflect the Discworld's unusual setup, and this is one of the more elegant ones, since there obviously can't be polar bears on the Disc...

- [p. 115/86] The Duke of Eorle.

Duke, Duke, Duke of Earl. Of doo-wop fame.

- [p. 115/87] "One of the thoughts jostling for space was that there was no such thing as a humble opinion."

Terry has admitted that the Duke of Eorl's conversational style was a bit of a dig at the way discussions on the net are typically held. People posting to Usenet newsgroups will often prefix even the most dogmatic monologues or megalomaniacal statements with the words "In my humble opinion...", in a (usually futile) attempt to render themselves invulnerable to criticism. The qualifier is used so often on the net that it even has its own acronym: 'IMHO', so you won't have to type so much when you use it.

- [p. 116/88] "[...] that bastard Chrysoprase, [...]"

Webster's defines chrysoprase as an applegreen variety of chalcedony, used as gem, but literally from the Greek words 'chrusos', gold and 'prason', leek. Chalcedony is a semi-precious blue-gray variety of quartz, composed of very small crystals packed together with a fibrous, waxy appearance.

Note how both the 'gold' etymology and the 'waxy appearance' perfectly match Chrysoprase's character as the rich, suave, uptown Mafia-troll.

Chrysoprase already appears (off-stage) on p. 179/178 of *_Wyrd Sisters_*, but his name is spelled 'Crystophrase' there.

- [p. 127/96] "'What can you make it?' Carrot frowned. 'I could make a hat,' he said, 'or a boat. Or [...]"

This may be far-fetched, but **exactly** the same joke appears in the 1980 movie *_Airplane!_* (renamed *_Flying High_* in some countries).

+ [p. 130/98] "[...] a toadstool called Phallus impudicus, [...]"

This mushroom actually exists. The Latin name translates quite literally to "Shameless penis". In English its common name is "Stinkhorn fungus", and it has been described to me as a large, phallus-shaped, pallid, woodland fungus smelling very strongly of rotten meat, and usually covered with flies. "Once experienced, never forgotten", as my source puts it.

Another mushroom expert subsequently mailed me a long, detailed description of the toadstool's appearance, which I'm not going to include here. Suffice it to say that it's full of phrases like "yellow, glutinous goo", "the head exudes a black slime" and "I've smelled these from 50 paces on a still day".

And no, the *_Phallus Impudicus_* is not edible.

- [p. 135/102] "A lot of equipment had been moved away, however, to make room for a billiard table. [...] 'My word. Perhaps we're adding just the right amount of camphor to the nitro-cellulose after all --'"

In reality, nitro-cellulose (also known as guncotton) is an extremely explosive substance that was discovered by people trying to make artificial ivory for billiard balls. Camphor is nicely flammable in its own right.

+ [p. 136/103] "'Oh well. Back to the crucible."

As well as being alchemist-speak for 'back to the drawing board' (a crucible is a container used in high-temperature melting), there is also the Crucible Theatre in Sheffield where the World Snooker Championships are played.

- [p. 137/104] "'Haven't you seen his portrait of the Mona Ogg. [...] The teeth followed you around the room. Amazing."

It can easily be observed that the Mona Lisa's **eyes** follow one around the room; Leonardo da Vinci supposedly achieved this by using some mysterious painting technique that only the greatest of painters are capable of. But as Tom Burnham explains in his *_Dictionary of Misinformation_*: "The eyes-that-follow-you trick is a simple one, used by innumerable artists in everything from posters to billboards."

+ [p. 143/108] "'Brother Grineldi did the old heel-and-toe trick [...]"

Joseph (Joey) Grimaldi was a famous English clown and pantomime of the 19th century. He was so influential and instrumental in creating the modern concept of the clown that circus clowns are still called "Joeys" after him.

- [p. 150/113] "Possibly, if you fought your way through the mysterious old coats hanging in it, you'd break through into a magical fairyland full of talking animals and goblins, but it'd probably not be worth it."

Reference to the children's classic *The Lion, The Witch and the Wardrobe* by C. S. Lewis. See also the annotation for p. 22/22 of *Sourcery*.

- + [p. 153/116] "I'm on the path, he thought. I don't have to know where it leads. I just have to follow."

This is almost a direct quote from a scene in *Twin Peaks* :

Cooper: God help me, I don't know where to start.

Hawk: You're on the path. You don't need to know where it leads.
Just follow.

- + [p. 155/117] Zorgo the Retrophrenologist.

For a while I thought we had finally found a troll whose name wasn't mineral-related, but no: zorgite is a metallic copper-lead selenide, found at Zorge, in the German Harz Mountains.

- [p. 157/119] "'It's Oggham,' said Carrot."

See the annotation for p. 305/219 of *Lords and Ladies*.

- [p. 157/119] "Soss, egg, beans and rat 12p. Soss, rat and fried slice 10p. [...]"

People keep seeing a Monty Python reference in this, because they are reminded of the "Eggs, bacon, beans and spam..." sketch.

But Terry says: "It's not really Python. Until recently transport cafes always had menus like that, except that 'Chips' was the recurrent theme. I used to go to one where you could order: Doublelegg n Chips n Fried Slice, Doublelegg n Doublechips n Doublebeans n Soss...

..and so on...

The key thing was that you couldn't avoid the chips. I think if anyone'd ever ordered a meal without chips they'd have been thrown out.

Note for UK types: this place was the White Horse Cafe at Cherhill on the A4. Probably just a memory. It wasn't far from where some famous rock star lunched himself in his car, although, come to think of it, not on chips."

- [p. 159/120] Some people on a.f.p. indicated that they had difficulty understanding just what the Gargoyle was saying, so here is a translation into English of his side of the dialogue:

"Right you are."

"Cornice overlooking broadway."
 "No."
 "Ah. You for Mister Carrot?"
 "Oh, yes. Everyone knows Carrot."
 "He comes up here sometimes and talks to us."
 "No. He put his foot on my head. And let off a firework.
 I saw him run away along Holofernes Street."
 "He had a stick. A firework stick."
 "Firework. You know? Bang! Sparks! Rockets! Bang!"
 "Yes. That's what I said."
 "No, idiot! A stick, you point, it goes BANG!"

+ [p. 159/120] "[...] the strangest, and possibly saddest, species on Discworld is the hermit elephant."

Our real world's hermit crab (which can be found on islands like Bermuda) behaves similarly: it has no protective shell of its own, so it utilises the shells of dead land snails. The reason why the hermit crab is one of the sadder species in our world as well is given in Stephen Jay Gould's essay 'Nature's Odd Couples' (published in his collection *The Panda's Thumb*): the shells that form the crabs' natural habitat are from a species of snail that has been extinct since the 19th century. The hermit crabs on Bermuda are only surviving by recycling old fossil shells, of which there are fewer and fewer as time goes on, thus causing the hermit crab to become, slowly but surely, just as extinct as the snails.

- [p. 162/123] "'He also did the Quirm Memorial, the Hanging Gardens of Ankh, and the Colossus of Morpork.'"

The last two items are equivalents of two of our world's 'seven wonders of antiquity': the Hanging Gardens of Babylon and the Colossus of Rhodes. The Quirm memorial is less obvious. Perhaps Mausoleus' Tomb?

There is also a similarity between the Colossus of Morpork and the sequence in Rob Reiner's 1985 movie *This Is Spinal Tap* where a Stonehenge menhir, supposedly 30' high, is constructed to be 30" high, and ends up being trodden on by a dwarf.

- [p. 163/124] "[...] the kind of song where people dance in the street and give the singer apples and join in and a dozen lowly match girls suddenly show amazing choreographical ability [...]"

Terry is probably just referring to a generic stage musical stereotype here, but the production number mentioned most frequently by my correspondents as fitting the context is 'Who Will Buy?' from *Oliver!*, a musical version of Charles Dickens' *Oliver Twist*.

- [p. 168/127] "'Some in rags, and some in tags, and one in a velvet gown... it's in your Charter, isn't it?'"

This comes from the nursery rhyme *Hark! Hark!*. The Mother Goose version goes:

"Hark! Hark! The dogs do bark,
 The beggars are coming to town;
 Some in rags, some in tags,
 And some in velvet gown."

Opies' Oxford Dictionary of Nursery Rhymes gives the last two lines as:

"Some in rags, some in jags,
And one in a velvet gown."

Terry's household nursery rhyme book must strike a balance between these two versions. The rhyme is said to be about the mob of Dutchmen that William of Orange brought over with him to England in 1688, with the "one in a velvet gown" being the Prince himself. Or else it is a reference to Henry VIII's dissolution of the monasteries, forcing monks to beg on the streets for a living. Take your pick.

+ [p. 171/130] "'A sixteen, an eight, a four, a one!'"

This makes perfect sense: since trolls have silicon brains, naturally they'd think in binary. Every number, no matter how large can be represented in binary (29, for instance, is 11101; sixteen plus eight plus four plus one). Cuddy is therefore absolutely right when he points out to Detritus: "If you can count to two, you can count to anything!"

+ [p. 172/131] "'That,' said Vimes, 'was a bloody awful cup of coffee, Sham.' [...] 'And a doughnut'."

This entire scene is a loose parody of David Lynch's cult TV series _Twin Peaks_, where the protagonists are forever eating doughnuts and drinking "damn fine coffee".

+ [p. 173/131] "'And give me some more coffee. Black as midnight on a moonless night.'"

In one of the early _Twin Peaks_ episodes, Agent Cooper praises the coffee at the Great Northern Hotel, and is very precise in ordering breakfast, specifying the way the bacon etc. should be cooked and asking for a cup of coffee which is "Black as moonlight on a moonless night". Although the waitress at the Hotel is considerably less inclined to nitpick than Sham Harga, she also makes a comment along the lines of "That's a pretty tough order".

- [p. 175/133] "'[...] clown Boffo, the *corpus derelicti*, [...]"

"Corpus delicti" is a Latin phrase meaning the victim's body in a murder case.

- [p. 176/133] "The whole nose business looked like a conundrum wrapped up in an enigma [...]"

Paraphrase of a famous quote by Winston Churchill, referring to Russia: "It is a riddle wrapped in a mystery inside an enigma; but perhaps there is a key."

- [p. 179/135] "'He went into Grope Alley!'"

Terry has confirmed that Grope Alley is based on Threadneedle Street in the City of London, which used to be the haunt of prostitutes and hence rejoiced in the name 'Gropecunte Lane' -- its modern name is just a more euphemistic way of putting things. It's the site of the Bank of England. Some would consider this to be appropriate.

- [p. 184/139] ""The word 'polite' comes from 'polis', too. It used to mean proper behaviour from someone living *in* a city.""

As far as I can tell this is utter and total balderdash. 'Policeman' indeed comes from 'polis', but 'polite' comes from the Latin 'polire', to polish.

- [p. 185/140] "Vimes had believed all his life that the Watch were called coppers because they carried copper badges, but no, said Carrot, it comes from the old word *cappere*, to capture."

This, however, appears to be true, according to Brewer's, who says that it is "more likely" that 'copper' derives from 'cop' (instead of the other way around!), as in the verb 'to cop something', which indeed comes from the Latin 'capere', to take.

- [p. 189/143] "He pushed his hot food barrow through streets broad and narrow, crying: 'Sausages! Hot Sausages! Inna bun!'"

From the folk song 'Molly Malone':

"In Dublin's fair city
Where the maids are so pretty
I first set my eyes on sweet Molly Malone
She wheels her wheel-barrow
Through streets broad and narrow
Crying 'cockles and mussels alive alive-o'"

I am told that the statue that was put up in Dublin in honour of Molly was such an artistic failure, that it is now fondly known by the Dubliners as "The Tart with the Cart".

- [p. 192/145] ""I call it a flapping-wing-flying-device, [...] It works by gutta-percha strips twisted tightly together.""

This time, Leonard has invented the rubber-band-powered model aeroplane.

- [p. 193/146] "[...] wondering how the hell he came up with the idea of pre-sliced bread in the first place."

From the saying (of inventions): "the greatest thing since sliced bread".

- + [p. 194/146] ""My cartoons,' said Leonard. 'This is a good one of the little boy with his kite stuck in a tree,' said Lord Vetinari."

The reference to Charlie Brown's struggle against the kite-eating tree in Charles M. Shultz's comic strip Peanuts will be obvious to most readers, but perhaps not everyone will realise that in Leonardo da Vinci's time a cartoon was also a full-size sketch used to plan a painting.

- [p. 197/149] ""They do things like open the Three Jolly Luck Take-away Fish Bar on the site of the old temple in Dagon Street on the night of the Winter solstice when it also happens to be a full moon.""

I'm rather proud of figuring this one out, because I really hadn't a clue as to *why* this Fish Bar would be such a bad idea. Then it occurred to me to look up the word 'Dagon'. Webster's doesn't have it, but luckily

Brewer saves the day, as usual: 'Dagon' is the Hebrew name for the god Atergata of the Philistines; half woman and half fish.

It was actually a Dagon temple that the biblical Samson managed to push down in his final effort to annoy the Philistines (Judges 16:23, "Then the lords of the Philistines gathered them together for to offer a great sacrifice unto Dagon their god, and to rejoice: for they said, Our god hath delivered Samson our enemy into our hand.")

After including this annotation in earlier editions of the APF, there have been numerous e-mails from people pointing out that H. P. Lovecraft also uses the entity Father Dagon as the leader of the Deep Ones in some of his horror stories. Terry has confirmed, however, that the inspiration for his Dagon goes back to the original source, not Lovecraft's incarnation.

- [p. 203/153] "[...] Dibbler, achieving with his cart the kind of getaway customarily associated with vehicles that have fluffy dice on the windscreen [...]"

Take an old, battered car of the type that the Waynes and Kevins of our world (boyfriends to Sharon and Tracey -- see the annotation for p. 106/95 of *_Reaper Man_*) often drive -- a Ford Cortina or Capri is the usual candidate in the UK. Respray it metallic purple. Some go-faster stripes, possibly a la 'Starsky and Hutch' may be appropriate at this time. Plaster rear window with car stickers in dubious taste: "Passion wagon -- don't laugh it could be your daughter inside", "My other car is a Porsche", or even: "I <heart> Ankh-Morpork". Advanced students might like to experiment with a stick-on cuddly Garfield in the rear window. Put in stretch seat-covers, preferably in luminous pink fur. Add a Sun-strip, possibly with the names of the owner and 'His bird' on them (so they can remember where to sit presumably). Hang a pair of fluffy dice from the rear-view mirror. *That* kind of vehicle.

- [p. 205/155] "'Chrysoprase, he not give a coprolith about that stuff.'"

Coprolith = a fossilised turd.

- [p. 209/158] "'He say, you bad people, make me angry, you stop toot sweet.'"

"Toute suite" = immediately. One of the few bits of French that the typical Brit is said to remember from schooldays.

- + [p. 210/158] "'C. M. O. T. Dibbler's Genuine Authentic Soggy Mountain Dew,' she read."

Terry is not referring to Mountain Dew, the American soft drink, but is using the term in its original meaning, as a colloquialism for whisky -- particularly, the homemade 'moonshine' variety.

- [p. 218/165] VIA CLOACA

The major sewer in ancient Rome, running down into the Tiber, was called the Cloaca Maxima. Anything with 'Via' in its name would have been a street or road. The Cloaca Maxima was actually a tunnel.

- + [p. 235/178] "[...] huge scrubbing brushes, three kinds of soap, a

loofah."

Loofah is a genus of tropical climbing plant bearing a fruit, the fibrous skeleton of which is used for scrubbing backs in the bath.

+ [p. 238/180] "'Hi-ho -- '-- hi-ho --' 'Oook oook oook oook oook --'"

The dwarvish hiho-song. See the annotation for p. 88/73 of Moving Pictures.

- [p. 239/181] "'He said "Do Deformed Rabbit, it's my favourite",' Carrot translated."

Running gag. See also the annotation for p. 226/162 of Small Gods.

- [p. 251/190] "'All right, no one panic, just stop what you're doing, stop what you're doing, please. I'm Corporal Nobbs, Ankh-Morpork City Ordnance Inspection City Audit -- [...] Bureau ... Special ... Audit ... Inspection.'"

Nobby is imitating Eddie Murphy. Terry explains:

"Almost a trademark of the basic Murphy character in a tight spot is to whip out any badge or piece of paper that looks vaguely official and simply gabble official-sounding jargon, which sounds as if he's making it up as he goes along but nevertheless browbeats people into doing what he wants. As in:

'I'm special agent Axel Foley of the Special ... Division ... Secret ... Anti-Drugs ... Secret ... Undercover ... Taskforce, that's who I am, and I want to know right now who's in charge here, right now!'

Cpl Nobbs uses this technique to get into the Armoury in M@A."

- [p. 252/191] "'Have you got one of those Hershebian twelve-shot bows with the gravity feed?' he snapped. 'Eh? What you see is what we got, mister.'"

This is straight from The Terminator. Arnold says to the gun shop owner: "Have you got a phase plasma rifle in the 40 watt range?" and the shopkeeper responds: "Hey, just what you see, pal".

- [p. 255/193] "'Oh, wow! A Klatchian fire engine! This is more *my* meteor!'"

Perhaps obvious, but this *really* had me puzzled until I realised that 'meteor' refers back to Sgt Colon's use of the French word 'metier' a few pages back...

By the way: you really need to have a twisted mind to come up with a fire engine that *literally* *is* a fire engine!

+ [p. 257/195] "'No sir! Taking Flint and Morraine, sir!'"

These two trolls first appeared as actors in Moving Pictures.

As far as their names go, Flint is obvious, but I had to look up Morraine: Webster spells it with one 'r', and defines it as "the debris

of rocks, gravel, etc. left by a melting glacier".

An e-mail correspondent subsequently pointed out to me that Webster's definition is lacking, because (a) the spelling with two r's *is* valid, and (b) moraine is *unstratified* debris only. If it were stratified it would be called esker or kame, which are of course fluvioglacial products rather than just glacial.

Hey, don't look at me -- I'm just the messenger...

+ [p. 258/196] "Sometimes it's better to light a flamethrower than curse the darkness."

From the old saying: "It is better to light a candle than curse the darkness".

+ [p. 258/196] "'Lord Vetinari won't stop at sarcasm. He might use' -- Colon swallowed -- '*irony*.'"

This reminded many correspondents of Monty Python's 'Dinsdale' sketch:

Vercotti: I've seen grown men pull their own heads off rather than see Doug. Even Dinsdale was frightened of Doug.

Interviewer: What did he do?

Vercotti: He used sarcasm. He knew all the tricks, dramatic irony, metaphor, bathos, puns, parody, litotes and satire.

Presenter: By a combination of violence and sarcasm the Piranha brothers, by February 1966, controlled London and the South East.

- [p. 263/200] "'I mean, I don't mean well-endowed with *money*.'"

Very obvious, but still: it is the conventional stereotype that both under-sized males as well as black males are 'better-endowed' than white males. Hence the joke: 'What is fifteen inches long and white?' Answer: 'Nothing'.

+ [p. 268/203] "'Shall we be off... Joey, wasn't it? Dr. Whiteface?'"

Another Grimaldi reference. See the annotation for p. 143/108.

+ [p. 269/204] "'All those little heads...'"

Clowns' faces are trademarked and cannot be copied by any other clown (unlike clothes or a specific act). If you are a clown, you can send a photograph of your face to the Clown and Character Registry, where the face is then painted on a goose egg (a tradition dating back to the 1500s) and stored.

+ [p. 277/210] "'Stuffed with nourishin' marrowbone jelly, that bone,' he said accusingly."

All through the 1960s and 1970s, TV commercials for Pal ("Prolongs Active Life") dog food used to claim that it contained "nourishing marrowbone jelly", and showed an oozing bone to prove it.

- [p. 279/212] "Gonnes don't kill people. People kill people."

Slogan of the US National Rifle Association.

- [p. 284/216] "'It's Bluejohn and Bauxite, isn't it?' said Carrot."

More troll names. For Bauxite see the annotation for p. 49/37. Bluejohn is another one I had to look up, and again I was saved by Brewer's, because Webster's doesn't have it. Blue John is "A petrification of blue fluor-spar, found in the Blue John mine of Tre Cliff, Derbyshire; and so called to distinguish it from the Black Jack, an ore of zinc. Called John from John Kirk, a miner, who first noticed it."

Brewer's may not have the final word on this, however. A correspondent tells me that Blue John is actually derived from a rock called 'Bleu-Jaune' (blue-yellow) because of its mixed colouring. This rock was originally named in French either because it was first found shortly after the Norman invasion or because the buyers were primarily French.

- [p. 285/216] "'Remember, every lance-constable has a field-marshal's baton in his knapsack.'"

"Every French soldier carries in his cartridge-pouch the baton of a marshal of France." Said originally by Napoleon, though of course he would have pronounced it as "Tout soldat francais porte dans sa giberne le baton de mere'chal de France."

Note that on p. 297/226 Detritus repeats the phrase as "You got a field-marshal's button in your knapsack", while on p. 302/230 Cuddy creatively manages "You could have a field-marshal's bottom in your napkin".

+ [p. 287/218] "'Only two-er things come from Slice Mountain! Rocks... an'... an'...' he struck out wildly, 'other sortsa rocks! What kind *you*, Bauxite?'"

Detritus in drill sergeant mode replays a scene from *An Officer and a Gentleman*, in which sergeant Foley (played by Louis Gossett, Jr) has a conversation with a new recruit along the lines of: "Where're you from?" "Oklahoma, sir!" "They only have two things in Oklahoma, queers and steers. Which one are you?"

If anyone can supply me with an exact transcription of this scene, I'd be most obliged.

- [p. 295/224] "'You just shut up, Abba Stronginthearm!'"

One of the members of the legendary Swedish pop group Abba was Bjorn Ulvaeus. Obviously, by Discworld logic, if Bjorn is a typical dwarf name, so is Abba. Not to mention the 'Bjorn Again' pun Death makes on p. 82/62: Bjorn Again is the name of an Australian band with a repertoire that consists entirely of Abba covers.

+ [p. 295/224] "'Aargh! I'm too short for this shit!'"

A phrase originating from US forces slang during the Vietnam war, where the tour of duty was fixed so the 'grunts' knew exactly how long, to the day, until they were due back in 'the world'. A short timer was one who

didn't have long to go and therefore didn't want to put himself at undue risk -- hence "I'm too short for this shit".

Another popular reference to this expression is "I'm too old for this shit", a catchphrase for Danny Glover's character in the Lethal Weapon series of movies.

Terry adds:

"'I'm too short for this shit' is a line that has appeared in at least two grunt movies. I had intended Cuddy to use it in the sewers..."

- [p. 305/232] "'I thought you rolled around on the floor grunting and growing hair and stretching,' he whimpered."

Reference to the famous werewolf transformation scenes in the 1981 horror movie An American Werewolf in London.

+ [p. 307/234] "'So we're looking for someone else. A third man.'"

A reference to the film The Third Man. Terry says:

"It may be that there is a whole generation now to whom The Third Man is just a man after the second man. And after all, it wasn't set in Vienna, Ohio, so it probably never got shown in the US :-)"

The book contains a couple of other resonances with The Third Man. In the film, the British, French, American and Russian occupation troops in Vienna patrol the city in groups of four, one from each country, to keep an eye on each other. Carrot sends the Watch out in similar squads of a human, a dwarf and a troll. The final chase through the sewers under the city also mirrors the film.

+ [p. 313/238] "'As I was a-walking along Lower Broadway, [...]"

Terry says: "While there are 789456000340 songs beginning 'As I was a-walking...', and I've probably heard all of them, the one I had in mind was 'Ratcliffe Highway'."

'Ratcliffe Highway' (a version which can be found on the album Liege & Lief by Fairport Convention) starts out:

"As I was a-walking along Ratcliffe Highway,
A recruiting party came beating my way,
They enlisted me and treated me till I did not know
And to the Queen's barracks they forced me to go"

- [p. 317/241] "'Hand off rock and on with sock!'"

The Discworld version of an old army Sgt Major yell to get the troops up in the morning: "Hands off cocks, on with socks!".

- [p. 318/242] "'We're a real model army, we are'"

The New Model Army, besides supplying the name for a Goth group, was the Parliamentarian army which turned the tide of the English Civil War, and ensured the defeat of King Charles I.

+ [p. 321/244] ""Yes, sir. Their cohorts all gleaming in purple and gold, sir.""

Lord Byron, The Destruction of Sennacherib :

The Assyrian came down like the wolf on the fold,
And his cohorts were gleaming in purple and gold...
The sheen of his spears was like stars on the sea,
When the blue wave rolls nightly on deep Galilee.

A cohort is not an item of clothing or armour but a division of the old Roman Army: the tenth part of a legion, 300 to 600 men.

- [p. 325/246] "[...] Fondel's 'Wedding March' [...]"

Fondel = Haendel.

+ [p. 325/247] ""[...] it's got the name B.S. Johnson on the keyboard cover!""

Johann Sebastian Bach's initials are 'JSB', which is 'BSJ' backwards, and Bach was of course also involved in organ music. But Terry has mentioned numerous times (not just on-line but also in The Discworld Companion) that he did not choose the name with this intention at all.

+ [p. 332/252] ""Who would have thought you had it in you,' said Vimes, [...]"

Shakespeare. See the annotation for p. 227/226 of Wyrd Sisters.

+ [p. 341/258] ""Detritus! You haven't got *time* to ooze!""

"I ain't got time to bleed!" is a line from Predator, another Arnold Schwarzenegger action movie.

- [p. 345/262] "It was important to ensure that rumours of his death were greatly exaggerated."

Paraphrase of a famous quip Mark Twain cabled to Associated Press after they had reported his demise.

+ [p. 357/271] "Cling, bing, a-bing, bong..."

The scene with Vimes' watch mirrors the movie For a Few Dollars More. All the way through this film, the bad guy has been letting a watch chime, telling his victims to go for their gun when the chimes stop (of course he always draws first and kills them). At the end of the film his victim is Lee van Cleef, and just as the watch chimes stop, Clint Eastwood enters with another watch, chiming away, to ensure Lee gets his chance and all is well.

Terry says: "[...] when the play of Men At Arms was done a couple of months ago, [Stephen Briggs]'s people actually went to the trouble of getting a recording of the 'right' tune for the watch.

It was interesting to hear the laughter spread as people recognised it..."

- [p. 365/277] "'They call me *Mister* Vimes,' he said."

In the Sidney Poitier movie In the Heat of the Night the most famous line (and indeed the name of the sequel) is Poitier saying "They call me *Mister* Tibbs."

- [p. 371/281] "'Would he accept?' 'Is the High Priest an Offliar? Does a dragon explode in the woods?'"

Is the Pope Catholic? Does a bear shit in the woods?

- [p. 373/283] "'Like a fish needs a... er... a thing that doesn't work underwater, sir.'"

From the quip (attributed to feminist Gloria Steinem): "A woman without a man is like a fish without a bicycle." Note that the bicycle is not known on the Discworld to anybody but the Patrician and Leonard of Quirm. And they don't know what it is.

SOUL MUSIC

+ The cover of Soul Music bears more than a passing resemblance to the cover of the album Bat out of Hell by Meatloaf, one of the 70s best-selling rock albums.

- [p. 8/5] "This is also a story about sex and drugs and Music With Rocks In."

For anyone living in a cave: the classic phrase is "sex and drugs and rock 'n' roll".

+ [p. 8/5] "Well... ...one out of three ain't bad."

With the many Meatloaf references in Soul Music it is perhaps no surprise many people think they've spotted another one here, namely to the ballad 'Two Out of Three Ain't Bad' on Bat out of Hell.

But in this case both Terry and Meatloaf are simply using a normal English phrase that's been around for ages. There is no connection.

+ [p. 9/7] "A dark, stormy night."

"It was a dark and stormy night" has entered the English language as *the* canonical opening sentence for bad novels. Snoopy in Peanuts traditionally starts his novels that way, and Terry and Neil used it on p. 11/viii of Good Omens as well.

I never knew, however, that the phrase actually has its origin in an existing 19th century novel called Paul Clifford by Edward George Earle Bulwer-Lytton. Someone kindly mailed me the full opening sentence to that novel, and only then did I understand how the phrase came by its bad reputation:

"It was a dark and stormy night; the rain fell in torrents -- except at occasional intervals, when it was checked by a violent gust of wind which swept up the streets (for it is in London that our scene lies), rattling along the housetops, and fiercely agitating the scanty flame of the lamps

that struggled against the darkness."

There even exists a Bulwer-Lytton Fiction Contest, in which people try to write the worst possible opening sentences for imaginary novels. The entries for the 1983 edition of the contest were compiled by Scott Rice in a book titled, what else, *_It Was a Dark and Stormy Night_*. I am told that there were at least three such compilations released.

+ [p. 13/10] "It was always raining in Llamedos."

Llamedos is 'sod em all' backwards. This is a reference to the town of Llareggub in Dylan Thomas' short prose piece *_Quite Early One Morning_*. That story was later expanded into *_Under Milk Wood_*, a verse play scripted for radio. In that version the name of the town was changed to the slightly less explicit Llaregyb.

Apart from that, Llamedos is instantly recognisable to the British as the Discworld version of Wales. The double-l is a consonant peculiar to the Celtic language (from which Welsh is descended), hence also Buddy's habit of doubling all l's when he speaks.

- [p. 14/10] "[...] a fizzing fuse and Acme Dynamite Company written on the side."

Acme is an often used 'generic' company name in American cartoons. Particularly, most of the ingenious technical and military equipment Wile E. Coyote uses in his attempts to capture the Roadrunner is purchased from Acme.

One of my proofreaders tells me he has a Pink Floyd *_Dark Side of the Moon_* t-shirt manufactured by ACME. Make of that what you will.

+ [p. 14/11] "The harp was fresh and bright and already it sang like a bell."

Chuck Berry's 'Johnny B. Goode' is, with the possible exception of 'Louie, Louie', the greatest rock 'n roll song of all time. It begins:

"Way down Louisiana close to New Orleans,
Way back up in the woods among the evergreens...
There stood a log cabin made of earth and wood,
Where lived a country boy name of Johnny B. Goode...
He never ever learned to read or write so well,
But he could play the guitar like ringing a bell."

- [p. 17/13] "WHAT'S IT ALL ABOUT? SERIOUSLY? WHEN YOU GET RIGHT DOWN TO IT?"

This philosophical question was of course first posed by none other than the famous Ephesian philosopher Didactylos, in *_Small Gods_*.

- [p. 20/15] "As far as looks were concerned, Susan had always put people in mind of a dandelion on the point of telling the time."

To begin with, in order to understand the dandelion reference, read the annotation for p. 10/10 of *_The Light Fantastic_*.

Next, many people on a.f.p. have been wondering if Susan was perhaps

based on somebody specific, especially since Terry describes her appearance in such great detail. Various candidates were suggested, ranging from Neil Gaiman's Death (from his Sandman stories) to Siouxsie Sioux (singer for the Goth band Siouxsie and the Banshees), to Dr Who's granddaughter.

Terry replied:

"As far as I'm aware, the Death/Dr Who 'coincidences' are in the mind of the beholders :-) Death can move through space and time, yes, but that's built in to the character. I made his house bigger on the inside than the outside so that I could have quiet fun with people's perceptions -- in the same way that humans live in tiny 'conceptual' rooms inside the vastness of the 'real' rooms. Only Death (or those humans who currently have Death-perception) not only sees but even experiences their full size."

"I have, er, noticed on signing tours that (somewhere between the age of ten and eighteen) girls with names like Susan or Nicola metamorphose into girls with names like Susi, Suzi, Suzie, Siouxsie, Tsuzi, Zuzi and Niki, Nicci, Nikki and Nikkie (this is in about the same time period as boys with names like Adrian and Robert become boys with names like Crash and Frab). This is fine by me, I merely chronicle the observation. I've always had a soft spot for people who want to redesign their souls.

She got the name because it's the one that gets the most variation, and got the hairstyle because it's been a nice weird hairstyle ever since the Bride of Frankenstein. She's not based on anyone, as far as I know -- certainly not Neil's Death, who is supercool and by no means a necronerd."

I agree with Terry about Neil's Death. She's a babe. Go read the books.

+ [p. 25/19] "I REMEMBER EVERYTHING. [...] EVERY LITTLE DETAIL. AS IF IT HAPPENED ONLY YESTERDAY."

Jim Steinman is the song-writing and production genius behind rock star Meatloaf. In 1977 he wrote the all-time classic 'Paradise by the Dashboard Light', which opens with the lines:

"Well, I remember every little thing
as if it happened only yesterday.
Parking by the lake
And there was not another car in sight"

In 1981, Steinman recorded the album Bad For Good by himself (he either had a falling out with Meatloaf or the latter had voice problems at the time -- the story is not clear on this point; but in any case Steinman had originally intended the album as a Meatloaf project, but eventually decided to use his own vocals). On that album appeared a song (soliloquy, really), called 'Love and Death and an American Guitar', which begins similar to 'Paradise', but quickly goes off in an **entirely** different direction:

"I remember every little thing
as if it happened only yesterday.
I was barely seventeen
and I once killed a boy with a Fender guitar"

When Soul Music came out, it immediately became a question of utmost importance (no, I don't know why, either) to Pratchett annotators all over the world to find out whether Terry based Death's outburst on the original Meatloaf track, or on the later Steinman song.

Eventually, somebody attended a book signing and asked Terry then and there. The answer: Terry's source was Jim Steinman's own version of the song.

I suppose I might as well mention the rest of the story while I'm at it, or else my mailbox will start filling up again: in 1993, Steinman and Meatloaf finally teamed up together again and recorded the album Bat out of Hell II -- Back to Hell. The track called 'Wasted Youth' turned out to be a re-recording of 'American Guitar', but it is still recited by Jim Steinman himself.

- [p. 26/20] "I MAY BE SOME TIME, said Death."

Terry **likes** this quote -- it's the third time he's used it. See also the annotations for p. 258/226 of Reaper Man and p. 236/170 of Small Gods.

+ [p. 28/21] "'You know salmon, sarge' said Nobby. 'It is a fish of which I am aware, yes.'"

A parody of the History Today sketches by Newman & Baddiel, where two old professors use a discussion on history to insult each other. These often started with a similar style of exchange along the lines of: "Do you know the industrial revolution?" "It is a period of history of which I am aware, yes".

- [p. 30/22] "'Are you elvish?'"

The way everyone keeps asking Imp if he's elvish resonates with our world's 'are you sure you're not Jewish?', but it's of course also a play on the name 'Elvis', which eventually leads to the joke explained in the annotation for p. 376/284.

- [p. 31/23] "'Lias Bluestone,' said the troll [...]"

See the annotation for p. 103/86 of Moving Pictures.

- [p. 31/23] "'Imp y Celyn,' said Imp."

This gets pretty much spelled out in the text: "Imp y Celyn" is a Welsh transliteration of 'Bud of the Holly', i.e. Buddy Holly. Terry originally mentioned this name on alt.fan.pratchett without giving the explanation. It took the group quite a while to figure it out, but luckily there are some Welsh people on the Internet...

- [p. 31/24] "'Glod Glodsson,' said the dwarf."

As his name indicates, Glod Glodsson is the son of the irritable dwarf Glod we learned about earlier in the footnotes for Witches Abroad.

- [p. 33/25] "[...] what you would get if you extracted fossilized genetic material from something in amber and then gave it a suit."

What Terry means is that Mr Clete is a bit reptile-like. The reference is to the blockbuster novel/movie Jurassic Park, in which various murderous lizards were brought to life using prehistoric DNA found in amber-fossilized mosquitoes.

- [p. 35/27] "'Gimlet? Sounds dwarfish.'"

"Gimlet, son of Groin" is a dwarf appearing in the well known National Lampoon parody Bored of the Rings by the famous Dutch author Tolkkéen with four M's and a silent Q. The original dwarf being, um, lampooned here is of course Tolkien's Gimli, son of Gloin.

In the Discworld canon, this is the first time Gimlet makes an actual on-stage appearance, though he has been mentioned a number of times before, most notably in Reaper Man (see the annotation for p. 31/30 of that book).

- [p. 36/27] "'Give me four fried rats.' [...] 'You mean rat heads or rat legs?' 'No. Four fried rats.'"

This is a spoof of the restaurant scene in The Blues Brothers. Jake orders "Four fried chickens and a coke", and the waitress (Aretha Franklin) asks him whether he'd like chicken wings or legs, etc. Even the "best damn fried rat in the city" is a direct paraphrase of a Blues Brothers quote.

- [p. 36/27] "'And two hard-boiled eggs,' said Imp. The others gave him an odd look."

This is partly a continuation of the Blues Brothers reference (after Jake asks for the fried chickens, Elwood asks for two slices of dry toast), and at the same time a nod to the Marx Brothers. In the cabin scene from A Night at the Opera, Groucho is giving his order to the steward outside the cabin; Chico is calling out "And two hard boiled eggs!" from inside, Groucho repeats it to the steward, then Harpo honks his horn and Groucho says "Make that three hard boiled eggs." This happens several times, with Groucho ordering a multi-course meal in between. At one point Harpo adds a second honk, in a different pitch, and Groucho adds, "And one duck egg." At the end Harpo produces a long series of honks in assorted tones, and Groucho says to the steward, "Either it's foggy out, or make that a dozen hard boiled eggs."

+ [p. 38/29] "'I won that at the Eisteddfod,' said Imp."

The eisteddfod is a real Welsh concept, originally a contest for poets and harpists. Nowadays, I'm told, it is more of a generic arts and crafts fair/contest, and it has spread as far as Australia, where the annual Rock Eisteddfod, according to one of my correspondents, is one of the most entertaining and highly competitive interschool activities around.

+ [p. 69/52] "The Hogfather is said to have originated in the legend of a local king [...] passing [...] the home of three young women and heard them sobbing because they had no food [...]. He took pity on them and threw a packet of sausages through the window."

This recalls the legend of the original (Asiatic) St Nicholas, bishop of Myra in what is now Turkey, who threw a bag of gold (on three separate

occasions) through the window of a poor man with three daughters, so the girls would have dowries, saving them from having to enter lives of prostitution.

I don't know about other countries, but in the Netherlands we still celebrate St Nicholas' day (on December 5th) rather than Christmas. Let me rephrase that. We *do* celebrate Christmas, but we have no tradition of a fat man in a red suit going ho-ho-ho while delivering presents. Instead, we get St Nicholas ('Sinterklaas'), who also wears red, and comes over from Spain each year (don't ask) to ride a white horse (not named Binky, as far as I know) over the rooftops and drop presents down the chimneys.

- [p. 43/33] "Just a stroke of the chalk..."

I'm not sure if it warrants an annotation, but I was fairly puzzled by this bit when I first read Soul Music. Only on re-reading did it dawn on me that what Terry is trying to tell us here is that chalked on the guitar is the number '1'. This will turn out to be rather significant, later on.

- [p. 46/35] "'You're not going to say something like 'Oh, my paws and whiskers', are you?' she said quietly."

The White Rabbit in Alice's Adventures in Wonderland: "The Duchess! The Duchess! Oh my dear paws! Oh my fur and whiskers!""

Terry doesn't like the Alice books very much, though. See also the Words From The Master section in Chapter 5.

- [p. 47/36] "[...] 'Shave and a haircut, two pence' [...]
Bam-bam-a-bambam, bamBAM."

'Shave and a haircut, two bits' is a classic rock 'n' roll rhythm (used in just about everything Bo Diddley did, for instance). It was most recently reintroduced to the public as a punchline to a joke in the movie Who Framed Roger Rabbit.

- [p. 48/37] A-bam-bop-a-re-bop-a-bim-bam-boom.

A-wap-ba-ba-looba-a-wap-bam-boom, one of rock 'n roll's most famous phrases, from Little Richard's 'Tutti Frutti'.

- [p. 50/38] "'[...] oh, you're a raven, go on, say the N word..."

The N word is, of course, 'Nevermore' from Edgar Allan Poe's 'The Raven'. See also the annotation for p. 217/191 of Reaper Man.

- [p. 55/42] "The wizard who thought he owned him called him Quoth, [...]"

The line from 'The Raven' fully goes: "Quoth the raven 'Nevermore'."

Quoth the Raven -- get it?

- [p. 56/42] "Lunch was Dead Man's Fingers and Eyeball Pudding, [...]"

Terry explains that this is "based on the UK tradition of giving horrible names to items on the school menu, such as Snot and Bogey Pie. Eyeball

Pudding was usually semolina, Dead Men's Fingers are sausages. At least, they were at my school, and friends confirm the general approach."

- [p. 56/42] "Miss Butts [...] practised eurhythmics in the gym."

Eurhythmics is an existing but little-known form of movement therapy (usually to music), which is also where pop band The Eurythmics got their name (both spellings of the word are valid).

- [p. 63/48] "There's a floral clock in Quirm. It's quite a tourist attraction."

A flower display common in the more genteel and down-at-heel seaside resorts in the shape of a clock face, with the design of the face picked out in flowering plants of different colours. The more clever ones use flowers which open and close at different times of day, thus in principle allowing the time to be told by looking at the flowers. The less subtle ones just have a clock mechanism buried in the middle, and big hands.

- [p. 69/52] "There's a song about him. It begins: You'd Better Watch Out..."

The real world equivalent of this song is of course 'Santa Claus is Coming to Town'. I just *love* how Terry completely reverses the meaning of that song's opening line, without changing a single word.

+ [p. 71/54] "Behind it, in the turf, two fiery hoofprints burned for a second or two."

I have received I don't know how many e-mails pointing out that this resonates with the burning tire tracks left by the time-travelling DeLorean in the film Back to the Future.

+ [p. 74/56] "[...] the sky ahead of her erupted blue for a moment. Behind her, unseen because light was standing around red with embarrassment [...]"

Binky is obviously going *very* fast, since the visible light in front of him is blue-shifted and behind him red-shifted, something normally only associated with astronomical objects.

- [p. 75/57] "The Soul Cake Tuesday Duck didn't apparently have any kind of a home."

The Discworld equivalent of the Easter Bunny. See also the annotation for p. 193/139 of Lords and Ladies.

- [p. 79/59] "[...] C. H. Lavatory & Son [...]"

It is a curious but true fact that we owe the modern flush toilet as we know it to a Victorian gentleman by the name of Thomas Crapper. Mr Lavatory is obviously his Discworld counterpart.

And before I start getting mail about it: no, Crapper didn't really invent the flush toilet himself, but he made several improvements to the design (shades of James Watt here, see the annotation for p. 175/153 of Reaper Man), and he certainly sold a lot of them to the British army. For more information about Thomas Crapper, read Cecil Adams' More of the

Straight Dope_.

- [p. 81/61] ""What d'you call this, then, Klatchian mist?""

The British expression this refers to is 'Scotch mist', used to describe things that persist in being present or existing despite statements to the contrary. For example:

Worker A: "Someone's buggered off with me three-eighths Gripsey!"

Worker B: (holding up three-eighths Gripsey allegedly buggered-off with by person or persons unknown)
"What's this then? Scotch mist?"

+ [p. 91/69] ""Normal girls didn't get a My Little Binky set on their third birthday!""

My Little Pony is a toy aimed at young girls: a small plastic pony (in bright pink, or blue, etc.) with long hair which you can (allegedly) have endless fun combing.

- [p. 98/73] ""You mean like... *Keith* Death?""

I doubt very much if this is a true reference, but when I saw this I couldn't help thinking: Keith Richards always looks like Death. No reason why Death shouldn't look like a Keith, is there?

- [p. 103/77] ""Er,' she said, 'ANYONE HERE BEEN KILLED AND CALLED VOLF?""

Anyone Here Been Raped And Speak English? was the British title of a book about newspapers' foreign correspondents by Edward Behr, who also wrote The Last Emperor. In the US this book was released under the name Behrings.

The phrase refers to a story concerning a BBC journalist in a refugee camp in the Belgian Congo. He was investigating some of the atrocities being committed there, and was looking for a victim to interview. Unfortunately he didn't have a translator and the victims only spoke French. Finally in desperation the journalist wandered through the camp calling out "Anyone here been raped and speak English?".

- [p. 104/78] ""Hi-jo-to! Ho! Hi-jo-to! Ho!""

This is from Wagner's opera Die Walkure. I don't have to explain what valkyries are, do I?

+ [p. 109/82] "[...] at war with Hersheba and the D'regs [...]"

The name D'regs is not only a pun on 'dregs', but also refers to the Tuaregs, a nomadic Berber tribe in North Africa. The Tuaregs are also the desert marauders who attack Fort Zinderneuf in the movie Beau Geste.

The name 'Hersheba' (a pun on 'Hershey Bar') is something that Terry came up with in 1992 on a.f.p., when he was more or less thinking out loud about the many people who didn't get the Djelibeybi reference (see the annotation for p. 17/17 of Sourcery):

"[...] say Djelibeybi OUT LOUD -- I must have had twenty letters (and one or two emails) from people who didn't twig until the third time round..."

oh god... do they have them in the US? Should it have been called Emmenemms, or Hersheba... hmm, Hersheba... could USE that, yes, little country near Ephebe..."

+ [p. 109/82] "IS THIS THE KLATCHIAN FOREIGN LEGION?"

I'll just let Terry himself handle this one:

"Just so we don't get a zillion postings about cartoon films and comics and movies that _Soul Music_ has been copied from: the whole Klatchian Foreign Legion bit has its roots in 'Beau Geste', which was *the* Foreign Legion movie. It must be one of the most parodied, echoed and copied movies of all time -- it was so influential that it is probably where most people's ideas of the FFL originate."

- [p. 112/84] "There was a riot going on."

This line is a fairly cliché rock 'n roll text fragment. It is used in quite a few songs, most notably in 'Riot in Cell Block #9', a song that has been performed by everybody from Dr Feelgood to the Blues Brothers. _There's A Riot Goin' On_ is also the name of a famous 1971 funk album by Sly and the Family Stone.

- [p. 116/88] "[...] the Vox Humana, the Vox Dei and the Vox Diabolica."

The Vox Humana is an existing organ stop (to be precise: a reed-type stop with a short resonator, common in baroque organs), and so is the Vox Angelicii. But my sources are divided as to whether the Vox Dei actually exists. About the Vox Diabolica everyone is in perfect agreement: ain't no such thing, and never was.

+ [p. 116/88] "He raised his hands."

The Librarian powering up the organ resonates with the scene in which Marty McFly turns on Doc Brown's guitar amplifier in _Back to the Future_.

- [p. 117/89] "[...] except the legendary harp of Owen Mwnyy [...]"

Owen Mwnyy is pronounced as 'Owing Money' (in Welsh, the 'w' is a vowel, pronounced as a 'u'). Also, Owen Myfanwy was a Welsh folk hero, and of course all Welsh folk heroes are dab hands with the harp, which is the Welsh national musical instrument.

- [p. 120/90] "'Cliff? Can't see anyone lasting long in *this* business with a name like *Cliff*.'"

A reference to Cliff Richard -- see the annotation for p. 48/45 of _Johnny and the Dead_.

- [p. 121/91] "'Moving around on your seat like you got a pant full of ant.'"

James Brown, the Godfather of Soul: 'I've got Ants in my Pants and I want to Dance.'

+ [p. 122/92] "They've got one of those new pianofortes [...]' 'But dat sort of thing is for big fat guys in powdered wigs."

Johann Sebastian Bach was invited to Potsdam for the very purpose of trying out King Frederic of Prussia's new pianofortes.

- [p. 123/93] "... the beat went on ..."

'The Beat Goes On' is a song by Sonny Bono (yes, the dude who used to be married to Cher).

- [p. 126/95] "'Hello, hello, hello, what is all this... then?' he said [...]"

Stereotypical British policeman's phrase. See the annotation for p. 60/55 of Guards! Guards!.

- [p. 127/95] "'He can't stop us. We're on a mission from Glod.'"

"We're on a mission from God" is perhaps the most famous quote from the Blues Brothers movie.

- [p. 131/98] "'As soon as he saw the duck, Elmer knew it was going to be a bad day.'"

A nice double reference. To begin with, the cartoons Terry is referring to here are Gary Larson's Far Side cartoons (which I can highly recommend. Just try to avoid the collections published after 1990 or so. They're not that bad, but the earlier ones are significantly better).

Second, there are the eternal cartoon conflicts between Elmer Fudd, hunter, and Daffy Duck, duck. Usually, when Elmer meets Daffy, it **will** turn out to be a bad day for him.

- [p. 134/101] "Along the Ankh with Bow, Rod and Staff with a Knob on the End"

This title certainly **sounds** as if it is a reference to something, but Terry says it is only so in general terms. There used to be dozens of travel books with names like "Along the [fill in river] with [gun and camera, rod and line, etc]", usually written by retired Victorian army men.

- [p. 135/101] "'Blert Wheedown's Guitar Primer,' he read."

Blert Wheedown puns on Bert Weedon, famous for his many "play in a day" guitar primers, which are mainly bought by doting but slightly out of touch grandmothers for grandsons who'd rather have "The Death Metal book of three chords using less than three fingers".

- [p. 140/105] "[...] when Mr Hong opened his takeaway fish bar on the site of the old temple in Dagon street?"

For a full explanation of Mr Hong's tragic fate, see the annotation for p. 197/149 of Men at Arms.

- [p. 142/107] "'We call him Beau Nidle, sir.'"

Beau Nidle = Beau Geste + bone idle.

+ [p. 146/110] "There was a path, though. It led across the fields for half a mile or so, then disappeared abruptly."

This would be a good description of Wheatfield with Crows by Van Gogh, who took his own life shortly after finishing this painting.

- [p. 151/114] "Her mother's favourite dish had been Genocide by Chocolate."

'Death by Chocolate' is an existing dish, as well as a chain of restaurants in New Zealand and Australia.

- [p. 152/114] "MORPHIC RESONANCE, he said, [...]"

Another reference to Rupert Sheldrake's theories. See the annotation for p. 54/45 of Mort.

- [p. 161/121] "The next table was occupied by Satchelmouth Lemon [...]"

Louis Armstrong's nickname was Satchmo, which was short for Satchelmouth. The 'Lemon' part of the name also ties in with black artists by way of the legendary bluesman Blind Lemon Jefferson.

- [p. 162/122] "She was quite attractive in a skinny way, Ridcully thought. What was the tomboy word? Gammon, or something."

Gammon is the lower end of a side of bacon. What Ridcully is thinking of is the word 'gamine', which does have the same meaning as tomboy.

+ [p. 163/123] "'It looks like a spike at the front and a duck's arse, excuse my Klatchian, at the back.'"

"Duck's arse" is, in fact, the correct name for this type of fifties' rock 'n roll haircut.

"Excuse my French" is a euphemism, said after swearing.

- [p. 169/127] "'A song about Great Fiery Balls. [...] Couldn't really make out the words, the reason bein', the piano exploded.'"

Jerry Lee Lewis used to set fire to his piano using gasoline while playing his immortal 'Great balls of Fire'.

- [p. 173/130] "[...] much later on, on the day when the music died, [...]"

The day of the infamous plane crash that killed Buddy Holly, the Big Bopper and Ritchie Valens all in one go is commonly referred to as "the day the music died". Years later, Don McLean would immortalise the phrase even further in his song 'American Pie', but that song is definitely **not** the original source.

+ [p. 173/130] "Ridcully was going to say, oh, you're a rebel, are you, what are you rebelling against, and he'd say... he'd say something pretty damn memorable, that's what he'd do!"

In the 1954 movie The Wild One, starring Marlon Brando as Johnny, the following exchange occurs:

Girl in a bar: So Johnny, what're you rebelling against?
Johnny: What've you got?

- [p. 173/130] "'mumblemumblemumble', said the Dean defiantly, a rebel without a pause."

The name of the classic movie is Rebel Without A Cause. Starring James... Dean.

- [p. 174/131] Song Titles.

'Don't Tread On My New Blue Boots' is Carl Perkins' 'Blue Suede Shoes', 'Good Gracious Miss Polly' is Little Richard's 'Good Golly Miss Molly' and 'Sto Helit Lace' is the Big Bopper's 'Chantilly Lace'.

- + [p. 174/131] "'That bit where you said "hello, baby",' he said. 'Why'd you do that?'"

'Chantilly Lace' begins with The Big Bopper treating us to his half of a telephone conversation with the young lady in question. It starts: Hellll- (then drop about an octave) -lllllo (then up a little bit) ba- (huge glissando up the scale, beyond where he started) aaaaaaaaaybeeeee!

- + [p. 183/138] [...] LIVE FATS DIE YO GNU [...]

After James Dean's legendary motto: "Live fast, die young, leave a good looking corpse."

- [p. 184/139] "'Adrian Turnipseed, Archchancellor."

This is probably just a coincidence, but Donald Turnupseed was the driver of the car that collided with James Dean in the crash that killed him. Donald was only slightly hurt.

- [p. 188/141] "It took him and Gibbsson, the apprentice, [...]"

That's of course Gibson, of guitar-building fame.

- + [p. 190/144] "'I'll throw in the space between the strings for free, OK?'"

Another Blues Brothers reference. When Elwood and Jake are buying their instruments from 'Ray's Music Exchange', Ray Charles makes the comment about the electric piano that he'll "throw in the black notes for free".

- [p. 192/144] "'[...] if anyone comes in and tries to play [...] Pathway to Paradise [...] he's to pull their head off.

'Pathway to Paradise' is the Discworld version of Led Zeppelin's rock anthem 'Stairway to Heaven'.

The song's characteristic guitar riff is so often played in music shops that the patrons get really fed up with it, so it's quite common to see "No Stairway" signs, or in the case of one particular shop in Denmark Street, London, a sign saying: "Anyone who uses the instruments here to play 'Stairway To Heaven', 'Paranoid' or 'Smoke On The Water' should seriously consider whether they have a future in rock and roll."

+ [p. 193/145] ""They say there's a background noise to the universe? A sort of echo of some sound? [...] It wouldn't have to be very loud. It'd just have to be everywhere, all at once.""

What Ponder tries to describe corresponds to our universe's cosmic blackbody microwave radiation, which is indeed a uniform background radiation, spanning all frequencies and coming with the same intensity from every part of the sky at every time of the day in every season. The explanation for this phenomenon is that it is radiation originating with the Big Bang that started our universe.

+ [p. 196/147] ""This* scene took place in Crash's father's coach house, but it was an echo of a scene evolving all around the city."

Placing them in the coach house is a reference to the "garage band" phenomenon.

- [p. 198/149] ""The Cavern!""

The Cavern was the name of the night club in Liverpool where the Beatles played their first performance. It is worth noting that in _The Streets of Ankh-Morpork_ we can see that The Cavern is located on Quarry Lane. This not only recalls 'Penny Lane', but before the Beatles became the Beatles, they called themselves the Quarrymen.

- [p. 198/149] "Gorlick and Hammerjug were songwriters, [...]"

A reference to the musical composers Rogers and Hammerstein, who wrote the songs for _The Sound of Music_ (amongst many other musical scores).

Note also that 'stein' is a word the English (not the Germans) use for 'jug'.

- [p. 198/150] "Except the one about Hiho."

The Hiho song is first mentioned in _Moving Pictures_; see the annotation for p. 88/73 of that book.

- [p. 199/150] ""And me an' my friends can walk towards you with our hats on backwards in a menacing way, Yo!""

Rat music = rap music.

+ [p. 200/151] "Troll gambling is even simpler than Australian gambling. One of the most popular games is One Up, [...]"

Two-up is an Australian form of gambling played extensively by Australian soldiers during both World Wars. Although generally illegal outside of licensed casinos, it can now be played in country towns during some local festivals.

Professional games are controlled by at least one 'boxer', who collects a 'rake-off' or commission from all winners. Bets may be placed either between players, or to cover the 'centre', representing the 'spinner's' stake. The spinner must back heads, and other players must back tails. Side bets may back either.

Two coins are placed on a 'kip' (a flat piece of wood), and the spinner

tosses them in the air. If the coins don't spin properly or if they land one head and one tail, it is classed a 'no-throw' and all bets stand. If both coins land heads or both tails, bets are resolved. Players take turns as spinner and may continue to throw so long as they show heads. The spinner begins to collect winnings only after throwing three heads; subsequently, he may retire or place more bets. However, if the spinner 'dooks them' by throwing three *successive* heads, the boxer takes a percentage (usually about 10%).

There are a bunch of other conventions, such as calling "Come in, spinner" before each throw, and variations in the betting between casinos. I'm told that although the odds favour the house (as usual), the spinner's odds are better than other players'.

- [p. 201/152] "'I hired you a helper. [...] Meet Asphalt.'"

In the music scene, the person performing the same tasks for a band as Asphalt does is called a roadie. His name is therefore quite appropriate.

- [p. 205/154] "'Bee There Orr Bee A Rectangular Thyng', said Cliff."

The phrase is, of course: Be There Or Be Square.

- [p. 207/156] "'S called Insanity,' said Asphalt."

Puns on the name of the British pop group Madness.

+ [p. 208/157] "'It says BORN TO RUNE,' said Crash, [...]"

A combination of the 'Born to Rule' slogan, and Bruce Springsteen's anthem 'Born to Run'.

- [p. 209/157] "'That's a bodacious audience,' said Jimbo."

This may well be a reference to the movie *Bill & Ted's Excellent Adventure*, where the two protagonists use this word repeatedly. Later on, Crash also says 'Excellent!', another catchphrase from the movie.

- [p. 219/165] "'[...] would they remember some felonious monk or shout for Glod Glodsson?'"

One of my favourite Pratchett puns ever. Thelonious Monk is one of our world's most highly regarded jazz musicians (though he played the piano, not the horn -- you'd want Miles Davis for that).

- [p. 220/166] "'Cavern Deep, Mountain High?' said Glod."

'River Deep Mountain High', by many considered Phil Spector's last Great Production, for Ike and Tina Turner.

- [p. 222/167] "'It's the Gritz for *you*!'"

That's the Ritz in our world.

- [p. 233/175] "Si non confectus, non reficiat."

"If it ain't broke, don't fix it." See the annotation for the Discworld mottos in *The Discworld Companion*.

- [p. 235/177] "[...] a small, greyish-brown mongrel dog [...] sat peering into the box for a while."

A reference to the famous 'His Master's Voice' logo for the RCA records. The dog is probably Gaspode.

+ [p. 237/178] "'You tellin' me ants can count?' 'Oh, no. Not individual ants...'"

An excellent explanation of the anthill as a metaphor for intelligence can be found in Douglas R. Hofstadter's *_Goedel, Escher, Bach_*.

+ [p. 239/180] "'I know a golem. Mr Dorfl down in Long Hogmeat.'"

See the annotation for p. 234/204 of *_Reaper Man_*. Incidentally, 'long pig' is a name for human meat (we are supposed to taste like pork).

Dorfl will turn up later in *_Feet of Clay_*.

+ [p. 242/182] "'Are you the Watch?' Glod bowed. 'No, ma'am. We're musicians.'"

The *_Blues Brothers_* again. See the annotation for p. 122/107 of *_Witches Abroad_*.

- [p. 243/183] "'And this one?' he said. 'It'll make the world end and the sky fall on me if I give it a tootle, will it?' 'Interesting you should say that,' said the old lady'.

In other words, the untarnished trumpet is actually the biblical last trump, which signals the end of the world.

- [p. 245/184] "'There were eight of them, led by... um... Cantaloupe.'"

That's Calliope. A cantaloupe is a kind of melon. Note that in our world's classical mythology there were **nine** muses. On the Discworld, this of course becomes eight. For another example of this mechanism in action, see the annotation for p. 122/101 of *_Eric_*.

- [p. 252/190] "'That's mexical, that is. They put the worm in to show how strong it is.'"

A piece of typical Discworld lexical confusion here: the name of the drink (and of the associated drug) is **mescal**, the country it comes from is Mexico. And yes, mescal is the original drink that has a worm at the bottom of the bottle.

+ [p. 254/191] "'A-wrong-wrong-wrong-wrong, a-do-wrong-wrong,' said the other two maids."

The maids' chorus and the beehives are like those of the girl groups of the sixties; this quote itself is similar to the background vocals in the Crystals' 'Da Doo Ron Ron'.

- [p. 258/194] "[...] someone who sat on a wall and required royal assistance to be put together again."

Terry means Humpty Dumpty, from the famous children's rhyme ("All the king's horses and all the king's men / Couldn't put Humpty together again."). From the description he gives it is clear that he is specifically referring to Humpty as he was portrayed by Tenniel in the illustrations for Lewis Carroll's Through The Looking Glass.

+ [p. 263/198] "So you want to be Music With Rocks In stars, do you?"
'Yes, sir!' 'Then listen here to what I say...'"

From The Byrds' 'So You Want to be a Rock 'n' Roll Star':

So you want to be a rock and roll star?
Then listen now to what I say.
Just get an electric guitar
Then take some time
And learn how to play.
And with your hair swung right,
And your pants too tight
It's gonna be all right.

- [p. 264/199] "'We're Certainly Dwarfs', said Dibbler. 'Yes, that might work.'"

Terry is a fan of a fairly obscure band (in Europe at least -- in America they are a bit better known) called They Might Be Giants (he has mentioned on a.f.p. that their 'Where your Eyes don't Go' is the scariest song he's ever heard -- not that scary is a word I'd normally associate with TMBG, mind you, but then I don't know that particular song).

Anyway, 'We're Certainly Dwarfs' appears to be the Discworld answer to this group, or at least to their name, and it may be amusing to know that the name was first suggested to Terry by a.f.p. reader Mike Berzonsky, during an early discussion about Discworld popular music. Mike wrote, way back in february 1993:

"Totally off the subject, this came to me last night. Terry's covered tons of stuff, but other than metamorphizing tapes in Good Omens, little on Rock n Roll. Since he's a fan of TMBG, maybe a dwarvish rock band, 'No, We Really Are Dwarves'. Since rock is so central to dwarf life, it makes sense to me that they'd have a band, although I understand that rich dwarves hire trolls to bang on anvils, so maybe Detritus could be the percussion section. And Dibbler could be their manager. No, better, Gaspode the Wonder Dog. And finding the references to the last forty years of music could be a blast. Just an idea."

Was this guy a prophet, or what? Terry replied:

"I've occasionally toyed with the Ankh music business. And I can promise you that if it ever happens, there'll be a group called 'We Really Are Dwarfs' :-)"

The rest is history.

The song mentioned later on in the text, 'Something's gotten into my beard' is not directly traceable to They Might Be Giants, or it would have to be to the track 'Fingertips' on Apollo 18, which features the line "Something grabbed a hold of my hand". Most people figure it is simply a reference to an entirely different song: Gene Pitney's

'Something's gotten hold of my Heart'.

- [p. 264/199] ""But you've got to spell it with a Z. Trollz."

In the sixties it was common for bands to get their names from intentional misspellings of common words. The best-known examples of this trend are probably the Byrds and Led Zeppelin.

+ [p. 265/199] ""So now we're Suck,' said Crash."

Suck --> KISS.

+ [p. 270/203] "[...] a name like JOE'S LIVERY STABLE, [...]"

So what we have here is the Discworld version of Joe's Garage, another well-known rock 'n roll concept.

- [p. 270/204] "Buddy sighed. 'You had a great house there, I expect?' said the troll. 'Just a shack,' said Buddy. 'Made of earth and wood. Well, mud and wood really.'"

'Johnny B. Goode' again. See the annotation for p. 14/11.

+ [p. 272/204] "And the one they called the Duck Man had a duck on his head."

In Daniel Pinkwater's book *_Lizard Music_* a major character is the Chicken Man, an apparently homeless man who walks around with a chicken perched on his head (under a hat). The Chicken Man is a lot more together than The Duck Man -- he periodically does little street shows featuring the chicken, who does tricks. According to Pinkwater, the Chicken Man was based on a real person who lived in Chicago.

+ [p. 278/209] ""They follow actors and musicians around,' he said, 'because of, you know, the glamour and everything --'"

While it is obvious that Buddy is talking about the phenomenon of groupies, it is also interesting to note that the word 'glamour' is sometimes used to mean magic spell or enchantment, making this sentence tie in nicely with the wizard's earlier beliefs that Music With Rocks In is somehow magical.

- [p. 282/212] ""The Surreptitious Fabric', said Jimbo."

The Discworld version of the legendary Velvet Underground.

- [p. 284/214] ""It's sort of deaf."

So, in effect they bought a Def Leppard, get it?

- [p. 285/214] More band names.

The Whom = The Who
The Blots = The Inkspots
Lead Balloon = Led Zeppelin

+ [p. 285/215] ""Yes, but a rolling stone gathers no moss, my father says,' said Crash."

Notice how when the opportunity presents itself for the group to pick one of the most influential rock 'n roll group names imaginable, Crash and friends totally and utterly fail to see it.

+ [p. 285/215] "THANK YOU, said the grateful Death."

A straightforward reference to the band The Grateful Dead. I didn't really think this was worth annotating, but people kept sending me mail about it, so...

- [p. 290/218] "'Nice curtains, by the way.'"

This is a reference to rock bands 'redecorating their hotel rooms', i.e. thrashing it beyond all recognition. Glod interprets the phrase more literally.

+ [p. 290/218] "'[...] I'm going to put my rock kit on my back and take a long walk, and the first time someone says to me, 'What are dem things on your back?' dat's where I'm gonna settle down.'"

In Homer's *_Odyssey_*, Odysseus was told by the spirit of Tiresias that if he ever made it back to Ithaca, he was to put one oar on his shoulder and walk inland, until he reached a people who knew nothing of sailing. There, he was to offer a sacrifice to Poseidon, after which he would be allowed to die after a happy old age, far from the sea.

+ [p. 298/225] "[...] somewhere where no one remembers your name."

Since Death has actually gone to the Mended Drum, it's not too far-fetched to assume this is a nod to the theme song of *_Cheers_*, the bar "where everybody knows your name".

+ [p. 299/225] "_He built me a swing_, Susan remembered."

Death's attempts to build a swing for Susan are a Discworld version of a cartoon that has been doing the rounds in offices all over the world. Usually the cartoon depicts 'swing-building' as an increasingly complex series of 'logical' steps representing an abstract process such as "the software life cycle". The finished item, looking somewhat like Death's completed swing, is typically followed by a final picture showing "what the customer wanted", namely, a tire hanging from a branch by a single rope.

+ [p. 300/226] "'In like Flint, eh?'"

"In like Flynn" is the normal expression, going back to Errol Flynn's sexual transgressions -- at one point he was even charged with statutory rape, arrested and brought to trial, then acquitted.

+ [p. 306/231] "_I can feel it. Every day. It's getting closer..._"

This is part of the lyrics to Buddy Holly's 'Everyday':

"Everyday, it's a-gettin' closer,
Goin' faster than a roller coaster,
Love like yours will surely come my way, (hey hey hey)"

- [p. 306/231] More song names.

'There's A Great Deal Of Shaking Happening' is Jerry Lee Lewis' 'Whole Lot of Shakin' Goin' On'. 'Give Me That Music With Rocks In' is Leiber and Stoller's 'Rock and Roll Music'.

+ [p. 307/231] "'Hah. That'll be the day.'"

The title of one of Buddy Holly's greatest hits.

- [p. 307/232] "'I'd like a quarry,' said the troll. 'Yeah?' 'Yeah. Heart-shaped.'"

A reference to the strange-shaped swimming pools rock and movie stars are supposed to have built for themselves.

+ [p. 313/236] "It was called Hide Park [...]"

A 'hide' is in fact an Old English measure of land. The definition varies, but it is usually the amount considered adequate for the support of one free family with its dependants, and at an earlier time this in turn was defined as being as much land as could be tilled with one plough in a year.

Hyde park is also the name of a largish open space in the centre of London where, sometime around 1970, the Rolling Stones played a massive free concert.

+ [p. 314/237] "'Whoever heard of a serious musician with a glove?'"

Part of Michael Jackson's image is his always wearing one glove on stage.

- [p. 315/237] "'Dwarfs With Altitude'"

Reference to the gangster rap group Niggaz With Attitude (NWA), and the general concept of "having an attitude".

- [p. 323/244] More band names.

Boyz from the Wood = Boyz 'n the Hood
(which is a movie, not a band, btw)
&U = U2

+ [p. 324/244] "'[...] proper music with real words... 'Summer is icumen in, lewdly sing cuckoo,' that sort of thing.'"

One of the oldest (if not the oldest) known songs in the English language is the 'Cuckoo Song': "Sumer is icumen in, lhude sing cuccu". 'Lhude' means 'loud', not 'lewd'.

+ [p. 324/244] "'Well, it's got a beat and you can dance to it,' [...]"

This, usually followed by something like "I'll give it a 92", is a cliché made famous by the TV music show American Bandstand, hosted by Dick Clark in the 50s and 60s. American Bandstand was televised daily in the afternoon (weekly, in later years) and helped introduce such stars of the era as Chubby Checker, Paul Anka and Frankie Avalon.

- [p. 326/245] "'I... won this,' said Buddy, in a small distant world of his own. 'With a song. _Sioni Bod Da_, it was.'"

'Bod Da' is Welsh for 'be good'. Ergo, 'Sioni Bod Da' = 'Johnny B. Goode'. See also the annotation for p. 270/204.

+ [p. 327/244] "The right kind of name for musicians ought to be something like Blondie and His Merry Troubadours."

'Blondie' was the name of the band fronted by Debbie Harrie in the late seventies and early eighties. Blondel was the name of the troubadour who, according to legend, went around singing at castles in search of King Richard Lionheart.

+ [p. 327/247] "Anyone else fancy a hot dog? Hot dog? [...] Hot dog? Right. That's three hot d--"

Another replaying of a Blues Brothers scene, only they did it with orange whip instead of hot dogs.

+ [p. 330/249] "'Cwm on?'"

See the annotation for p. 117/89. 'Cwm' is Welsh for valley. (Note that the Discworld has a Koom Valley...)

- [p. 340/256] "'We *could* do 'Anarchy in Ankh-Morpork',' said Jimbo doubtfully."

Puns on the punk anthem 'Anarchy in the UK', by the Sex Pistols.

+ [p. 348/263] "It's a masterpiece," said the Dean. 'A triumph!'"

Triumph is a British make of motorcycle, comparable in quality and history to the Harley Davidson.

- [p. 350/264] "I NEED YOUR CLOTHES. [...] GIVE ME YOUR COAT."

Death is paraphrasing lines made famous by Arnold Schwarzenegger in his role as the Terminator. Interestingly enough, the music accompanying the scene in question in _Terminator II_ is the song 'Bad to the Bone'...

There is an even more subtle reference hidden here, however. After this scene, Death will be riding towards the site of the crash in "a coat he borrowed from [the] Dean", and that is another line from Don McLean's 'American Pie' (see the annotation for p. 173/130). Terry has confirmed on a.f.p. that the reference is indeed intentional.

+ [p. 350/264] "The flower-bed erupted."

This is the written counterpart to Josh Kirby's cover painting, and likewise a Discworld version of Meatloaf's _Bat out of Hell_, both the album sleeve and the song.

+ [p. 352/266] "'He... he had a rose in his teeth, sarge.'"

A reference to the Skull and Roses motifs used for many of the Grateful Dead's album covers and concert posters.

+ [p. 364/275] "A small fingerbone rolled across the stones until it came up against another, slightly larger bone."

In light of the earlier Terminator references, most of my correspondents think this scene replays the one in *Terminator II* where the T-1000 model Terminator, after having been frozen by liquid nitrogen and then shattered, slowly starts to reassemble itself.

+ [p. 366/276] "'Please!' she shouted. 'Don't fade away!'"

'Not Fade Away' is the title of one of Buddy Holly's songs.

+ [p. 376/284] "Gloria sighed. 'Sometimes it's hard to be a woman,' she said."

The opening line from Tammy Wynette's torch song 'Stand By Your Man'.

- [p. 376/284] "'I'd *swear* he's elvish.'"

This paragraph is the culmination of the Elvis running gag (see the annotation for p. 30/22), but in order to appreciate it you have to know that Kirsty MacColl had a big hit a decade or so ago with a song called: "There's a guy works down the chip shop swears he's Elvis".

+ [p. 378/285] "So you're a rebel, little Death? Against what? Death thought about it. If there was a snappy answer, he couldn't think of one."

See the annotation for p. 173/130.

INTERESTING TIMES

- One remarkable thing about this book's title is that it changed at least twice since Terry began working on it. It started out as *Unclear Physics*, then became *Imperial Wizard* for a few days, and finally ended up as *Interesting Times*:

"Rincewind and Cohen are having such fun -- that is to say, death and terror attend them at every step -- on the Counterweight Continent and the Forbidden City of the Agatean Empire that it might well end up being called: *Imperial Wizard* ...which ought to sell well in the US. In some States, anyway."

"The editor and my main beta-test reader have raised objections to the title *Unclear Physics*. They think it's a lovely title but they don't think it's a good one for this book. Nor do I, because I've got a better use for it -- I've realised how to utilize the squash court in UU... So it will be the original working title: *Interesting Times*. At least for this week."

+ [p. 9/7] "'I accuse the High Priest of the Green Robe in the library with the double-handed axe.'"

Fate and the other Gods are playing the Discworld variant of the board game *Clue* (known as *Cluedo* outside North America).

The object of this game is to deduce not only which of several suspects

has murdered the unfortunate 'Mr X', but also what weapon was used, and in which room of the mansion the murder took place. Once you think you've figured it out you have to publicly 'accuse' the murderer, just as Fate does, and if you're right you win the game.

Although a Reverend Green is one of the suspects, and the Library is one of the possible rooms, the game does not feature a double-handed axe, last time I looked.

+ [p. 10/8] "Let a game begin,' said the Lady."

I'm a bit surprised at having to annotate this, but apparently not everyone recognises just who the Lady is. She is of course none other than Lady Luck, who was first introduced in *The Colour of Magic*, and who has always had a soft spot for Rincewind, possibly because he never relies on her.

Note that green is a colour often associated with luck (e.g. Irish leprechauns).

+ [p. 11/8] "The Honges, the Sunges, the Tangs, the McSweeneys and the Fangs."

The presence of the McSweeney name ("very old established family") in this list is used as a running gag throughout the book. It also reminded me of James Clavell's Hong Kong novels (*Tai-Pan*, *Noble House* and *Gai-Jin*), which chronicle the Asian business empire founded and headed by various generations of the Scottish Struan family.

+ [p. 13/10] "[...] the mandelbrot patterns on the wings are of considerable interest."

Benoit Mandelbrot is the discoverer of the Mandelbrot Set, a famous 'fractal', first plotted in 1980. Mandelbrot sets are rather difficult to describe in words (actually, they are very simple to describe in words only not in a way that most people will understand...), but what it boils down to is that a picture of the Mandelbrot set is a kind of mathematical painting with many swirling colours interspersed by strange, heart-shaped clusters of black. Most people will probably have seen Mandelbrot sets on computer screens or screensavers or wall posters. If not, all you need to do is catch yourself a Quantum Weather Butterfly and study its wings.

+ [p. 18/14] The Agatean Empire.

There's a nice extra resonance with China here: Agate is a semi-precious gemstone, originally used in the Orient to make dinnerware.

+ [p. 36/29] "'Curiouser and curiouser,' said the Senior Wrangler."

A famous quote from *Alice in Wonderland*. Not surprisingly, it merely confuses the other wizards.

+ [p. 44/35] "'To answer such questions Hex had been built, [...]"

That a hex is a spell or a curse is well-known, but it may be less obvious to non-computer types that 'hex' is also short for 'hexadecimal', a common number base used by programmers.

To belabour the obvious, this conjunction of meanings produces the perfect name for a computer designed to analyse magic.

+ [p. 44/35] "[...] he was pretty sure no one had designed the Phase of the Moon Generator."

The phase of the moon, besides being undoubtedly very handy when it comes to magical calculations, is used in our world's computer jargon to humorously indicate a random parameter on which something is supposed to depend.

+ [p. 45/36] "[...] the ants rode up and down on a little paternoster [...]"

A paternoster (in this context) is a closed-loop elevator of linked carriages, somewhat like the bucket chain principle applied to people -- or in this case, ants.

+ [p. 45/36] "[...] the aquarium had been lowered on its davits so that the operator would have something to watch during the long hours... [...]"

A reference to the screensaver programs often found running on personal computers to prevent phosphor burn-in of the monitor. One popular screensaver module turns the screen into an aquarium of animated, swimming fish.

+ [p. 47/37] "+++++ Redo From Start +++++"

A typically obtuse error message of the type that is thankfully going out of fashion.

'Redo from start' is a bona fide error message for the BASIC programming language, caused by incorrect responses to an INPUT command.

+ [p. 47/38] "The Unreal Time Clock ticked sideways."

All computers have a real time clock, but, one assumes, an unreal time clock measures imaginary time, which explains why it ticks sideways: the imaginary numbers are at 90 degrees to the real numbers on the Complex Plane.

+ [p. 47/38] "'Out of Cheese Error'"

In computing, you regularly encounter "out of memory" or "out of paper" errors.

+ [p. 49/39] "[...] the Bursar, still happily living in the valley of the dried frogs."

The 'dolls' in the movie title Valley of the Dolls refers to the pills to which the starlets were addicted.

+ [p. 51/41] "'Wardrobe? Er... Er... Isn't this the Magic Kingdom of Scrumptiousness?' [...]"

A reference to the Kingdom of Narnia, from C. S. Lewis' series of books. See the annotation for p. 22/22 of Sourcery.

+ [p. 54/43] ""We must storm the Winter Palace! [...] Then we can storm the Summer Palace!""

The Russian Revolutionary army stormed the Winter Palace in St Petersburg, but less well known is that the Summer Palace of the Chinese royal family was indeed pillaged and destroyed by the British and the French during the Taiping Rebellion of 1860. Terry acknowledges:

"I had 'storming the winter palace' in mind because, yes, the events of the Russian revolution are more familiar to us -- and then I came across the storming of the summer palace while reading up on Chinese torture. It took me some effort not to find some joke about the Taiping Rebellion, I have to say... and as for the Boxer Rising..."

+ [p. 56/45] ""Your Wife is a big hippo""

In *Interesting Times*, much is made of similar sounding words having totally different meanings. Languages such as Chinese and Japanese pay great attention to the pitch and intonation of words, and the same word with a different intonation can indeed have radically different meanings. (Of course not all different meanings are due to intonation -- there are other possibilities, such as vowel lengths, and some words just naturally have many different meanings).

Just in case you think Terry is overstating things for comic effect, there is an anecdote told by linguist David Moser, who was learning Chinese, and was practising with some Chinese friends. He was tired, and said "I want to go to sleep now", but got the intonation wrong, and what he actually said was "I stand by where the elephant urinates".

Similarly, I am told that the Chinese glyph 'sento' can alternatively mean 'public bath', 'residence of a retired emperor', 'first scaling the wall of a besieged castle', 'fighting together' or 'scissors', while the Japanese 'kansen' can mean any of 'main-line', 'warship', 'sweat-gland', 'infection', 'government', 'appointed' and 'witnessing a battle'.

+ [p. 60/48] ""Be afraid. Be very afraid.""

A famous line from the 1986 remake of *The Fly*, starring Jeff Goldblum and Geena Davis, also used as a tagline to promote the movie.

+ [p. 61/48] "... *possibly* the finest lager in the world.'

In our world, the advertising slogan of Carlsberg is: "Probably the best lager in the world".

+ [p. 88/70] ""The Silver Horde,' said Cohen, with a touch of pride."

Derived from the 'Golden Horde', one of the successor states to the Mongol Empire, based in the steppes of Southern Russia and the Ukraine, and ruled by descendants of Genghiz Khan. There was even a movie, *The Golden Horde*, starring John Wayne as Genghiz Khan. As my correspondent puts it: "Disbelief suspended by the neck until dead, dead, dead."

+ [p. 107/85] "[...] a complicated pile of ivory tiles, playing *Shibo Yangcong-san*."

In our world the Chinese game of Mahjongg is played with ivory tiles, and

its rules have many similarities to certain types of western card games. It shouldn't come as a big surprise, therefore, that 'Shibo Yangcong-san' is actually Japanese for 'Cripple Mr Onion'.

+ [p. 111/88] "Where's the pork?"

A few years ago, there was an American TV commercial featuring an irate old lady looking at her hamburger and ranting "Where's the beef?!". This became a national catchphrase for a while, and was even used by George Bush in one of his election campaign speeches, if I recall correctly.

Terry says: "See? This is probably a genuine joke that Americans *will* get and most Europeans won't. Hah! and they said it couldn't be done!"

+ [p. 120/96] "Excuse me, what is your name?' Rincewind said. 'Pretty Butterfly.'"

Apart from her ability to cause as many problems for Rincewind as the Quantum Weather Butterfly, Pretty Butterfly's name also resonates with that of the operatic Madame Butterfly.

+ [p. 142/113] "Bruce the Hoon"

Hoon is New Zealand/Australian slang for a lout or hooligan. 'Hooning around' describes the act of driving around wildly in one's car, spinning the wheels and so forth.

+ [p. 156/125] "There was a corral, for the Luggages."

It is obvious that Luggages are fairly common in the Agatean Empire, yet in The Light Fantastic Twoflower explains that he got his Luggage from one of those mysterious magic shops. Terry says:

"That was a long time ago... think of how it's all progressed. They've got real clocks in Ankh-Morpork now, people wear spectacles... you might as well say home computers were rare and special things in 1980 so how come there were so many of them in 1990? What makes *the* Luggage special is its peculiarly endearing character..."

+ [p. 172/138] "Then he tugged the sword free and inspected the steaming blade. 'Hmm,' he said. 'Interesting...'"

Lord Hong finds the blade interesting because he has just discovered a way to quench red-hot sword blades without oxidising them. Apparently traditional Japanese sword making actually used condemned prisoners in the forging process.

+ [p. 221/177] "History told of a runner who'd run forty miles after a battle to report its successful outcome to those at home."

After a successful naval battle at the town of Marathon in Greece, a man reportedly ran all the way to Athens, 42 kilometres away, to inform his leader of the victory. He is also reported to have died on the spot from the strain after announcing their win. This is how the running event of the same name was born.

+ [p. 230/184] "'Why're their feet so small?' said Cohen."

Foot binding was a very common practice in China among women of the upper classes. As young girls, their feet would be wrapped in painfully tight bandages. When the girls grew, their feet did not. By adulthood the feet were barely half their proper length, which was considered attractive. Thankfully the procedure has almost died out.

+ [p. 236/189] "'So there was only blue left. Well, he'd show them...'
[...] He had to simplify it a bit, of course."

Three Solid Frogs is inventing the Willow Pattern Plate, the well-known blue oriental picture of a maiden standing on a bridge.

+ [p. 291/233] "'How lucky do you feel, my lords?'"

Clint Eastwood as Dirty Harry. See the annotation for p. 136/124 of _Guards! Guards!_.

+ [p. 296/238] "A seven foot warrior smiled at him."

In 1974, thousands of terracotta warriors (no two faces alike!) were discovered in the tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi at Mount Li, in the Shaanxi Province. Huangdi was the first emperor of a unified China (221-207 BC), famed for being harsh, autocratic, and intolerant of criticism.

+ [p. 303/243] "'_Orrrrr! Itiyorshu! Yutimishu!_'"

Terry writes:

"During WWII Hollywood obviously made a lot of gung-ho war movies. But... who could play the Japanese? The Japanese in the US were banged up in holiday camps in Death Valley or someplace. So the producers roped in anyone who 'looked Japanese' -- mainly Koreans, the story runs. The actors didn't really have lines since their job was, basically, to be shot by John Wayne. In order to give them something 'Japanese sounding' to say, some genius suggested they shout, very fast, 'I tie your shoe, you tie my shoe'...

I've never dared check by watching the actual movies..."

+ [p. 307/246] "It was a grainy picture, and it was in shades of green rather than proper colours, [...]"

Rincewind is wearing the Discworld equivalent of a Virtual Reality helmet.

+ [p. 307/246] "[...] a row of little pictures lit up on the wide cuff. They showed soldiers. Soldiers digging, soldiers fighting, soldiers climbing..."

The icons for controlling the Red Clay Army are immediately familiar to anyone who has ever played the computer game _Lemmings_, in which you have to use similar controls to guide a group of brainlessly wandering lemmings across intricate and dangerous underground labyrinths.

When this was first remarked upon by readers in a.f.p, Terry wrote:

"What? Lemmings? Merely because the red army can fight, dig, march and climb and is controlled by little icons? Can't imagine how anyone thought

that...

Not only did I wipe Lemmings from my hard disc, I overwrote it so's I couldn't get it back."

+ [p. 329/264] "'Friendly stab', as it is formally known."

The Discworld version of our world's many military euphemisms, such as:

Friendly fire = weaponry accidentally fired at own troops.

Permanent pre-hostility = peace.

Collateral damage = civilians killed.

+ [p. 350/281] "[...] a calendar for the year surmounted by a rather angular picture of a beagle, standing on its hind legs."

One of the classic computer programs that circulated in the seventies used ASCII characters to 'draw' a picture of Snoopy from *Peanuts*, followed by the year's calendar.

+ [p. 351/282] "The old blokes say that sort of thing used to happen all the time, back in the Dream."

For an explanation of where exactly Rincewind has landed see the annotation for p. 149/132 of *Reaper Man* (just in case the significance of the word "kangaroo" escaped your attention).

The Dream is a reference to the Aboriginal Dreamtime religion.

MASKERADE

+ *Maskerade*, as a parody of *The Phantom of the Opera*, is based largely upon the musical by Andrew Lloyd Webber, but makes the events and characters more realistic. Hence, in *Phantom*, Christine is the beautiful, slim, new star, with a good voice that needs training, holding back and reluctant to take her rightful place in the opera. Carlotta is the jealous prima donna, with a classical voice on the verge of decrepitude, and large lungs. The Phantom wants Christine to sing, and the owners would be happy to oblige, but for the need to keep Carlotta's ego assuaged.

In *Maskerade*, Christine can't sing, but looks pretty, so both the owners and the Phantom fall for her. Agnes, with the voice, is merely utilised.

+ [p. 11] "'We're going to have to get Mr Cripslock to engrave page 11 again,' he said mournfully. 'He's spelt "famine" with seven letters --'"

A reference to the celebrated 'famine' error in the Corgi paperback edition of *Good Omens*. See the annotation for p. 154/98 of *Good Omens*.

+ [p. 12] "'Well, my old granny used to make Spotted Dick --'"

See the annotation for p. 88/77 of *Witches Abroad*.

+ [p. 28] "'_Cosi fan Hita_', she read. '_Die Meistersinger von Scrote_'."

I am almost completely ignorant on the subject of operas, but the titles Terry parodies in _Maskerade_ are so well-known that even I had no problem figuring out the originals. With that in mind I really didn't intend to annotate them, but so far nearly everybody who has sent in annotations for _Maskerade_ has mentioned the opera titles, and I fear very much that if I don't include them now I will continue to get tons of mail about it.

So: _Cosi fan Hita_ is Mozart's _Cosi fan tutte_, and _Die Meistersinger von Scrote_ is Richard Wagner's _Die Meistersinger von Nuernberg_.

+ [p. 32] "She at least respected anyone's right to recreate themselves."

As does Terry himself -- see the annotation for p. 20/15 of _Soul Music_.

+ [p. 36] "'_The Joye of Snacks_,' she read out loud."

The pun on _The Joy of Sex_ is obvious, but what not everybody may know is that the title of *that* book, in turn, was inspired by an earlier popular book called _The Joy of Cooking_.

+ [p. 42] "'That's why they never sell tickets for Box Eight, didn't you know?!'"

In the _Phantom_, the Phantom's box is Box Five, and it's out of fear that they don't sell tickets for it. On the Discworld we have seen before that important numbers tend to gravitate towards 8, and it's luck (far more appropriate in opera) that prevents the sale of tickets.

+ [p. 43] "'That looks like an accident waiting to happen if I ever saw one,' she mumbled.

In the _Phantom_, one of the most spectacular and well-publicised special effects is the crashing of the chandelier onto the stage, at the end of act 1. This occurs when Christine and Raoul secretly pledge their love for each other, which the Phantom overhears.

+ [p. 47] "'It's white bone! He has no nose!' [...] 'Then how does he --' Agnes began."

From the old joke, made famous by Monty Python's "The funniest joke in the world" sketch:

-- My dog has no nose.
-- How does he smell?
-- Terrible.

And yes, I know this joke isn't the one that the sketch is named after. The funniest joke in the world (which, in the German translation, eventually enabled the British to win World War II) goes: "Wenn ist das Nunstuck git und Slotermeyer? Ja! Beiherhund das Oder die Flipperwaldt gersput!"

+ [p. 56] "'_Schneide meinen eigenen Hals_ --'"

German for: "Cut My Own Throat".

+ [p. 92] "'At least stand on tiptoe!' he shouted. 'You probably cost me a dollar just running up here!'"

It is precisely standing on tiptoe that wears out ballet shoes so quickly.

+ [p. 93] "'[...] flush him out, chase him through the city, catch him and beat him to a pulp, and then throw what's left into the river. It's the only way to be sure.'"

Resonates with a famous scene in *_Aliens_*, where Ripley says: "I say we take off and nuke the site from orbit. It's the only way to be sure."

+ [p. 97] "[...] tonight's production of *_La Traviata_*."

Verdi's *_La Traviata_*.

+ [p. 97] "'What in fact we would like you to do... Perdita... is *sing* the role, indeed, but not, in fact... *play* the role.'"

This will sound familiar to anyone who has ever seen *_Singing in the Rain_*, or knows any of the many other stories where this plot device is used. Terry says:

"The idea of an understudy doing all the work for the star is probably a common film cliché. I don't recall it in any film about music, but now I come to think of it there was a Fred Astaire film where he *dances* instead of the star of the show (wearing a mask... I didn't say it was a good movie). But the basis of the Agnes/Christine thing lies not in any movie but in real life. It has happened. My sources tell me that stars have gone on stage jetlagged or stricken with a sore throat and someone has been put behind them in the chorus to sing the role. I believe there has even been at least one case where the prompter (in the box in front of the stage) has tried to jump-start the dumbstruck star with the first few words of the song and ended up singing it all the way through. It's not a big step to go from that to the setup in *_Maskerade_*."

+ [p. 98] "[...] a revival of *_The Ring of the Nibelung_*."

Wagner's opera is called 'The Ring of the Nibelung', or in German: 'Der Ring des Nibelungen'.

+ [p. 99] "'Hello Colette,' said Granny. 'What fascinatin' earrings you are wearing.'"

Now this is an annotation that is going to need some explaining. The short version of the story is as follows:

Colette is Colette Reap, a long-time a.f.p. regular, who impressed Terry by attending a book signing wearing earrings made out of Clarecraft's anorankhs.

The longer version goes as follows:

Clarecraft is a company that sells highly popular handcrafted Discworld miniatures and jewellery. Information on Clarecraft can be found in the *_Discworld Merchandise FAQ_*, available from the Pratchett Archives.

One particular item of jewellery they sell is the _anorankh_, a small model of an Egyptian cross wearing an anorak. (Don't ask -- but in case you think you want to know: the precise story of how the anorankh came into existence can be found in the _Holy Anorankh_ file, also available from the Pratchett Archives.)

Meanwhile, over on alt.fan.pratchett, it became, for some reason, standard practice for the male readers of the group to propose marriage (often all of them at the same time) to female readers. Colette, our resident net.goddess and therefore one of the most 'visible' females on the group, was one of the most popular proposal targets. (For more detailed information about marriage proposals and other characteristic a.f.p. habits, see the _A.f.p. Timeline_ file, also available from -- you guessed it -- the Pratchett Archives.)

With all this background information in mind, I'll let Colette herself tell the rest of the story:

"The interesting earrings thing comes from when I went to the _Discworld Companion_ signing in central London in May 1994. The signing was at lunch-time on a weekday and I was going to see our main computer supplier in the afternoon so I was fairly smartly dressed, but I was wearing my anorankh earrings, which Terry suddenly noticed while I was standing in front of him getting my book signed, and it was the first time he'd seen them made into earrings.

On 31st December 1994, completely out of the blue, I got an email from Terry. In it he said he was doing the polishing draft of _Maskerade_ and which of the following two characters would I like to be called Colette -- the make-up girl at the Opera House, or one of the 'young ladies' at Mrs. Palm's and that mention might be made of her interesting earrings. When I had picked myself up off the floor, and being the mischievous soul that I am, I wrote back to Terry and asked if Colette could be one of the 'young ladies' at Mrs. Palm's, explaining that I felt that such a 'young lady' would be much more likely not only to wear interesting earrings, but also to receive lots of marriage proposals from men she hardly knew.

When I got my copy of _Maskerade_ signed, Terry wrote in it 'What's a nice girl like you doing in a book like this?' -- a dedication in the same league as that which he wrote when he signed my Discworld game booklet, which was "To Colette, Will you marry me?"

+ [p. 99] "'What? You've been here before?' said Nanny, [...]"

Granny met Mrs Palm during her earlier stay in Ankh-Morpork. See the annotation for p. 121/119 in _Equal Rites_.

+ [p. 123] "'They beat him to death!' [...] 'And they throw him into the river!'"

This is how the silent movie version of _The Phantom of the Opera_ ends.

+ [p. 138] Grand Guignol

See the annotation for p. 239/172 of _Lords and Ladies_.

+ [p. 149] "Let us examine the role of Laura in _Il Truccatore_ -- "The Master Of Disguise", also sometimes vulgarly known as "The Man with a

Thousand Faces"..."

The Man with a Thousand Faces was the nickname given to Lon Chaney, the actor who played the Phantom of the Opera in the original silent Hollywood production.

+ [p. 165] "'Madam has *marvellous* hair,' said the hairdresser. 'What is the secret?' 'You've got to make sure there's no newts in the water,' said Granny."

This echoes back to the quote in Reaper Man:

"People have believed for hundreds of years that newts in a well mean that the water's fresh and drinkable, and *in all that time* never asked themselves whether the newts got out to go to the lavatory."

+ [p. 225] "[...] while muttering, 'Rhubarb, rhubarb.'"

Apparently, this is something actors traditionally mutter on stage when they are meant to appear to be talking amongst themselves in the background.

+ [p. 231] "'Well *I* think,' said Nobby, 'that when you have ruled out the impossible, what is left, however improbable, ain't worth hanging around on a cold night wonderin' about when you could be getting on the outside of a big drink.'"

Sherlock Holmes. See the annotation for p. 118/108 of Guards! Guards!.

+ [p. 232] Opera names.

The Barber of Pseudopolis = The Barber of Seville
The Enchanted Piccolo = The Magic Flute

+ [p. 233] Musical names.

Guys and Trolls = Guys and Dolls
Hubwards Side Story = West Side Story
Miserable Les = Les Misérables
Seven Dwarfs for Seven Other Dwarfs = Seven Brides for Seven Brothers

Note how the last name harks back to Terry's earlier comments on the difficulties of dwarf mating.

+ [p. 247] "'Says here 'Cable Street Particulars'..."

A reference to Conan Doyle's Baker Street Irregulars. See also the entry for the City Watch in The Discworld Companion.

+ [p. 257] "[...] as the opening bars of the duet began, opened her mouth -- 'Stop right there!'"

A strong resonance with Ellen Foley's character refusing to continue the duet 'Paradise by the Dashboard Light' with Meatloaf halfway through the song:

"Stop right there!
I gotta know right now

Before we go any further
Do you love me? Will you love me forever?"

+ [p. 270] "'Don't cry for me, Genua.'"

'Don't cry for me, Argentina', is the famous ballad from the musical
Evita.

FEET OF CLAY

+ The working title for this novel was _Words in the Head_.

Other than this very small annotation, I have nothing for this novel as yet -- it has not even been officially released at the moment I write this.

HOGFATHER

+ The novel Terry is writing at the moment has the working title
Hogfather, and should be out in time for Christmas 1996.

+ And what will _Hogfather_ be about? Terry says:

"Let's see, now...in _Hogfather_ there are a number of stabbings, someone's killed by a man made of knives, someone's killed by the dark, and someone just been killed by a wardrobe.

It's a book about the magic of childhood. You can tell."

"Death, Susan, Albert and the Death of Rats feature in _Hogfather_. The wizards turn up every now and again in a sub-plot. All the events in the book take place on Hogswatchnight... The Verrucca gnome, the Towel Wasps, the Eater of Socks, the Pencil Bird and the Cheerful Fairy (with the Blue Hen of Happiness) also have... roles."

JINGO

+ This is the novel that Terry is working on right now. Apparently, Ankh-Morpork is getting involved in a war...

THE DISCWORLD COMPANION

- [p. 18] "In the bottom-left half two croix d'or on a sable field."

People reported on alt.fan.pratchett that they had found an error in the Companion: all the descriptions of the coats of arms appear to have left and right reversed when compared to the illustrations.

But Terry replied: "No, we're not daft... according to Stephen, who rather enjoys the byways of heraldry, the designs on the shield were traditionally referred to from the knight's point of view, and since he was generally *behind* it, everything is reversed. It makes sense, or at least as much sense as many traditional things do. After all, if you're left handed you use, from my point of view, your right hand. In the same

way, an actor exiting 'stage left' is walking off to the right from the audience's point of view."

I can report from my own experience that in the medical world the same principle is used. My parents are ophthalmologists, and when they talk about a patient's left eye they mean the one that the patient himself would call his left eye, i.e. the right eye from the doctor's point of view. As a kid I found this very illogical, and it used to intrigue me no end. But then, as Terry wrote in a subsequent posting: "Of course it's daft, it's traditional".

+ [p. 179] "As he wrote in his unpublished MS entitled _The Servant_, a sort of handbook for the politically ambitious: [...]"

Lord Vetinari's handbook brings to mind Machiavelli's _The Prince_.

Alistair McAlpine (one of Mrs Thatcher's closest advisers) has also written a book called _The Servant_, subtitled 'A New Machiavelli'.

+ [p. 252] "Wizards of the Disc, known"

In the list a cross-reference to the name 'Catbury' appears, but that entry is not present in hardcover nor trade paperback edition of the Companion.

+ [p. 254] "de Worde, William"

So far, the professional scribe William de Worde has not appeared in a Discworld novel, but his name is a composition of the names Wynkyn de Worde and William Caxton. In 1474 Caxton printed the first book in the English language, a translation of _The Recuyell of the Historyes of Troy_. In his career he printed more than 70 books, 20 of them his own translations from the Latin, French, and Dutch. Wynkyn de Worde was his successor.

- _The Discworld Companion_ contains neat illustrations and heraldic descriptions of all the coats of arms of the various important guilds and institutions in Ankh-Morpork. (Note: the Mappe also shows a few, but is not complete. The Companion also gives the dog Latin motto for each of them, but unfortunately Terry and Stephen provide a translation in only a few cases. APF to the rescue. The combined intellectual efforts of the Latinists on alt.fan.pratchett (Dylan Wright deserves particular mention) were put to the task, and we came up with the following list:

The Alchemist's Guild: OMNIS QVI CORVSCAT EST OR -- All That Glitters Is Gold

The City of Ankh-Morpork: MERVS IN PECTVM ET IN AQVAM -- Pure In Heart And In Water QVANTI CANICVLA ILLA IN FENESTRA -- How Much Is That Doggy In The Window?

The Assassin's Guild: NIL MORTIFII SINE LVCRE -- No Killing Without Pay

The Beggar's Guild: MONETA SVPERVACANEA, MAGISTER -- Spare Change, Guv'?

The Conjuror's Guild: NVNC ILLE EST MAGICVS -- Now *That's* Magic

(Catch-phrase of British magician Paul Daniels)

The Embalmer's Guild: FARCIMINI -- Stuff It!

The Engraver's Guild: NON QVOD MANEAT, SED QVOD ADIMIMVS -- Not
What Remains, But What We Take Away

The Fools' Guild (The Guild of Fools and Joculars and College of
Clowns): DICO, DICO, DICO -- I Say, I Say, I Say

The Gambler's Guild: EXCRETVS EX FORTVNA -- Shit Out Of Luck.
(The Discworld Companion_: "Loosely speaking: 'Really out of luck'")

The Klatchian Foreign Legion: OBLIVISCOR -- I forget

The Merchant's Guild: VILIS AD BIS PRETII -- Cheap At Twice The
Price

Mort, Duke of Sto Helit: NON TIMETIS MESSOR -- Don't Fear The
Reaper

The Musician's Guild: ID MVRMVRATIS, ID LVDAMVS -- You Hum It,
We'll Play It

The Patrician (Lord Havelock Vetinari): SI NON CONFECTVS NON
REFICIAT -- If It Ain't Broke, Don't Fix It

The Plumber's Guild (Fully: The Guild of Plumbers and
Dunnikindivers): NON ANTE SEPTEM DIES PROXIMA, SQVIRI -- Not
Before Next Week, Squire

Lady Sybil Deirdre Olgivanna Ramkin: NON SVMET NVLLVS PRO RESPONSO
-- She Won't Take No For An Answer

Seamstresses' Guild: NIL VOLVPTI, SINE LVCRE -- No Pleasure Without
Pay

The Duke of Sto Helit (Mort's predecessor): FABER EST QVISQVE
FORTVNAE SVAE -- Every Man Is The Maker Of His Own Fortune

The Stripper's Guild: NVNQVAM VESTIMVS -- We Never Clothe

The Thieves' Guild: ACVTVS ID VERBERAT -- Whip it Quick

Unseen University: NVNC ID VIDES, NVNC NE VIDES -- Now You See it,
Now You Don't

The City Watch: FABRICATI DIEM, PVNC -- Make My Day, Punk (Guards!
Guards!_: "To Protect and Serve")

THE STREETS OF ANKH-MORPORK

+ B4--D4 Chrononhotonthologos Street.

Chrononhotonthologos is the name of an 18th century burlesque stage
farce by Henry Carey. I have no idea why there is a Chrononhotonthologos
Street in Ankh-Morpork -- except that it is one heck of a cool word.

THE DISCWORLD MAPP

+ I have received no annotations yet for this Discworld-related item.

*** Other Annotations

GOOD OMENS

- The weird blue/red neon thingy surrounding the '666' on the cover of the UK hardcover version of Good Omens is actually a map of the M25 London orbital motorway, mentioned in the text as "evidence for the hidden hand of Satan in the affairs of Man".

If you have Internet access, you can get a copy of the Good Omens cover from the Pratchett Archives.

- [p. 9/vii] "[...] the angel, whose name was Aziraphale."

On the subject of the correct pronunciation of the name, Terry says:

"It *should* be Azz-ear-raf-AE-el, but we got into the habit of pronouncing it Azz-ear-raf-ail, so I guess that's the right way now."

And about the name's origin:

"It was made up but... er... from real ingredients. [The name] Aziraphale could be shoved in a list of 'real' angels and would fit right in..."

+ [p. 11/viii] "It was going to be a dark and stormy night."

See the annotation for p. 9/7 of Soul Music.

- [p. 17/1] "Archbishop James Usher (1581-1656) published Annales Veteris Et Novi Testamenti in 1654, which suggested that the Heaven and the Earth were created in 4004 BC."

This is true in spirit, but almost completely wrong in nit-picking detail, which leads me to conclude that Terry and Neil used sloppy secondary sources for their research.

The man's name was spelled Ussher, the book's name was actually Annales Veteris Testamenti (Annals of the *Old* Testament), it was published in 1650, and it was Ussher himself who pinpointed the time of creation at noon, October 23, 4004 BC -- not nine o'clock in the morning.

For a fascinating explanation of why it would really be very unfair of us to ridicule Ussher's findings, I refer the interested reader to the essay 'Fall in the House of Ussher' by Stephen Jay Gould, which appeared in his excellent collection Eight Little Piggies.

+ [p. 19/3] "[...] all tapes left in a car for more than about a fortnight metamorphose into 'Best of Queen' albums."

In an interview in Comics Buyer's Guide with Terry and Neil, shortly after the American release of Good Omens, Terry proposed the theory that, when you're driving through the country late at night, and there's nothing on the radio, you find yourself stopping in at an all-night gas station and looking through the tape rack; the only thing there remotely tolerable is a Best of Queen, so you buy that. Two weeks later you can't remember how the thing got there, so you get rid of it, only to go through the same process again. Neil's theory was that tapes really do turn into Best of Queen albums.

- [p. 20/3] "[...] he was currently wondering vaguely who Moey and Chandon were".

The Queen song 'Killer Queen' contains the line: "She keeps the Moët et Chandon in a pretty cabinet". Freddie Mercury's pronunciation is indeed such that, if you don't already **know** what he's singing, this part of the lyrics can be extremely puzzling.

- [p. 26/8] "...I will not let you go (let him go)..."

This sentence, and the 'scaramouche' line a few paragraphs before, are taken from Queen's legendary song 'Bohemian Rhapsody'. This line is misquoted though. The actual song goes: "**We** will not let you go (let him go)".

- + [p. 32/13] "Sister Mary had expected an American diplomat to look like Blake Carrington or J.R. Ewing."

Leading male characters in the 1980s Power Soaps Dynasty (Blake Carrington played by John Forsythe) and Dallas (J. R. Ewing played by Larry Hagman). The general image is of somewhat rugged American masculinity. In a suit.

The Good Omens paperback replaces "an American diplomat" with "the American Cultural Attache".

- + [p. 33/13] "With a little old lady as the sleuth, [...]"

Not a reference to Agatha Christie's Miss Marple, but rather to Angela Lansbury's character in the TV show Murder, She Wrote (there are not many "avuncular sheriffs" in the Miss Marple books).

- [p. 35/15] "He'd seen a Ken Russell film once. There had been nuns in it."

This might have been, for instance, the 1971 film The Devils, a study of a French nunnery that had supposedly turned to Satanism.

- [p. 37/17] "'Wormwood's a nice name,' said the nun, remembering her classics. 'Or Damien. Damien's very popular.'"

Damien refers to the protagonist of the various Omen movies (see the annotation for p. 67/40). Wormwood is the name of the junior devil in The Screwtape Letters by C. S. Lewis. This is a series of letters from a senior devil (Screwtape) to a junior devil (Wormwood) about Wormwood's attempted temptation of a man in war-time London.

Wormwood is also the plant which according to tradition sprang up from

the track of the serpent as it writhed along the ground when it was driven out of the Garden of Eden.

+ [p. 41/19] "Hell is empty, and all the devils are here."

A well-known quote from Shakespeare's The Tempest, act 1, scene 2.

+ [p. 41/19] "That Hieronymus Bosch. What a weirdo."

Hieronymus Bosch was a 15th century Dutch painter of religious visions that dealt in particular with the torments of Hell and the subjects of sin and punishment.

+ [p. 42/20] "I don't think there's anything wrong with Errol. *Or* Cary."

Errol Flynn and Cary Grant.

- [p. 50/26] "And he had a complete set of the Infamous Bibles, individually named from errors in typesetting."

There have been many Infamous Bibles, and all of the ones mentioned in this paragraph, except for the Charing Cross Bible and the Buggre Alle This Bible, actually did exist.

As usual, it is Brewer who has all the relevant information. The Unrighteous Bible and the Wicked Bible are as Terry and Neil describe them. In addition, there is:

Discharge Bible : An edition printed in 1806 containing "discharge" for "charge" in 1 Timothy 5:21: "I discharge thee before God [...] that thou observe these things [...]"

Treacle Bible : A popular name for the Bishops' Bible, 1568 because in it, Jeremiah 8:22 reads "Is there no treacle in Gilead" instead of "Is there no balm in Gilead".

Standing Fishes Bible : An edition of 1806 in which Ezekiel 47:10 reads: "And it shall come to pass that the fishes [instead of: fishers] shall stand upon it."

Also mentioned by Brewer are the Ears To Ear Bible, the Rosin Bible and the Rebecca's Camels Bible.

- [p. 52/28] The three lost Shakespeare plays.

The Trapping Of The Mouse refers to Agatha Christie's The Mousetrap (which has now been running for more than 42 consecutive years in London), who in turn named her play after the play-within-a-play that occurs in... Hamlet.

Golde Diggers Of 1589 refers to the series of movie musicals with similar names made in 1933, 1935 and 1937.

The Comedie Of Robin Hoode, Or The Forest Of Sherwoode is not directly traceable to something specific, but there have been of course many famous Robin Hood movies, from the legendary 1938 production with Errol Flynn, Basil Rathbone and Olivia de Havilland through the more

contemporary 1991 _Robin Hood: Prince of Thieves_, starring Kevin Costner.

- [p. 56/31] "'I mean, d'you know what eternity is? There's this big mountain, see, a mile high, at the end of the universe, and once every thousand years there's this little bird--'"

Crowley's description of eternity is from the hell-and-damnation speech in James Joyce's _Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man_.

- [p. 62/36] "They were doing drinks in a restaurant called Top of the Sixes, on the top of 666 Fifth Avenue, New York."

This is one of Neil Gaiman's: at the time _Good Omens_ was published there was no restaurant there -- instead it was the address of DC Comics, who Gaiman does most of his work for.

Unfortunately, DC has moved since then, thus invalidating the reference.

- [p. 67/40] "'I am Nanny Astoreth,' she told him."

Astoreth or Ashtaroth was the Zidonian goddess-moon in Syrian mythology. No, I have no idea who the Zidonians were, but undoubtedly they were heathens, and therefore presumably on Evil's side by default.

- [p. 67/40] "'What a delightful child,' she said. 'He'll be wanting a little tricycle soon.'"

The 'mother' in the 1976 horror movie _The Omen_ (which is all about the Antichrist being raised in a normal household) was forced by little Damien over the edge of an upstairs railing with his tricycle.

- [p. 68/40] The nursery rhyme Nanny Astoreth sings to Warlock:

"Oh, the grand old Duke of York
He had ten thousand men
He marched them up to the top of the hill
And crushed all the nations of the world and brought them
under the rule of Satan our master."

is a parody of the English original:

"The grand old Duke of York,
He had ten thousand men.
He marched them up to the top of the hill
And he marched them down again.

And when they were up they were up.
And when they were down they were down.
And when they were only half way up
They were neither up nor down."

Accompanied (in some versions) by fingers marching up the small child as appropriate and stopping to tickle for the last line.

- [p. 68/40] "'Bwuvver Fwancis the gardener says I mus' selfwesswy pwactise virtue an' wuv to all wivving things,' said Warlock."

The gardener is none other than Saint Francis of Assisi. Note also the "flocks of birds settled all over him at every opportunity" bit earlier on.

- [p. 70/42] "The message had come during _Cheers_, one of Crowley's favourite television programmes. Woody the barman had [...]"

In the American edition of _Good Omens_, this scene was changed to refer to the series _The Golden Girls_ and the character Rose. (The effect remains the same).

Nobody knows the reason for this change, since both are American sitcoms anyway. Speaking personally, I think Crowley is definitely a _Cheers_ person, and would *not* have liked _The Golden Girls_ at all.

- [p. 75/43] "He had attended a class in the 1870s run by John Maskelyne [...]"

John Maskelyne was a 19th century stage magician who specialised in sleight-of-hand illusions. He is fondly remembered in the illusionist community as a mentor to aspiring young magicians. He also gained some notoriety for exposing fraudulent spiritualists.

- [p. 78/46] "'I-should-be-so-lucky, -lucky-lucky-lucky-lucky,'"

This is the chorus to Kylie Minogue's break-through hit 'I should be so lucky':

"I should be so lucky
Lucky lucky lucky
I should be so lucky in love"

Notice that this is yet another misquote: there are only *four* successive 'lucky's, not five.

- [p. 79/46] The scenes of Adam growing up in Tadfield are an affectionate parody of the _Just William_ books by Richmal Crompton.

They are a series of books about William Brown (age 11) and his gang of Outlaws: Ginger, Douglas and Henry. The Johnsonites in _Good Omens_ parallel the Laneites in _Just William_, Hubert Lane being a similarly lugubrious podgy kid.

- + [p. 82/49] "'I'll call him Dog,' said his Master, positively."

There's a nice resonance here with the biblical Adam giving names to all the animals in God's creation (Genesis 2:19).

- [p. 87/52] 'Another One Bites The Dust', 'We Are The Champions', 'I Want To Break Free' and 'Fat-Bottomed Girls' are all songs by Queen (see the annotation for p. 20/3).

Queen fans have pointed out that at the time _Good Omens_ was released, there was no (or at least no easily available) Queen greatest hits album that actually contained all of these songs. A recently released double album has remedied this situation.

- [p. 94/58] "'It's probably compline, unless that's a slimming aid.'"

No, compline is indeed one of the periods of the religious day (around 18.00 h, according to my copy of The Name of the Rose). The slimming aid is 'complan'.

+ [p. 103/65] "The contingent from Financial Planning were lying flat on their faces in what had once been the haha, although they weren't very amused."

If you don't know what a haha is, see the annotation for p. 77/58 of Men at Arms.

+ [p. 110/70] "...Bee-elzebub has a devil put aside for me, for me..."

Another line from Queen's Bohemian Rhapsody.

- [p. 114/73] "The Nice And Accurate Prophecies made the Hitler Diaries look like, well, a bunch of forgeries."

Stern magazine published a series of Hitler's diaries in the mid-80s which, in fact, turned out to be forgeries.

- [p. 116/75] "[...] Elvis was taken by Space Aliens in 1976 because he was too good for this world."

Actually, Elvis died in 1977, so perhaps these Space Aliens left a doppelgaenger? Neil and Terry are certainly aware of the correct year, because later on (p. 261/177, during the video trivia game scene) there is a reference to both Bing Crosby and Marc Bolan dying in 1976. But in fact, both died in 1977 as well.

- [p. 122/79] "'This wouldn't of happened if we'd of gone to Torremolinos like we usually do,' [...]"

Torremolinos is a resort on the Mediterranean coast of Spain, which in the past was very popular with the more down-market sort of British holiday-maker. In US terms, imagine Atlantic City/Las Vegas. Take it down market a bit. A bit more. No, a bit more than that. There. That's beginning to get close to Torremolinos. The town has in recent years made a great effort to change its image and attract a better class of tourist but whether this has worked remains doubtful.

+ [p. 127/80] "[...] the frequent name changes usually being prompted by whatever Adam had happened to have read [...]"

The Hole-in-the-Chalk gang refers to Butch Cassidy's Hole-in-the-Wall Gang, The Really Well-Known Four to The Famous Five, The Legion of Really Super-Heroes to DC Comics' Legion of Super-Heroes series, The Justice Society of Tadfield to DC's Justice Society of America.

+ [p. 129/81] "Pepper's given first names were Pippin Galadriel Moonchild."

Both Pippin and Galadriel are characters from Tolkien's The Lord of the Rings (although Pippin is actually a male hobbit). Terry explains that Pepper's names are not really a parody of hippie practices:

"It's an observation. I have *signed books* for two Galadriels at least -- and three Bilboes. Your basic hippy is fairly predictable."

- [p. 137/88] "'I bet ole Torturemada dint have to give up jus' when he was getting started [...]"

Tomas de Torquemada, Spanish inquisitor-general notorious for his cruelty. He was largely responsible for the expulsion of the Jews from Spain around 1492.

- + [p. 147/95] "Where the reactor should have been was an empty space. You could have had quite a nice game of squash in it."

For the connection between nuclear reactors and squash courts, see the annotation for p. 156/138 of Reaper Man.

- [p. 154/98] "Sable signed for it, his real name -- one word, seven letters. Sounds like examine."

But, as many alert readers have noticed, the word 'famine' only has six letters. Terry says: "Oh, yeah. The famous seven-lettered six letter name. [...] It's like this. In the original MS, it was six letters, because we can both count. And it was six letters in the Gollancz hardcover. And six letters in the Workman US hardcover. And became seven in the Corgi edition. No-one knows why."

- [p. 155/99] "'An' there was this man called Charles Fort,' he said. 'He could make it rain fish and frogs and stuff.'"

Charles Fort lived in the first half of this century and made a career out of attacking established scientific convictions and practitioners, mostly by collecting and publishing book after book of scientifically unexplainable occurrences and phenomena such as, indeed, accounts of rains of fish, etc.

Although Fort and his Fortean Society cheerfully collected and proposed vast numbers of crackpot theories, Charles Fort was by no means a crackpot himself. He just wanted to attack and needle the scientific establishment using every possible means at his disposal.

For more information about Fort I refer the reader to Martin Gardner's wonderful book Fads and Fallacies in the Name of Science (1957), or to the Fortean Society's newspaper The Fortean Times, still being published in both UK and US today.

- + [p. 156/100] "[...] a highly successful film series with lasers, robots and a princess who wore her hair like a pair of stereo headphones(TM)."

This is of course the Star Wars saga, directed by George Lucas. The princess is Princess Leia Organa; and the person with the coal scuttle helmet who is allowed to blow up planets is Darth Vader.

- + [p. 160/103] "If Cortez, on his peak in Darien, had had slightly damp feet [...]"

From On First Looking into Chapman's Homer by John Keats, where the experience of reading Chapman's translation of Homer is compared to the feeling Cortez must have had upon discovering the New World:

Then felt I like some watcher of the skies

When a new planet swims into his ken
Or like stout Cortez, when with eagle eyes
He stared at the Pacific -- and all his men
Looked at each other with a wild surmise
Silent, upon a peak in Darien.

- [p. 161/104] "[...] eight other people [...] two of them [...] and one of the other six [...]"

Or at least, that's what it says in my hardcover version and in the American trade paperback. In the English paperback, however, the quote says "one of the other **five**" (italics mine), which is of course rather confusing, since two plus five usually equals seven, not eight.

Terry says: "[...] we got the **numbers** right -- I checked the original MS. This is another manifestation of the strange numbers glitch (remember **famine**, the seven letter word?)"

See the annotation for p. 154/98 for the 'famine' glitch Terry refers to.

- [p. 165/107] "[...] people called Grasshopper, little old men sitting on mountains, other people learning kung-fu in ancient temples [...]"

David Carradine's character Kwai-Chang Caine was given the nickname 'Grasshopper' by his mentor, Master Po, in the television series *Kung Fu*.

Incidentally, the head of the Shaolin monastery where Caine studied was Chen Ming Kan, and the subsidiary monks were the masters Shun, Teh, Yuen, Wong, Sun and, already mentioned, Po.

If you are the kind of person who enjoys learning this type of mindboggling trivia, then **run**, don't walk to your bookstore, and buy the *Straight Dope* books by Cecil Adams. Your life will be vastly enriched. There is even a Pratchett connection as well: Terry uses the *Straight Dope* books as reference works.

- [p. 167/109] "There is no longer a real Witchfinder General."

Just for the record: the story as Terry and Neil give it in this section is entirely true. Matthew Hopkins existed, and was indeed hanged as a witch himself. I am told he was portrayed fairly accurately by Vincent Price in the film *The Conqueror Worm*, a.k.a. *Witchfinder General*.

- [p. 167/109] "There is also, now, a Witchfinder Private. His name is Newton Pulsifer."

The name 'Lucifer' means "bringer of light". One particular meaning of 'pulse' is a legume -- a pea or lentil. Therefore, 'Pulsifer' means "bringer of peace (peas)".

I have no idea if this is truly what Terry and Neil intended, but it is a beautifully convoluted pun, regardless.

- [p. 171/112] "Newt [...] blushed crimson as he performed the obligatory nipple-count on page three".

American readers should be aware that some English tabloid papers

traditionally showed a photo of a topless girl on page three, although I am told these days only _The Sun_ still follows this practice.

- [p. 172/113] "'Women wi' too many arms.'"

Refers to the Hindu goddess Kali (although quite a few more Hindu gods and goddesses have more than the usual allotment of arms -- Shiva comes to mind).

Two lines further down there is a reference to Baron Saturday, who is of course our old friend Baron Samedi (see the annotation for p. 179/157 of _Witches Abroad_).

+ [p. 188/123] "Red sky in the morning. It was going to rain."

See the annotation for p. 202/197 of _Equal Rites_.

- [p. 192/126] "Newt's car was a Wasabi."

'Wasabi' is, in fact, a kind of horseradish used in sushi.

- [p. 193/127] "[...] the world's only surviving Wasabi agent in Nigirizushi, Japan."

And 'Nigirizushi' *is* a kind of sushi.

+ [p. 197/129] "The one that looked like a pepper pot just skidded down it, and fell over at the bottom. The other two ignored its frantic beeping [...]"

A reference to the robot R2D2 in _Star Wars_.

+ [p. 205/136] "[...] a wall clock with a free-swinging pendulum that E. A. Poe would cheerfully have strapped someone under."

See the annotation for p. 15/16 of _Reaper Man_.

+ [p. 217/144] "'And then giant ants take over the world,' said Wensleydale nervously. 'I saw this film. Or you go around with sawn-off shotguns and everyone's got these cars with, you know, knives and guns stuck on --'"

The films Wensleydale is referring to are _Them!_ (how appropriate...) and the various _Mad Max_ movies.

- [p. 227/152] "The Kappamaki, a whaling research ship, [...]"

'Kappamaki' is a Japanese cucumber roll.

- [p. 233/157] "'There doesn't have to be any of that business with one third of the seas turning to blood or anything,' said Aziraphale happily."

To the few particularly befuddled or atheistic readers out there who at this point of the book still aren't quite sure what is going on, I can only give the advice to take a closer look at Chapter 6 of the biblical Book of Revelation.

- [p. 235/158] "Hi. This is Anthony Crowley. Uh. I --"

Up to this point in the novel, we have only been told that Crowley's first name begins with an 'A', leading to the false expectation that his name might be Aleister Crowley, as in the famous British mystic, theosophist, black-arts practitioner and "most evil man on Earth".

+ [p. 246/166] ""This is a Sainsbury's plant-mister, cheapest and most efficient plant-mister in the world. It can squirt a fine spray of water into the air.""

Dirty Harry again. See the annotation for p. 136/124 of *_Guards! Guards!_*.

+ [p. 257/174] ""Puppet on a String"! Sandie Shaw! Honest. I'm bleeding positive!""

American readers will probably not realise that this is the answer to the question: "What song by which artist won the 1967 Eurovision Song Contest for Britain?"

+ [p. 258/174] ""1666! 'No, you great pillock! That was the fire! The Plague was 1665!""

The Great Fire of London in 1666 helped to wipe out the bubonic plague that had been afflicting the city since 1665.

- [p. 258/175] "He had LOVE tattooed on one set of knuckles, HATE on the other."

Originally, this movie reference dates back to Robert Mitchum in *_Night of the Hunter_*. Later it was used by many, many others, including Marlon Brando in *_The Wild One_*, Meatloaf in *_The Rocky Horror Picture Show_* (an appearance entirely built around Brando's), and more recently by Robert de Niro in the remake of *_Cape Fear_*.

And then there's *_The Blues Brothers_*, where Jake has his name tattooed across the knuckles of one hand, while Elwood needs both hands to spell his name; *_The Simpsons_*, where Sideshow Bob (who, like most cartoon characters has only three fingers and a thumb) has LUV on one set of knuckles and HAT (with a line across the A) on the other; and of course *_The Last Remake of Beau Geste_* (see also the annotation for p. 109/82) where Peter Ustinov, as the sadistic sergeant, has a scene where he sits with one hand partially obscured. We get the impression that he too has HATE and LOVE tattooed on his knuckles. Eventually he moves, and reveals the tattoos actually read HATE and LOATHE.

+ [p. 259/175] ""I haven't seen you since Mafeking," said Red."

Mafeking, located near Bophuthatswana in South Africa, was for 80 years the administrative headquarters of the British Protectorate of Bechuanaland (now Botswana). It was the starting point of the Jameson Raid, a disastrous raid into the Boer Republic of the Transvaal in 1895, which led to the South African War of 1899.

- [p. 263/179] ""Ere, I seen you before," he said. 'You was on the cover of that Blue Oyster Cult album.'"

This would be *_Some Enchanted Evening_* (1978), the Blue Oyster Cult's

second live album. Death painted by T. R. Shorr.

- [p. 265/180] The name Citron Deux-Chevaux refers to the Citroen 2CV, or deux-chevaux as it is commonly called in Europe ("chevaux" means horses -- 'CV' has a (very loose) connection with horsepower).

- [p. 268/182] "'Just phone 0800-CASH and pledge your donation now.'"

A transatlantic amalgamation of British and American telephone number formats.

- [p. 270/184] "..._All we need is, Radio Gaga_... sang Freddie Mercury."

Terry and Neil definitely seem to have trouble rendering songs correctly. According to my source (I can't *stand* the bloody song myself) the line that does appear in the song goes: "All we *hear* is, Radio Gaga".

- [p. 277/189] "[...] formerly Curl Up and Dye, [...]"

People have noticed that this name also occurs in the _Blues Brothers_ movie, but Terry assures us that the name goes back much further than that, and that there in fact at one time actually existed a hair dresser named like this.

I have subsequently been informed that currently existing 'Curl Up and Dye' hairdressers can be found in both Birmingham and Chepstow.

- [p. 280/191] _Sprechen Sie Deutsch_ and _Parlez-vous Francais_ are German and French respectively for "do you speak German/French", but "Wo bu hui jiang zhongwen" is Chinese for "I can't speak Chinese".

Terry says: "The bit of Chinese was Neil's. I said, "Are you sure it means 'Do you speak Chinese?'" He said yes. I should argue?"

- [p. 287/196] "'*You're thinking that any second now this head is going to go round and round, and I'm going to start vomiting pea soup.*'"

This is an obvious reference to Linda Blair in _The Exorcist_.

- + [p. 288/197] "Something about sheets of glass falling off lorries and slicing people's heads off, as he recalled [...]"

The film referred to is _The Omen_.

- [p. 296/203] "'Heigh ho,' said Anthony Crowley, and just drove anyway."

This refers to an old British topical song about the Italian opera-singer Antonio Rolli, well-known in London during the Regency. The song was called 'A Frog He Would-a Wooing Go', and the chorus has the lines:

"With a rolypoly, gammon and spinach,
Heigh ho, said Anthony Rowley."

This was intended to be a highly amusing satire on the way Italian people speak. It has only survived to this day as a children's rhyme because of its references to talking animals, and despite a totally confusing chorus.

- [p. 296/203] "What she really wanted to be was an internationally glamorous jet-setter, but she didn't have the O-levels."

This has to do with the British education system. After the 8th grade you decide how many two-year O- (Ordinary) level courses you are going to take (each with an exam at the end). Most non-minimum wage jobs ask for at least 5 O-levels, people in college usually have 7 or 8. After your O-levels you can either leave school or go on for A- (Advanced) level courses, which take another 2-3 years.

These days, O-levels are no longer a part of the British education system, having been replaced a few years back by the GCSE (General Certificate of Secondary Education). A-levels still exist.

- [p. 297/204] "[...] they burrowed into eyes, noses, ears, lights [...]"

'Lights' is colloquial British for 'internal organs'. See the annotation for p. 64/62 of _Pyramids_.

- + [p. 303/208] ""There's a red sky,' he said [...] 'Or is it shepherds who are delighted at night? I can never remember.""

See the annotations for p. 202/197 of _Equal Rites_ and p. 174/126 of _Lords and Ladies_.

- + [p. 310/214] "There was also a man selling hot dogs."

Bet you even money his initials were C.M.O.T...

- + [p. 326/226] ""Where *is* Armageddon, anyway?""

One theory holds that 'Armageddon' is a Greek translation for a Hebrew word that may have meant 'the mountain of Megiddo', in reference to Mount Carmel, which overlooks the plain of Megiddo, where many Old Testament battles were fought.

- + [p. 334/232] ""Did any of them kids have some space alien with a face like a friendly turd in a bike basket?""

A reference to the telekinetic bike-riding scene at the end of the movie _E.T._

- + [p. 348/242] ""You think wars get started because some old duke gets shot, or someone cuts off someone's ear, or someone's sited their missiles in the wrong place.""

That the assassination of the Austrian archduke Franz Ferdinand in Sarajevo in 1914 sparked the beginning of World War I, and that the Soviet placement of missiles on Cuba in 1962 almost led to World War III is common knowledge. But to non-Brits the second reference may not be so obvious. In 1739 Capt Robert Jenkins, of the brig _Rebecca_, claimed to have been attacked by a Spanish ship and to have had his ear cut off. He complained to the king on his return to England, the incident was taken up by the general public, and the Prime Minister used it as a pretext to go to war with Spain to regain control of shipping routes. This war is generally referred to as the War of Jenkins' Ear.

- + [p. 349/243] ""Beelzebub,' Crowley supplied. 'He's the Lord of --""

Crowley is trying to say 'Lord of the Flies', which is the literal meaning of the Hebrew word 'Beelzebub'.

- [p. 355/248] Dick Turpin is the name of a famous British highwayman. Hence the joke about Newt's car being called 'Dick Turpin': "'Because everywhere I go, I hold up traffic,' he mumbled wretchedly."
- [p. 374/262] "They went to the Ritz again [...]. And, [...] for the first time ever, a nightingale sang in Berkeley Square."

From the song 'A Nightingale Sang in Berkeley Square':

"That certain night, the night we met
There was magic abroad in the air
There were angels dining at the Ritz
And a nightingale sang in Berkeley Square"

- [p. 375/262] The Necrotelecomnicom also appears (but spelled 'Necrotelicomnicom') in the Discworld books.

See the annotation for p. 111/109 of Equal Rites.

- [p. 375/262] The Malleus Maleficarum is the name of an existing 15th century guidebook for witch-hunters, written by Heinrich Kramer and Joseph Sprenger (one a Dominican Inquisitor, the other the Mayor of Cologne), two high-ranking officials of the Catholic church. This book apparently became Europe's first best-seller after the invention of the printing press, and the (early 20th century) English translation of this book, The Hammer of Witches, is still in print today.

- + [p. 377/264] "It was Sunday afternoon."

According to Terry, the U.S. edition of Good Omens has about 700 extra words in it, because:

"After the MS had been accepted and edited by Gollancz, the *American* editor at Workman in NY asked for a couple of things for the US edition, one of which related to Warlock.

He was an American boy, you see, and she was certain that Americans would want to know what had happened to him. So we said ok, and wrote it. To the best of my recollection that was the biggest change, although there were other minor additions (some we were able to slip into the Gollancz hardcover at proof stage, but the Warlock bit was too long). I have to say we also polished things up here and there, too, although I think we were able to transfer most of *those* changes to the UK proofs too.

And then since the one done for Workman was technically the final MS the UK paperback was set from it."

For the people owning the British hardcover of Good Omens, here is the text of the added section:

"It was Sunday afternoon.

High over England a 747 droned westwards. In the first-class cabin a boy called Warlock put down his comic and stared out of the window.

It had been a very strange couple of days. He still wasn't certain why his father had been called to the Middle East. He was pretty sure that his father didn't know, either. It was probably something cultural. All that happened was a lot of funny-looking guys with towels on their heads and very bad teeth had shown them around some old ruins. As ruins went, Warlock had seen better. And then one of the old guys had said to him, wasn't there anything he wanted to do? And Warlock said he'd like to leave.

They'd looked very unhappy about that.

And now he was going back to the States. There had been some sort of problem with tickets or flights or airport destinations--boards or something. It was weird; he was pretty sure his father had meant to go back to England. Warlock liked England. It was a nice country to be an American in.

The plane was at that point passing right above the Lower Tadfield bedroom of Greasy Johnson, who was aimlessly leafing through a photography magazine that he'd bought merely because it had a rather good picture of a tropical fish on the cover.

A few pages below Greasy's listless finger was a spread on American football, and how it was really catching on in Europe. Which was odd--because when the magazine had been printed, those pages had been about photography in desert conditions.

It was about to change his life.

And Warlock flew on to America. He deserved *something* (after all, you never forgot the first friends you ever had, even if you were all a few hours old at the time) and the power that was controlling the fate of all mankind at that precise time was thinking: Well, he's going to *America*, isn't he? Don't see how you could have anythin' better than going to *America*.

They've got thirty-nine flavors of ice cream there. Maybe even more."

- [p. 383/267] "And if you want to imagine the future, imagine a boot... no, imagine a trainer, laces trailing, kicking a pebble; [...]"

From George Orwell's _1984_: "If you want to imagine the future, imagine a boot stamping on a human face forever". A 'trainer' is what the British call a 'sneaker', but I should think that much was clear from context (in the paperback, 'trainer' has in fact been replaced by 'sneaker').

- [p. 383/268] "Slouching hopefully towards Tadfield."

From W. B. Yeats' poem _The Second Coming_:

"And what rough beast, its hour come round at last
Slouches toward Bethlehem to be born?"

- Terry Pratchett and Neil Gaiman did have the title _668 -- The Neighbour of the Beast_ on hand for a _Good Omens_ sequel, but since Neil Gaiman lives in the US now, Terry says: "I can't see it ever being written".

There are many documented occurrences of this joke in other contexts, by the way (including a recently released actual novel with this name), some of them predating Good Omens. Terry again points out that it's only to be expected since the joke is so obvious.

- There is a British KitKat chocolate bar TV commercial that predates Good Omens, and which involves an angel and a devil who are just starting their respective coffee breaks. Both exit from separate elevators, the angel accompanied by several pure-white animals, while the devil turns back into his elevator and screams, in a British accent, "Shut up!" to whatever demons are causing a ruckus behind him.

If you are now thinking that this is an extremely unlikely, farfetched annotation -- well, so did I, until Terry Pratchett himself gave us the following piece of information (when some folks were having further discussions on how old this ad exactly was):

"I'm pretty sure [this ad] started about the same time as Good Omens, because:

One night I was sitting there typing away when I looked up and there the angel and the devil were, having a teabreak (it's not really a particularly Good Omens idea, but I know why people like it...) And I thought, hey, great...

And about half an hour later there was an ad (some UK viewers might remember it) for an insurance company which showed a businessman with wide angel wings walking down the street...

And then, just when I was doing the bit where Crowley muses that people are much better than demons at thinking up horrible things to do to one another, I switched on the radio; there was a performance of The Tempest, and someone said "Hell is empty and all the devils are here". It was a weird evening, really."

- People have been wondering (a) where the back cover photograph of Good Omens was taken, and (b) which one of them is Terry Pratchett.

Terry provides the answer to both questions: "In Kensal Green Cemetery, one frosty January day. Since white clothes tend to be thinner than dark clothes, I had to be stood in front of a blowlamp between shots."

Kensal Green Cemetery can be found in West London, fairly near to Wormwood Scrubs Prison. It is one of the seven or so cemeteries built around the edge of central London in the nineteenth century to cope with the large cholera outbreaks. They are large purpose-built efforts, and are full of the glorious stonemasonry that the Victorians indulged in to glorify themselves.

The photograph of Terry and Neil appears on the back of the UK hardcover, and in black and white on the inside of the Corgi paperback. If you have Internet access, you can get a copy of the photograph from the Pratchett Archives.

STRATA

- + The whole book is, in a very general way, modelled on Larry Niven's

classic Ringworld novel: a group of differently-raced beings explore an improbable, artificial world and try to find its mysterious builders.

Terry explains:

"I intended Strata to be as much a (pisstake/homage/satire) on Ringworld as, say, Bill the Galactic Hero was of Starship Troopers. All Niven's heroes are competent and all his technology works for millions of years... but he's a nice guy and says he enjoyed the book."

+ [p. 12/13] "Her skin was presently midnight-black [...]"

Previous editions of the APF considered this sentence proof of a true Josh Kirby goof-up, since he pictured Kin Arad as a Caucasian woman on the Strata cover.

However, it had totally escaped my attention that on p. 22/26 we read: "Now her skin was silver [...]", indicating that skin-colour is not a permanent attribute for Kin -- by the time the scene from the cover is reached she could well have changed her skin colour to white.

On the other hand, after Kin is captured by the locals, Silver suggests that she claim to be an Ethiopian princess, so presumably her skin color was dark at the time, and Josh Kirby didn't read carefully enough after all...

- [p. 21/25] "Back and forth, crossing and leaping, the robots danced their caretaker Morris."

I think this is the earliest reference to Morris dancing in a Terry Pratchett novel. See also the ...and Dance section in Chapter 5.

- [p. 76/92] "To introduce phase two Kin began to whistle the old robot-Morris tune *Mrs Widgery's Lodger*."

'Mrs. Widgery's Lodger' is a perfect name for a non-existent Morris tune. While not seeming to be a direct takeoff on any actual tune name, it calls several to mind: 'Blue-Eyed Stranger', 'Mrs. Casey', and 'Old Woman Tossed Up in a Blanket', for instance. 'Mrs Widgery's Lodger' would also resurface later on the Discworld as one of the eight orders of wizardry. For more information, see the 'Unseen University' entry in the Discworld Companion.

- [p. 107/132] "'Cape illud, fracturor', [...]"

Dog Latin which roughly translates to "Take this, buster".

THE DARK SIDE OF THE SUN

- Just as Strata borrows from Larry Niven, so does The Dark Side of the Sun pay homage to the famous SF-writer Isaac Asimov.

+ [p. 5/5] The Lights In The Sky Are Photofloods

The Lights in the Sky are Stars is the title of a science fiction novel by Fredric Brown (who was most famous for his 'twisted-ending' short-short stories, but who is unfortunately almost completely

forgotten today).

+ [p. 6/6] The best dagon fishers could ride a shell with their toes.

For an explanation of the word 'dagon' see the annotation for p. 197/149 of *_Men at Arms_*.

+ [p. 24/28] "Probability math predicts the future."

A parallel to Asimov's psychohistory in the *_Foundation Series_*.

- [p. 27/31] The robot Isaac is obviously modelled on Asimov's well-known positronic robots (and less obviously inspired by a similar robot that appears in Robert Sheckley's *_Dimension of Miracles_*). Isaac [the robot] follows a more extended version of Asimov's equally famous 'Three Laws of Robotics', though: on p. 53/62: "[...] Eleventh Law of Robotics, Clause C, As Amended,' said the robot firmly."

+ [p. 42/49] "Beng take them!"

Beng is Romany (Gypsy language) for the Devil.

- [p. 44/52] "In a few days it'll be Soul Cake Friday, and also the Eve of Small Gods,' she said."

These are of course religious festivals on the Discworld as well, though Soul Cake day mysteriously moved from Friday to Tuesday, perhaps because it sounded better. On p. 89/106, Hogswatchnight is also mentioned.

- [p. 73/87] "It has been impossible for the Bank to be physically present here today, Roche limits being what they are, but [...]"

The Roche limit has to do with tidal pull on an object. It specifies how close a satellite can orbit a planet before it's pulled apart by tidal forces. It stands to reason that the First Sirian Bank, being a planet seven thousand miles in diameter, is a bit wary of Roche limits.

- [p. 74/89] "And I wish to notify the Joker Institute that I have located a Joker building, description and position as noted."

Absolutely no relation, I'm sure, to Larry Niven's *Slavers*.

+ [p. 117/140] "That was another Joker achievement, the Maze on Minos."

Minos was the name of the King of Crete who commissioned Daedalus to build the famous Labyrinth to house the Minotaur.

+ [p. 118/141] "Born of the sun, we travel a little way towards the sun,' misquoted Isaac, tactlessly."

Isaac is misquoting the last two lines of the poem *_I Think Continually_* by the English poet Stephen Spender:

"Born of the sun, they travelled a short while towards the sun,
And left the vivid air signed with their honour."

- [p. 133/159] "It was a skit [...] written in early Greek style. [...] Chorus: 'Brekekekex, co-ax, co-axial'"

The play being performed is an updated version of Old Attic Comedy, as written by the poet Aristophanes. This section specifically parodies Aristophanes' The Frogs, in which a chorus of (logically enough) frogs sings an onomatopoeic song involving the lyric: "Brekekex, ko-ax, ko-ax".

I am told that Steven Sondheim once wrote a musical version of "The Frogs", which was performed in a swimming pool at Yale University with both Sigourney Weaver and Meryl Streep in the chorus.

TRUCKERS

- The drawing of the old nome Torrit (the one holding the Thing) in Josh Kirby's cover for this book is actually a caricature of Terry Pratchett himself.

- [p. 12/12] "Masklin scanned the lorry park."

The name Masklin is a pun on the word 'masculine'. Duh.

- [p. 47/44] "[...] the long argument they'd had about the chicken boxes with the pictures of the old man with the big whiskers on them."

Refers to Colonel Sanders, symbol for the Kentucky Fried Chicken chain of fast-food chicken restaurants.

- [p. 55/51] "'Life, but not as we know it.'"

Refers to another cliché Star Trek phrase, also parodied in the Star Trekkin' song by The Firm (see the annotation for p. 84/78 of Johnny and the Dead).

- [p. 58/53] "'Um. It was my idea of what an Outsider would look like, you see,' said Dorcas."

This whole scene immediately made me think of the American pulp science fiction magazines, which would often feature elaborate drawings depicting, for example, what a Martian might 'scientifically' look like.

In fact, I have in my possession a 1965 issue of Fantastic Stories, featuring on the cover a reprint of a 1939 painting by Frank R. Paul called 'The Man from Mars', with an accompanying explanation that Dorcas' description of the Outsiders is almost an exact equivalent of. This Martian has, for instance, disk-shaped suction feet (because of Mars' lesser gravity), very big ears (because of the thin atmosphere making it harder to catch sounds), white fur and retractable eyes because of the extreme cold, etc. etc.

- [p. 76/70] "'Unless you know how to read books properly, they inflame the brain, they say.'"

Everything we learn about the Stationeri, from the audience with the Abbot to this point about censorship, indicates a fairly obvious parody of the Roman Catholic Church during the time that the Holy Office (which oversaw censorship) was in power.

- [p. 103/94] The Store will be closed down and replaced by "an Arnco Super

Saverstore in the Neil Armstrong Shopping Mall".

The Neil Armstrong Shopping Mall is also prominently featured as the place where Johnny and his friends hang out in the 'Johnny' books, thus establishing firmly that the Nomes and Johnny inhabit the same universe (see also the annotation for p. 191/175).

- [p. 130/119] "'Breaker Break Good Buddy. Smoky. Double Egg And Chips And Beans. Yorkiebar. Truckers.'"

A 'Yorkie Bar' is a brand of chocolate bar sold in England. Very chunky, like one of the thick Hershey bars: Solid Chocolate. Due to a series of adverts depicting a truck driver carrying on through the night, etc. etc., all because he has his chunky milk chocolate to hand, the words 'Yorkie Bar' instantly summon up 'Long Distance Lorry Driver' to any Briton.

- [p. 132/121] "'Angalo has landed,' he said."

Pun on "The Eagle has landed".

- [p. 133/122] "'It's a small step for a man, but a giant leap for nomekind.'"

In the category Bloody Obvious References, this is of course a reference to Neil Armstrong's first words on the occasion of being the first man on the moon: "That's one small step for [a] man, but a giant leap for mankind".

- [p. 145/133] "[...] he walked proudly, with a strange swaying motion, like a nome who has boldly gone where no nome has gone before and can't wait to be asked about it."

Star Trek reference. See the annotation for p. 221/191 for _The Colour of Magic_.

- [p. 154/141] "'Amazing things, levers. Give me a lever long enough, and a firm enough place to stand, and I could move the Store.'"

Another reference to the famous Archimedes quote. See the annotation for p. 139/101 of _Small Gods_.

- [p. 171/157] "He recalled the picture of Gulliver. [...] it would be nice to think that nomes could agree on something long enough to be like the little people in the book..."

If it's been a while since you actually read Swift, the rather bitter irony of Masklin's musings may escape you. The point being that the Lilliputters in _Gulliver's Travels_ were anything but capable of "agreeing on something long enough"; in fact they were waging a generation-spanning civil war with each other over the burning question of whether one should open one's breakfast egg at the pointy end or at the flat end.

Eventually, the 'little-endian' vs. 'big-endian' feud carried over into the world of computing as well, where it refers to the order in which bytes in multi-byte numbers should be stored, most-significant first (big endian) or least-significant first (little endian).

- [p. 191/175] "'-- Anyone seeing the vehicle should contact Grimethorpe police on --'"

Minor inconsistency: by the time we get to the second book in the Nome trilogy, the place of action has been retconned from Grimethorpe to Blackbury (which is the place where Johnny lives, see the annotation for p. 103/94).

A possible explanation might be that there already *is* a real place called Grimethorpe (in Yorkshire), and that Terry'd rather use a fictional setting after all.

DIGGERS

- In the Corgi paperback editions I have, *_Diggers_* and *_Wings_* are subtitled "The Second [respectively Third] Book Of The Nomes".

Apparently, in the first edition(s), the trilogy was called *_The Bromeliad_* (and the last two books accordingly subtitled).

This refers to the central theme of the frogs living in a bromeliad, but is also a pun on *_The Belgariad_*, a well-known fantasy series by David Eddings. And of course both names have their origin in Homer's *_Iliad_*.

This subtitle was dropped from the British editions, because the editor didn't like it. In the US, there were no objections, so to this day US editions of the Nome trilogy are subtitled *_The Bromeliad_*.

- People have commented on the similarity between the Nome trilogy and other childrens stories involving "little people". In particular, the question has arisen a few times whether Terry was inspired by the *_Borrowers_* books.

Terry answers: "I know about the *_Borrowers_*, and read one of the books in my teens, but I disliked them; they seemed unreal, with no historical background, and it seemed odd that they lived this cosy family life more or less without any supporting 'civilisation'. The nomes are communal, and have to think in terms of nomekind. No. Any influence at all is from Swift, in this case."

"I'll pass on whether Truckers is funnier than the Borrowers, but I'll defend them as being **more serious** than the Borrowers. It depends on how you define 'serious'."

- The American version of the Nome trilogy is not word-for-word the same as the original one.

Terry says: "The Truckers trilogy has a fair amount of changes of a 'pavement = sidewalk' nature which is understandable in a book which should be accessible to kids. They also excised the word 'damn' so's not to get banned in Alabama, which is a shame because I've always wanted to be banned in Alabama, ever since I first heard of the place."

- [p. 60/54] "iii. And the Mark of the Dragon was on it. iv. And the Mark was Jekub."

'Jekub' was the Nomes' attempted pronunciation of JCB, the name of a well-known manufacturer of tractors, diggers, and the like, whose logo of course appears on all its products. Jekub, incidentally, appears to be a thing called a 'back-hoe loader'. In the American version of the Nomes trilogy 'JCB' was changed to 'CAT', standing for 'Caterpillar'.

- [p. 82/73] "'We shall fight them in the lane. We shall fight them at the gates. We shall fight them in the quarry. And we shall never surrender.'"

Paraphrases one of Winston Churchill's famous WW II speeches. Possibly the easiest way to get to hear the original version is to listen to Supertramp's 'Fool's Overture'.

- [p. 142/126] "'Jcb? Jekub? It's got no vowels in it. What sort of name is that?'"

This is a play on 'YHWH', the classical Hebrew spelling of Yahweh, i.e. Jehovah.

WINGS

- [p. 135/121] "'The other humans around it are trying to explain to it what a planet is' 'Doesn't it know?' 'Many humans don't. Mistervicepresident is one of them.'"

I don't think anybody in the Western world would not have caught this reference to Dan Quayle, but let's face it: in twenty years people will still be reading Terry Pratchett, and hopefully this APF -- but who'll remember Misterexvicepresident?

- [p. 150/135] "The humans below tried shining coloured lights at it, and playing tunes at it, and eventually just speaking to it in every language known to humans."

Refers to the climactic scene of Steven Spielberg's science fiction movie 'Close Encounters of the Third Kind', where contact with the aliens is indeed established by shining lights and playing tunes at their spaceship.

ONLY YOU CAN SAVE MANKIND

In order to fully appreciate this novel it may not be necessary, but I think it will greatly add to your enjoyment and understanding, if you have seen at least one of the 'Alien' movies, and have played at least one computer shoot-em-up arcade game.

- + [p. 7/7] "The Mighty ScreeWee(TM) Empire(TM) is poised to attack Earth!"

A wonderful parody of the way in which the typical computer action game is advertised or described on the box. Terry confirms:

"Let's say I've played Wing Commander and Elite and X-Wing and loads of other games, so writing that first page was easy for me :-)"

- [p. 9/9] The Hero With A Thousand Extra Lives

A reference to the title of Joseph Campbell's *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*, an anthropological work comparing and contrasting Hero myths from different cultures.

- [p. 13/13] "My dad brought me back 'Alabama Smith and the Jewels of Fate' from the States."

Puns on the movie title *Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom*. Alabama and Indiana are both American states.

- [p. 19/19] "Hey, I really need a computer because that way I can play 'Megasteroids'."

'Asteroids' is the name of an ancient, very famous computer game.

- [p. 27/27] Johnny's nickname for his friend: 'MC Spanner', spoofs our world's pop-rap star 'MC Hammer' (a spanner is a wrench, and also (colloquially) equates as a mild insult to the American English 'dork').
- [p. 40/40] This is not really an annotation, because I think it is highly improbable that there is an actual link here, but the idea of Terry's 'Cereal Killers' immediately reminded me of the short science fiction stories by Philip K. Dick. Not any particular one, but just the whole idea of something horrible masquerading as something ridiculously innocent appears again and again in Dick's slightly paranoid oeuvre.

The serial/cereal pun itself is of course fairly obvious, and can be found in many other places, from old Infocom adventure games to Neil Gaiman's *Sandman* comics.

- [p. 42/42] "'I saw this film once, right, where there were these computer games and if you were really good the aliens came and got you and you had to fly a spaceship and fight a whole bad alien fleet,' said Bigmac."

Bigmac is describing the 1984 science fiction movie *The Last Starfighter* here (starring Lance Guest and Robert Preston).

As a movie this was decidedly a so-so experience (you can take my word for it, I have seen it), but it deserves credit for one major achievement: after the box-office disaster of *Tron* it was the first Hollywood film to make extensive use of computer-generated animation. And since *The Last Starfighter* was not a commercial failure, it effectively opened the road again for further use of computer graphics in movies.

- + [p. 72/72] "But everyone watched *Cobbers*."

'Cobber' is an Australian word meaning 'companion' or 'friend'; these days used more as an informal slang label for addressing someone (as in: "Now look here, cobber, ..."). Terry's use of this title reflects the fact that Australian soap operas (such as e.g. *Neighbours*) are extremely popular in the UK (as in the rest of Europe, I should add). As Terry explained:

"Actually, the scene is probably lost on [non-Brits]; you have to understand that it is almost impossible to turn on a UK TV at any time between 4.30 -- 6pm without hearing the distinctive sound of Australian adolescents locked in confrontation."

- [p. 109/109] "What's your game name?' 'Sigourney -- *you're laughing!*"

Sigourney Weaver is the actress who plays the heroine in all three _Alien_ movies.

- [p. 118/118] "On Earth, No-one Can Hear You Say 'Um'"

The now famous slogan used in the advertising campaigns for the first _Alien_ movie was: _In Space, No-one Can Hear You Scream_.

- [p. 133/133] "'I saw a film where there was an alien crawling around inside a spaceship's air ducts and it could come out wherever it liked,' said Johnny reproachfully. 'Doubtless it had a map,' said the Captain."

The movie Johnny refers to is, of course, _Alien_.

- [p. 147/147] "'Is there anything I can do?' [...] 'I don't know,' she said. 'Is there *anything* you can do?'"

The same dialogue occurs between Ripley and Sergeant Apone in the film _Aliens_.

- [p. 158/158] "'You're thinking: He'll be in there somewhere, hiding.'"

In _Alien_, the alien creature eventually hid itself in the escape capsule Sigourney Weaver tried to get away in at the end.

- [p. 162/162] "'If we find a cat I'm going to kick it!'"

In _Alien_, Sigourney goes *back* into the mother ship because she did not want to leave the cat behind.

JOHNNY AND THE DEAD

- [p. 11/10] "'Singing 'Here we go, here we go, here we go'?' said Johnny. 'And 'Viva a spanner'?'"

For "here we go, here we go", see the annotation for p. 76/70 of _Guards! Guards!_.

'Viva a spanner' is Johnny's version of the song 'Y Viva Espana', an early 70s hit which appeared at about the time that many Brits were first going on package tours to Spain (see also the annotation for p. 176/116 of _Good Omens_).

- [p. 13/12] "'He said the Council sold it to some big company for fivepence because it was costing so much to keep it going.'"

The right-wing Westminster council, headed by Lady Shirley Porter sold three cemeteries for 15p a couple of years ago, giving the same reasoning.

- [p. 20/19] "'No-one visits most of the graves now, except old Mrs Tachyon, and she's barny.'"

A tachyon is a hypothetical faster-than-light quantum particle, which has not been proven to actually exist.

- [p. 20/19] "'I was referring,' said his grandfather, 'to William Stickers.'"

Refers to the posters forbidding flyposting reading "bill stickers will be prosecuted". These quickly attracted the graffito "Bill Stickers is Innocent" (and similar). William Stickers is obviously this much-harassed individual.

- [p. 24/22] "The last thing to go was the finger, still demonstrating its total disbelief in life after death."

See the Cheshire Cat annotation for p. 142/141 of _Wyrd Sisters_.

- [p. 26/25] "[...] a skinny kid with short hair and flat feet and asthma who had difficulty even *walking* in Doc Martens, [...]"

Doc Martens (fully: 'Doctor Marten's patent Air-Wair boots and shoes', with 'The Original Doctor Marten's Air Cushion Sole. OIL FAT ACID PETROL ALKALI RESISTANT') are one of the most popular and fashionable footwear in Britain among the younger generation. Once associated with skin-heads and fascists they are now simply standard issue for almost anyone in the UK between the age of 16 and 30.

- [p. 28/26] "'I saw this film once, about a man with X-ray eyes,' said Bigmac."

There are of course dozens of films that this description could apply to (starting with _Superman_, for instance), but the best candidate would appear to be the 1963 Roger Corman movie _X -- The Man With X-Ray Eyes_, starring Ray Milland.

- [p. 29/27] "'After _Cobbers_,' said Bigmac."

Cobbers is obviously modelled on the Australian soap opera _Neighbours_ and its cousins.

- [p. 30/28] "[...] the new Council named it the Joshua Che N'Clement block [...]"

A combination of Che Guevara, Joshua N'Komo, and the word 'inclement'.

- [p. 39/37] "Like Dead Man's Hand at parties."

One of those party games known under a dozen different names, but which usually consists of people passing various items to each other behind their backs. The idea is to throw in some really weird stuff and gross people out through their imaginations.

- [p. 40/38] "'His head'll spin round in a minute!'"

A reference to the 1973 horror movie _The Exorcist_, starring Linda Blair, which actually turned out to be a watchable movie, rather to my surprise. For a good laugh, I recommend instead that you try to get a hold of either its 1977 sequel _The Exorcist II_, or alternatively (if you like more intentional humour) of that one Saturday Night Live sketch with Richard Pryor ("the *bed* is *on* my *foot*!"). But I digress.

- [p. 42/39] "'The lady in the hat is Mrs Sylvia Liberty,' he whispered."

Sylvia Pankhurst was a famous suffragette (in fact it was something of a family trade), but it was Emily Davidson who threw herself under the horse.

- [p. 43/41] "'I saw this film,' gabbled Wobbler, 'where these houses were built on an old graveyard and someone dug a swimming pool and all the skeletons came out and tried to strangle people --'"

This movie is of course the famous 1982 movie Poltergeist.

- [p. 48/45] "'[...] the messages from God he heard when he played Cliff Richard records backwards --'"

This may need some explaining for people who are (a) not into rock music or religious fundamentalism, and (b) not European and therefore not in the possession of the slightest idea as to who Cliff Richard is.

To begin with, it is a particularly obnoxious popular myth that heavy metal groups (or any popular performer, for that matter) hide Satanic or suicide-inducing or otherwise demoralising messages in their songs. This is done by a technique known as 'backwards masking', which means the message can only be revealed by playing the music backwards (although the subliminal effect is supposedly in full effect when our innocent children listen to these songs the right way round).

Needless to say, this is all an incredible load of nonsense: most supposedly Satanic messages exist only in people's fevered imaginations, and even if there *were* such messages there isn't a single shred of evidence as to their effectiveness.

To finally arrive at the main idea behind this annotation: Cliff Richard is a perpetually youthful-looking, squeaky-clean British pop singer, who's been around since the sixties and is still hugely popular today, even though (or perhaps even more so because) he found religion in the seventies. Consequently, any backwards messages in *his* music, will most definitely not be Satanic, but rather the opposite.

- [p. 49/46] "Grandad was watching Video Whoopsy."

Although obviously meant as an equivalent to shows like America's Funniest Home Videos, this is not the name of any existing show (the British version is called You've Been Framed). The word 'whoopsy' was popularised by the 70s UK sitcom "Some Mother's Do 'Ave 'Em" as a euphemism for excrement, as in "The cat's done a whoopsy on the carpet".

- [p. 58/54] *"*WHEEEsssh* ... we built this city on ... *ssshshhh* [...] scaramouche, can you ... *shssssss* ..."*

The "we built this city" fragment is from the 1985 hit song 'We Built This City' by the group Starship, formerly Jefferson Starship, formerly the legendary Jefferson Airplane.

The "scaramouche" line is, of course, from Queen's 'Bohemian Rhapsody' (see also the annotation for p. 26/8 of Good Omens).

- [p. 66/61] "'Who *is* Shakespeare's Sister and why is she singing on the

wireless?""

Shakespear's Sister is a female vocal duo (one of whom is a former Bananarama member, as well as the wife of Dave Stewart from 'Eurythmics' fame -- but I digress), who were hugely popular in the UK in the early 90s (and a bit less popular in the rest of the world, I'm afraid) with hits like 'Stay' and 'Hello (Turn Your Radio On)'. Shakespear's Sister have split up recently.

British comediennes French and Saunders did a parody of Shakespear's Sister, called Dickens' Daughter, which has to be seen to be believed.

- [p. 68/63] ""You have to have three A-levels.""

See the annotation for p. 296/203 of _Good Omens_.

- [p. 72/67] ""The People's Shroud is Deepest Black*"

As opposed to the People's Flag, which is Deepest Red, according to 'The Red Flag', which is indeed a "song of the downtrodden masses" (see p. 86/79), as used by many socialist and communist parties.

- [p. 74/68] ""Ghosts don't phone up radio stations!' 'I saw this film once where they came out of the telephone,' said Bigmac, [...]"

Refers to the 1986 movie _Poltergeist II_, starring JoBeth Williams and Craig T. Nelson.

- [p. 84/78] ""It's worse than that. I'm dead, Jim.""

Refers to the _Star Trek_-associated catch phrase: "It's worse than that, he's dead Jim."

The phrase "He's dead, Jim" was a classic line from the television series, spoken by Dr McCoy to Captain Kirk, in at least five different episodes (if you must know: 'The Enemy Within' (about a dog), 'The Changeling' (about Scotty), 'Wolf in the Fold' (about Hengist), 'Spectre of the Gun' (about Chekov), and 'Is There in Truth no Beauty?' (about Marvick)), and there are numerous near-miss instances where he said something similar, such as "The man is dead, Jim" or "He's dead, Captain". (This information courtesy of the newsgroup rec.arts.startrek.misc.)

The "It's worse than that" part of the quote did not originate with _Star Trek_ itself, but with the 1987 song 'Star Trekkin', by The Firm, which was a huge novelty hit set to a simple 'London Bridge is falling down' tune, and featuring lyrics along the lines of:

"It's life Jim but not as we know it
not as we know it, not as we know it
It's life Jim but not as we know it
Not as we know it Captain

It's worse than that he's dead Jim
Dead Jim, dead Jim
It's worse than that he's dead Jim
Dead Jim, dead!"

- [p. 123/113] "'Wasn't there an Elm Street down by Beech Lane?' [...]
'Freddie. Now that's a NICE name.'"

Refers to the main character of the Nightmare on Elm Street series of horror movies.

- [p. 132/122] "[...] he'd never been able to remember all that 'Foxtrot Tango Piper' business [...]"

Since 'Foxtrot Tango Piper' spells FTP, this *may* be a reference to the computer world's File Transfer Protocol, which is a protocol (and also the name for the associated types of client software) used to transfer files between different machines. FTP is a very important means of data exchange on the Internet (see e.g. the section on the Pratchett Archives in Chapter 6), and is also well-known for being rather confusing to the beginner. Cries along the lines of "I can't seem to get the hang of this FTP business" are often heard on the net.

In the NATO spelling alphabet, the actual word used to denote the letter 'p' is 'Papa', by the way.

- [p. 133/123] "'These aliens landed and replaced everyone in the town with giant vegetables.'"

Refers to the 1978 movie Invasion of the Body Snatchers, starring Donald Sutherland. (Or perhaps to the original 1956 cult movie starring Kevin McCarthy.)

- [p. 140/129] "There is a night that never comes to an end..."

The idea of racing the sun around the world is used in the opening pages of Larry Niven's novel Ringworld, in which Louis Wu spends 48 hours celebrating his 200th birthday by using matter transmitter booths to stay a step ahead of midnight.

However, incredibly, Niven (who has a reputation for scientific accuracy -- not 100% deserved, but still he's better than most SF authors on that score) originally had Wu going *west* to stay ahead of midnight. Even more incredibly, no one caught this mistake until after the book went on sale. It was corrected in the second printing. The first printing is, as you might guess, a very rare collector's item.

Since we can be pretty certain Terry's read Ringworld (see Strata), and since Niven's mistake is one of the most famous SF flubs of all time, Fletcher's admonition to Stanley Roundway ("We're going *west*, Stanley. For once in your death, try to get the directions right.") is probably no coincidence.

On the other hand it should be noted that for some strange reason people on a.f.p. are always annoying Terry by trying to pin Larry Niven influences on him (see e.g. the annotation for p. 64/59 of Guards! Guards!). Maybe this annotation, too, is just a far-fetched coincidence. It wouldn't be the first in this document, now would it?

- + [p. 142/130] "'New York, New York.' 'Why did they name it twice?' 'Well, they ARE Americans.'"

A reference to the 1979 hit song 'New York, New York', by Gerard Kenny,

which starts out:

"New York, New York,
So good they named it twice.
New York, New York
All the scandal and the vice
I love it
New York, New York
Now isn't it a pity
What they say about New York City"

See also the annotation for p. 72/65 of Reaper Man.

- [p. 148/136] "In a neglected corner, Mrs Tachyon was industriously Vim-ing a gravestone."

Apparently, Vim is unknown in the USA, but in Europe it is well-known as *the* scouring powder for cleaning sinks and stuff. It is quite ancient, and has lately been eclipsed a bit by more modern (and less destructive) cleaners such as Jif or Mr Sheen.

- [p. 158/146] "'Met Hannibal Lecter in a dark alley, did it?' said Yo-less."

A reference to the cannibalistic, eh, hero of the 1991 movie The Silence of the Lambs.

- [p. 159/147] "'Baron Samedi, the voodoo god,' said Yo-Less. 'I got the idea out of James Bond.'"

The James Bond movie Yo-less means is Live and Let Die.

- [p. 164/151] "'Body snatchers!' said Wobbler. 'Burke 'n Head!' said Bigmac."

Burke and Hare were a famous pair of 'resurrectionists' who operated in Edinburgh in the 19th century. Basically, they dug up fresh bodies from graveyards, in order to supply surgeons with material for anatomical dissections. Edinburgh University is not very proud of its association with this trade, especially since eventually, when demand outstripped supply, so to speak, Burke and Hare went a bit overboard and started creating their own supply of fresh, dead bodies.

Also, Birkenhead is a town in Merseyside (the Liverpool area).

- [p. 171/158] "'Good Work, Fumbling Four! And They All Went Home For Tea And Cakes.'"

There was a series of children's books by Enid Blyton starring the Famous Five who managed to repeatedly avert crimes, capture gangs and generally have a Jolly Good Time.

JOHNNY AND THE BOMB

- + The third novel in the Johnny series was released a few months ago, but I have not read it yet myself, and I have received no annotations from others. How about it, people?

THE CARPET PEOPLE

- [p. 120/110] "'For me, all possibilities are real. I live them all. [...] Otherwise they never could have happened.'"

Another one of Terry's quantum references. What Culaina describes here is a particular interpretation of quantum theory, namely that each quantum event causes time to split up into distinct possibilities ("the trousers of time"). The idea that certain events can only happen if they are directly observed is one of the best-known concepts in quantum mechanics.

THE UNADULTERATED CAT

- [p. 7] "The Campaign for Real Cats is against fizzy keg cats."

Parodies the aims and objectives of the Campaign for Real Ale, a British organisation dedicated to the preservation and promotion of traditional beer-making in the face of the threat from mass-produced 'love-in-a-canoe' fizzy keg beer foisted on an unsuspecting public by the large national breweries.

- [p. 18] "[...] good home in this case means anyone who doesn't actually arrive in a van marked J. Torquemada and Sons, Furriers."

See the annotation for p. 137/88 of *_Good Omens_* if you don't know who Torquemada was.

- [p. 28] "Or perhaps there is now a Lorry cat undreamed of by T. S. Eliot."

T. S. Eliot, 20th century poet and critic. He wrote the book *_Old Possum's Book of Practical Cats_*, which the musical *_Cats_* was based on.

- [p. 28] "[...] growing fat on Yorkie bars."

See the annotation for p. 130/119 of *_Truckers_*.

- [p. 35] "You need a word with a cutting edge. *Zut!* is pretty good."

'Zut' is also a French exclamation, meaning *_Damn_* or "drop dead".

- [p. 44] "[...] sitting proudly beside a miniature rodent Somme on the doorstep."

The Somme is a river in the north of France, which has been the scene of some extremely heavy fighting in both World Wars. In 1916 for instance, a French/British offensive pushed back the German lines there, at very heavy cost to both sides.

- [p. 73] "It's bluetits and milk-bottle tops all over again, I tell you."

Refers to a well-known evolution-in-action anecdote concerning a particular species of birds which collectively, over a period of time, learned how to open milk-bottles that the milkman left on the doorsteps each morning in a certain English rural area.

- [p. 84] "[...] the price of celery is eternal vigilance."

This paraphrases "The price of liberty is eternal vigilance", nowadays usually associated with Kennedy. It was in fact first said by John Philpot Curran in his "The Right of Election of the Lord Mayor of Dublin" speech in 1790.

- [p. 86] "a garden that looks like an MoD installation,"

MoD = Ministry of Defence.

- [p. 92] "Owing to an unexplained occurrence of Lamarckian heredity [...]"

Lamarck was a contemporary of Darwin who became the symbol for what was for a long time a very strong rival of Darwin's own natural selection as an explanation for the mechanism of evolution. According to Lamarckism (simplification alert!), changes acquired by an individual of a species can immediately be inherited by the next generation, thus accounting for evolution. Lamarckism has by now completely disappeared as a serious evolutionary theory, in favour of modified versions of natural selection.

*** Thoughts and Themes

THE TURTLE MOVES!

It was already mentioned in one of the annotations: on alt.fan.pratchett there will at any given moment in time be at least one discussion ongoing about some aspect of the Discworld considered as a physical object. What does it look like? Where did it come from? Does it rotate? What do constellations look like for the people living on it? Where are the continents located? Is there a map of Ankh-Morpork <<There is now>>? What are the names of the Elephants <<Berilia, Tubul, Great T'Phon and Jerakeen, just in case anyone'd forgotten>>? Is Great A'Tuin male or female? That sort of thing.

Summarising these discussions is useless: nobody ever agrees on anything, anyway, and besides: half the fun is in the discussion itself -- who cares if these issues ever get properly 'resolved'. Nevertheless, I think it will be in the spirit of this annotation file, and of interest to the readers, if I reproduce here some of the things Terry Pratchett *himself* has said on the various subjects, at those times when he chose to enter the discussion.

To start with some history: many people think the appearance of the Discworld as described in the novels was an invention of Terry's. This is not really the case: in Hindu mythology, for instance, we find the idea of a lotus flower growing out of Vishnu's navel. Swimming in a pool in the lotus flower is the world turtle, on whose back stand four elephants facing in the four compass directions. On their backs is balanced the flat, disc-shaped world. See also Josh Kirby's magnificent drawing of the Discworld in the illustrated version of Eric.

Terry: "The myth that the world is flat and goes through space on the back of a turtle is, with variations, found on every continent. An

African fan has just sent me a Bantu legend, which however does not include the character of N'Rincewind."

Next up are the various questions concerning (a) exactly how the Discworld looks, and (b) how it interacts with other celestial objects. Some relevant quotes from Terry (as before, quotation marks (" ") indicate the beginning and ending of quotes from different Usenet articles):

"The elephants face outwards. The spinning of the Disc does not harm the elephants because that's how the universe is arranged."

"I've got some drawings I did of the Discworld at the start and I've always thought of it like this:

The *shell* of the turtle is slightly smaller than the world, but the flippers and head and tail are all visible from the Rim, looking down -- as Rincewind does in The Colour of Magic."

"The Discworld revolves. The sun and moon orbit it as well. This enables the Disc to have seasons. And the DW 'universe' -- turtle, world, sun, moon -- moves slowly through our own universe."

"Where is the sun at noon? There are two answers.

- A) It's directly over the centre of the Disc;
- B) It's in a small cafe."

On the subject of constellations and what they would look like (see also the file discworld-constellations available from the Pratchett Archives):

"GA must move fairly fast -- in The Light Fantastic a star goes from a point to a sun (I assume GA halted somewhere in the temperate orbits) in a few weeks. I've always thought that Discworld astrology would largely consist of research; we already know the character traits, what we're trying to find is *what the new constellations are*, as the turtle moves. And of course some particular constellations might have very distinct and peculiar characteristics that are never repeated. Some constellations, facing in front and behind, would change very little. The ones 'to the side' would change a lot. Bear in mind also that the sun revolves around the disc and the disc revolves slowly, so that every group of stars in the sky would have a chance to be a constellation for birth date purposes. In short, we need hundreds and hundreds of constellation names -- good job there's Usenet, eh?"

Finally, on the less cosmic subject of planetary maps (for more information about the Innovations comics and the Clarecraft models mentioned below, read the alt.fan.pratchett Frequently Asked Questions files, available from the Pratchett Archives):

"The map of the Discworld in the Innovations comic is just an artist's squiggle. The surface of the Discworld in the Clarecraft model is... er... rather amazingly close to my idea, although the vertical dimension is hugely exaggerated. And Stephen Briggs, having just sent off the 'definitive' map of Ankh-Morpork, has said that he can deduce a map of the Disc. Fans have also sent me fairly accurate maps. Once you work out that the Circle Sea is rather similar to the Med, but with Ephebe and Tsort and Omnia and Djelibeybi (and Hersheba, one of these days) all on the 'north African' coast, Klatch being 'vaguely Arabic' and Howondaland

being 'vaguely African' it's easy.

But all maps are valid."

"I've never thought that any parts of Discworld corresponded exactly to places on Earth. Lancre is 'generic Western Europe/US rural', for example -- not the Ozarks, not the North of England, but maybe with something of each.

The Sto Plains are 'vaguely Central European'; Klatch, Ephebe, Tsort, etc, are all 'vaguely Southern European/North African'.

Genua was designed to be a 'Magic Kingdom' but in a New Orleans setting -- I hope the voodoo, cooking etc. made that reasonably obvious. Genua and the other countries mentioned in Witches Abroad are all on the other side of the Ramtops, which more or less bisect the continent.

As far as the Ankh-Morpork map is concerned, we've decided to get it right *at a point in time*. In any case, it's a developing city; the city of Guards! Guards! has evolved some way from the one in The Colour of Magic."

SONG...

The one song that all Discworld fans will be familiar with, is of course Nanny Ogg's favourite ballad: 'The Hedgehog Can Never Be Buggered At All' (see also the annotation for p. 36/35 of Wyrd Sisters).

I will start this section with the complete text to the song that might have been the prototype for the hedgehog-song -- except that it wasn't. It can be found in Michael Green's book Why Was He Born So Beautiful and Other Rugby Songs (1967, Sphere UK), it is called 'The Sexual Life of the Camel', it probably dates back to the 1920s/30s, and it goes:

"The carnal desires of the camel
Are stranger than anyone thinks,
For this passionate but perverted mammal
has designs on the hole of the Sphinx,
But this deep and alluring depression
Is oft clogged by the sands of the Nile,
Which accounts for the camel's expression
And the Sphinx's inscrutable smile.

In the process of Syphilization
From the anthropoid ape down to man
It is generally held that the Navy
Has buggered whatever it can.
Yet recent extensive researches
By Darwin and Huxley and Ball
Conclusively prove that the hedgehog
Has never been buggered at all.

And further researches at Oxford
Have incontrovertibly shown
That comparative safety on shipboard
Is enjoyed by the hedgehog alone.
But, why haven't they done it at Spithead,

As they've done it at Harvard and Yale
And also at Oxford and Cambridge
By shaving the spines off its tail!"

The annoying thing about the hedgehog song is of course that Terry only leaks us bits and pieces of it, but certainly never enough material to deduce a complete text from. So alt.fan.pratchett readers decided to write their *own* version of the song, which is available for downloading from the Pratchett Archives.

The first version of the song was written and posted by Matthew Crosby (who tried to incorporate all the lines mentioned in the Discworld novels), after which the text was streamlined and many verses were added by other readers of the newsgroup. Currently we have thirteen verses, which makes the song a bit too long to include here in its entirety.

Nevertheless, I thought it would be fun to show what we've come up with, so I have compromised and chosen to reproduce just my own favourite verses:

"Bestiality sure is a fun thing to do
But I have to say this as a warning to you:
With almost all animals, you can have ball
But the hedgehog can never be buggered at all.

CHORUS:

The spines on his back are too sharp for a man
They'll give you a pain in the worst place they can
The result I think you'll find will appall:
The hedgehog can never be buggered at all!

Mounting a horse can often be fun
An elephant too; though he weighs half a ton
Even a mouse (though his hole is quite small)
But the hedgehog can never be buggered at all.

A fish is refreshing, although a bit wet
And a cat or a dog can be more than a pet
Even a giraffe (despite being so tall)
But the hedgehog can never be buggered at all.

You can ravish a sloth but it would take all night
With a shark it is faster, but the darned beast might bite
We already mentioned the horse, you may recall
But the hedgehog can never be buggered at all.

For prosimian fun, you can bugger a lemur
To bolster your name as a pervert and schemer
The lemurs cry _Frink!_ as a coy mating call
But the hedgehog can never be buggered at all."

Finally, we come to the old drinking song mentioned in the annotation for p. 99/82 of _Eric_: 'The Ball of Kerrymuir'. This song can, coincidentally enough, also be found in Michael Green's _Why Was He Born So Beautiful and Other Rugby Songs_. That version appears to have the dirty words replaced by rows of asterisks -- a rather useless form of editorial restraint, since in this particular case it means the song now contains more asterisks than normal alphabetic characters. Enter alt.fan.pratchett correspondent Tony D'Arcy, who was kind enough to fax me an uncensored copy of the song. 'The

Ball of Kerrymuir' has 43 verses, a small subset of which I now reproduce for your reading pleasure, just to give you a feel for the song. From here on down this section of the APF is rated X.

"Oh the Ball, the Ball of Kerrymuir,
Where your wife and my wife,
Were a-doing on the floor.

CHORUS:
Balls to your partner,
Arse against the wall.
If you never get fucked on a Saturday night
You'll never be fucked at all.

There was fucking in the kitchen
And fucking in the halls
You couldn't hear the music for
The clanging of the balls.

Now Farmer Giles was there,
His sickle in his hand,
And every time he swung around
He circumcised the band.

Jock McVenning he was there
A-looking for a fuck,
But every cunt was occupied
And he was out of luck.

The village doctor he was there
He had his bag of tricks,
And in between the dances,
He was sterilising pricks.

And when the ball was over,
Everyone confessed:
They all enjoyed the dancing,
but the fucking was the best."

...AND DANCE

When you mention 'Discworld' and 'dance' in the same breath, you can only be talking about one thing: Morris Dancing, a subject that most non-Brits will be almost completely in the dark about. Brewer has this to say on the subject:

Morris Dance: brought to England in the reign of Edward III, when John of Gaunt returned from Spain. In the dance, bells were jingled, and staves or swords clashed. It was a military dance of the Moors or Moriscos, in which five men and a boy engaged; the boy wore a 'morione' or head-piece, and was called Mad Morion.

Which is interesting, but doesn't really explain anything in a 20th century context. Luckily, a newsgroup like alt.fan.pratchett attracts contemporary Morris Dancers like flies, and for the rest of this section I will give the floor to Rich Holmes:

"In a number of books (including *_Strata_*, *_Guards! Guards!_*, *_Reaper Man_*, and *_Lords and Ladies_*) Pratchett refers to morris dancing. These allusions may be lost on the typical American reader. Picture, then, six men in white shirts and trousers, decorated with ribbons, wearing bells on their legs, in a two-by-three formation -- the men, not the bells. To a tune played on fiddle or squeezebox, they dance up and down, back and forth, gesturing with big white handkerchiefs in their hands -- or, maybe, clashing yard-long willow sticks with one another. That's morris dancing, or at least the species of morris dancing that was done in the late 19th century in the Cotswolds region of England.

It's also done today, throughout the English-speaking world (though in America it's not exactly an everyday sight), these days by women's teams and mixed teams as well as by men. There are several hundred morris teams in England as well as 170 or so in the US and Canada and God knows how many in Australia, New Zealand, Hong Kong, and other odd places.

As for where it came from, and when, and what it all means, no one really knows. Some of its roots seem to go back to the European continent sometime in or before the 15th century. Similar, possibly related dances were and are found in Europe and even as far away as India. For a while in the late 19th and early 20th centuries they were commonly claimed by folklorists to be a remnant of a pre-Christian fertility rite performed by a male priesthood; there's really no hard evidence to support such a theory, though.

Terry Pratchett tells us he's "never waved a hankie in anger" nor knows any morris dancers personally, but that he finds the morris dance kind of fascinating.

Those interested can contact either Tom Keays (libhtk@suvvm.acs.syr.edu) or Rich Holmes (rsholmes@suhep.phy.syr.edu) about the Morris Dancing Discussion List. You knew there was an ulterior motive here, didn't you?"

There is also a web page for the Morris Dancing Discussion List. The URL is: <http://web.syr.edu/~htkeays/mddl.html>.

REVERSE ANNOTATIONS

With the Discworld canon growing and reaching an increasingly wider audience around the globe, we are starting to see something I'm calling 'reverse referencing': *other* writers who put references to the Discworld into their books.

The examples I have had reported to me so far:

+ *_Due South_*

The most often remarked-upon reverse annotation of the past year or so concerns the television series *_Due South_*, which is about the adventures of a Canadian Mountie (Constable Benton Fraser), stationed in Chicago.

The similarities between Benton Fraser and Carrot are, especially in the first few episodes, indeed remarkable. Like Carrot, Benton is innocent and straight-forward to the point of being naive (but not stupid!). He is nigh-on superhuman, polite, memorises everybody's name, works alongside cynical and jaded cops, and the first things he does are (1) take

lodgings in the roughest neighbourhood around and (2) walk into a lowlife bar in full Mountie uniform shouting "Excuse me...". And as with Carrot, his faith in human nature is almost always rewarded.

I doubt very much whether Benton Fraser is **really** based on Carrot (after all, the archetype that both characters are based on goes back a long way), but sometimes I wonder: Fraser's faithful companion is a wolf, and in one episode of *_Due South_* Fraser and his partner are locked in a meat storage room and nearly freeze to death...

+ Computer Games.

References to the Discworld have occasionally been cropping up in otherwise unrelated computer games. In *_Angband_*, for instance, one of the owners of the general store is 'Rincewind the Chicken'. In the legendary game *_Nethack_* you can explore the Dungeons as a tourist, starting out your quest with lots of gold and food, a credit card, and an expensive camera. Although the tourist character class wasn't originally created as a Discworld reference, there have been many Discworld-inspired additions in later releases of the game: the tourist's patron gods are now The Lady, Blind Io, and Offler, while Twoflower himself appears on the special quest level. And if you're hallucinatory, you may get to see the Luggage.

+ *_Dream Park: The Californian Voodoo Game_*, by Larry Niven and Stephen Barnes, 1991.

The UK edition of this book describes the character Alan Myers as "a Terry Pratchett wizard". In the U.S. edition this sentence was simply left out.

At a later point in the novel (both editions this time), two characters exchange the following lines:

-- It's been, what -- five years?
-- Since the Diskworld Game. Ah... Hamburg.

Note the misspelling of Discworld.

+ *_Object-Oriented Languages, Systems and Applications_*, by Blair, Hutchinson, Gallagher and Shepherd, 1991.

"Consider the domain of Colours. If we have Red, Green and Blue, but now widen the domain to include Octaroon, an old program may read an unknown value from a new instance. Conversely, if we begin with Octaroon included, but now decide we no longer believe in Magic and remove it thus narrowing the domain, [...]"

Again, note the misspelling, this time of 'Octarine'. Since this is a formal text book, *_The Colour of Magic_* gets a proper mention in the references.

+ The *_British Medical Journal_*, January 1996 edition.

The BMJ has a 'Soundings' page, where doctors get a chance to write about a subject of their choice. In this issue, Liam Farrell, a GP from Crossmaglen, ended his column with the line:

"This is only common sense, but, as we have said before,
in academic general practice, common sense is as rare
as a tourist in Ankh-Morpork."

+ _The Books of Magic_, by John Ney Rieber, issue #13, April 1995.

Tim and Molly on their way through Soho, London, pass a movie theatre.
The Billboard says: "PRATCHETT THEATRE -- now playing: Unseen Demo..."
(the rest is cut off).

+ _The Books of Magic II_, by Neil Gaiman and Scott Hampton, 1990.

Tim is told of an occult battle taking place offstage in Calcutta: "You
wouldn't believe it. The cult of Kali, three Ninja death squads, the
Brotherhood of the Cold Flame, a thousand elephants..."

- _Dirty Work_, by Dan McGirt, 1993, Pan Books, ISBN 0 330 32391 1, p. 215.

The relevant quotation is:

"I peeled off my outer clothing and removed the Cosmosuit. Dreadguards
took it away from me and placed it, along with Gardion and Overwhelm, in
a wooden chest. They also took the Rae medallion and the Ring of Raxx.
'The chest is made of insipid wormwood, the most highly inanimate and
unmagical substance known to the world, which specifically does not run
around on hundreds of tiny legs nor eat people,' Dread said of the box.
'But it does prevent you from summoning your magic sword by thought.'
'Thought of everything haven't you?'"

Readers on a.f.p. are, by the way, unanimously unenthusiastic about this
book, so don't assume that just because it mentions the Luggage it's got
to be a good read.

WORDS FROM THE MASTER

Here are a number of excerpts from articles by Terry Pratchett that I think
fall under the heading of 'annotations' but which are either not associated
with one particular novel, or else so long they would break the flow of the
regular annotations.

Quotation marks (" ") indicate the beginning and ending of quotes from
different Usenet articles. For further clarity I am putting my own
editorial text in square brackets ([]) for the rest of this section.

+ What are the 'rules' and 'regulations' of headology? It just seems to be
an area that is not properly defined.

"Ah. It appears you have discovered Rule 1."

+ Should Terry write Discworld novels with new characters, or should he
write Discworld novels with established characters. Should he, in fact,
listen to what his readers have to say on this subject?

"1. I always listen to advice. It's polite.

2. If I *heeded* all the advice I've had over the years, I'd have written
18 books about Rincewind. Absolutely true. The most common plea in my

mail right now is 'when are we going to read about Rincewind in XXXX?' I'm being instructed that I have a duty to my readers -- if I was innocent, I'd be attaching corks to that battered pointy hat even now. But perhaps this is an issue on which I have thought long and hard. After all, it's my living and ten years of my life.

If Discworld continues, then old characters will continue -- Rincewind will get red dust in his sandals, the Watch will be back, Gaspode will probably limp into stories. And new characters will arise. Why not? It's not as if there are *rules*. What will probably *end* Discworld is simple crowding -- the Watch already make Ankh-Morpork based stories a little problematical, and I won't get into the comic book convention of having Captain Courage out of town so that Commander Socko can take centre stage."

"My publishers have *never* insisted that I 'write another Discworld book'. If I rang them up and said 'the next one's a Western' (or whatever) they'd probably say 'Oh, right.' In fact the current contract does NOT specify that my next book, for example, must be Discworld.

Of course I listen to my readers! So the next book will be:

Set in Ankh-Morpork/not set in Ankh-Morpork. With lots of the good old characters/with a whole cast of new characters. Written like the old books, which were better/written like the later books, which were better. With lots of character development/none of that dull character development stuff, which gets in the way of the jokes. Short/long.

You want fries with that?"

+ About the Discworld CD-ROM Game, and its sequel.

"*What I did on the Computer Game*
by Terry Pratchett

I:

a) rewrote and tinkered and generally worked quite hard on the script, although the guy that drafted it was pretty good;

b) approved (and sometimes didn't approve) the characters -- I think the game's got the third version of Rincewind and of the Librarian, for example.

I think some of the puzzles are a shade too obtuse, and when Discworld II is done I'll probably get more involved in them. But the look and feel of the game is pretty close to the early Rincewind books, I think. As game adaptations go, I was about as closely involved as possible for someone who doesn't write code. It seemed to us all that 'Shouting at people' was a fairly realistic statement of the position."

+ About Unseen University's financial status.

"Unseen University owns quite a lot of land in the area of Sator Square and while the rents are pretty low there are a lot of properties. There have been various bequests by former Archchancellors and so on over the history of the university. I suspect UU also earns money for generalised magical services in the city (the Pork Futures warehouse, for example).

Over the millennia, it all adds up.

Finally, UU expenses are not high. As far as I can tell, the senior wizards don't draw salaries but are paid in big dinners. Merchants in the city tend to 'give' UU foodstuffs because, well, wouldn't you prefer the local wizards to be fat and happy rather than thin and grouchy?"

+ Are there any plans for Pterry to appear on Europe-wide TV?

"I don't know. I hope not."

+ On interviews.

"People...(including everyone who interviews me for their Uni magazine, 'cos I must have done a hundred of those things) Rule I of interviews should be:

Write a list of your main questions to fix things in your mind; Throw it away; Start the interview; Then LISTEN to what the guy is saying so that you can follow any interesting thread; Because if you don't, then what you'll get is a quiz, not an interview.

Sigh... It happens to me all the time:

Q Where did you get the idea for the Discworld?

A I stole it from an old man I met and now I've decided to tell you all.

Q Who is your favourite character?

Sigh..."

+ Does Terry keep earlier drafts of his novels around?

"I save about twenty drafts -- that's ten meg of disc space -- and the last one contains all the final alterations. Once it has been printed out and received by the publishers, there's a cry here of 'Tough shit, literary researchers of the future, try getting a proper job!' and the rest are wiped."

+ On answering letters.

[Terry's wife Lyn reads all his mail first, and selects the reply order]

"It tends to arrive on my desk in this order:

Stuff that really needs to be dealt with today.

Stuff that needs an answer quickly.

Fan mail with SAEs (Lyn encourages politeness) or which is particularly interesting, worthy, funny or whatever.

Any other mail from *abroad* (because it's usually taken a while to get here).

Other mail.

People who send me their MS without checking first, and others of that kidney.

However, I tend to stir it all up and in fact answer in the order:

From kids
Typed
Readable
Interesting
Others
Ones written in green ink on mauve paper
Ones with more exclamation marks than sanity dictates

It's a strange fact, isn't it, that emails of all sorts tend to get answered within 24 hours while 'real' mail takes days or weeks or months."

+ On the quality of Tolkien's writing.

"What *is* a master writer?

I read Tolkien now and notice the gaps, the evasions, all the 'bad' things... but few books have had the effect on me that TLOTR had when I was thirteen. Is he better or worse, for example, than Anita Brookner, widely regarded as a 'fine writer' although terribly dull to read? What is a writer supposed to *achieve*?

Before I rank Tolkien, I'd like to know how the scoring is being done."

+ Why Terry switched his German publishers (from Heyne to Goldmann).

"There were a number of reasons for switching to Goldmann, but a deeply personal one for me was the way Heyne (in *_Sourcery_*, I think, although it may have been in other books) inserted a soup advert *in the text* ... a few black lines and then something like 'Around about now our heroes must be pretty hungry and what better than a nourishing bowl'... etc, etc.

My editor was pretty sick about it, but the company wouldn't promise not to do it again, so that made it very easy to leave them. They did it to Iain Banks, too, and apparently at a con he tore out the offending page and ate it. Without croutons."

[A scan of the offending page is available from the Pratchett Archives.]

+ On people wanting to write their own Discworld stories.

"There is no question that using characters, backgrounds, plot threads, etc, etc of an author in copyright *can* get you into serious legal trouble -- there have been cases over this recently in the States. Try publishing a James Bond novel without consulting the Fleming estate and see what happens. It's amazing that people don't realise this. Publishers are used to getting stories with a covering note saying 'Here's a story I've set in Harry Spiven's 'World of Hurts' universe...' and the publishers say 'Did you get his permission?' and the writer says 'I don't have to do that, do I?' and the publishers go white and say 'Does the Pope shit in the woods?'

That's the REAL world. Now let's talk about FANDOM.

The law isn't any different. But there's people out there writing HHGTTG stuff, Red Dwarf stuff, Star Trek stuff and Discworld stuff for the amusement of their friends. Authors react on an individual basis. Some

hate it and try to stop it. Anne McCaffrey -- I think, although I'm open to correction here -- doesn't mind so long as her main characters are not used. Douglas Adams seems to have tolerated/given permission for a welter of Hitchhikers stuff in the ZZ9 fanzine.

It seems to me that if something is being done on an amateur basis by a fan for fans, and is clearly their own work, and is done out of a shared regard for the basic subject matter, then it would be kind of chilly for an author to run around hammering people. It's fandom, for god's sake. I don't give anyone *permission*, I just smile and think what the hell.

There's a danger, of course, that some dumb bugger out there will interpret this as an indication that Discworld is now in the public domain or open to franchising. It is neither. If anyone tries a commercial rip-off -- not a parody, not fanac, but a cynical attempt to cash in on my Discworld -- then the sewage farm will hit the three megawatt aerogenerator."

"I'd rather fanfic went on somewhere where I don't see it. Why? Because if A Fan writes a piece about, say, Discworld tax collectors, and I chose to write about Discworld tax collectors a year later, A Fan will send me the 'nyer, ripoff, you nicked my idea' email."

+ What is the 'H.P. Lovecraft Holiday Fun Club'?

"Nothing serious, really. This was just the name I gave to a group of people that seemed to turn up at every UK convention in the late 80s -- me, Neil Gaiman, Jo Fletcher, Mary Gentle, Mike Harrison, etc, etc... As to why... well, it just seemed to fit in that well-known group of clubs like the Saudi Arabian Beer-Mat Collectors Association and the Venetian League of Joggers."

+ About special deluxe editions of the Discworld novels.

"We have been talking about some special Discworld editions, maybe with a few choice interior illustrations and some heavy leather covers. I personally would like to see them with chains, too.

The snag for me is that the publishers keep talking about 'limited' editions. I've got a psychological objection to 'limited' editions. I like unlimited editions."

- On the lack of chapters in the Discworld novels.

"DW books don't have chapters because, well, I just never got into the habit of chapters. I'm not sure why they should exist (except maybe in children's books, to allow the parent to say "I'll read to the end of the chapter and then you must go to sleep."). Films don't have chapters. Besides, I think they interfere with the shape of the story. Use a bookmark is my advice."

"I have to shove them in the putative YA books because my editor screams until I do."

- On Discworld language use.

"A certain amount of DW slang comes from Palari or Polari, the fairground / underworld / theatre 'secret language' (which seems to have a lot of

roots in old Italian). UK readers with long memories might recall the pair of gay actors 'Julian and Sandy', in the old Round the Horne radio show in the Sixties and Seventies (innocent times, innocent times); they spoke almost pure Palari."

- Why don't you use a Macintosh for your writing?

"In fact I type so fluently that I can't deal with a mouse. My mother paid for me to have touch-typing lessons when I was 13, and they took. Hah! I can just see a DW book written with voice-recognition software! Especially in this cat-ridden house! 'That's Ankh-Morpork, you bloody stupid machine! GET OFF THE TURNTABLE!' As to goshwowness -- well, it seems now that a 50MHz 486 is what you need if you're not going to have silicon kicked in your face on the beach. But... Macs do interest me... it's just that I associate them with manipulation rather than input."

- Where are all these references to science, physics in particular, coming from?

"How much physics do I know? How do I know that? I don't know about the stuff I don't know. I've no formal training but I've spent a lot of time around scientists of one sort or another, and I'm a great believer in osmotic knowledge."

[People on the net (who tend to have a university or technical background) are often impressed by Terry's many references to the physical sciences in his novels ("Oh wow, you can really tell he used to work for a nuclear power plant!" is an often-heard cry), but frankly I think they are underestimating the non-university audience out there. Most of the things Terry mentions in passing (e.g. Big Bang, quarks, wave/particle duality) are covered in high school physics classes (or at least in Holland they are), and surely everybody who does not deliberately turn away from anything scientific in content will have seen references in newspapers, on tv or in magazines to things like quantum particles or the "Trousers of Time"?]

- How do you write?

"How do I write? God, this is embarrassing. Look, I just do it. It's pictures in the head and memories and thinking about things and it all comes together. It's something I do."

"1) Watch everything, read everything, and especially read outside your subject -- you should be importing, not recycling.

2) Use a wordprocessor... why do I feel this is not unnecessary advice here? It makes everything mutable. It's better for the ego. And you can play games when all else fails.

3) Write. For more than three years I wrote more than 400 words every day. I mean, every calendar day. If for some reason, in those pre-portable days, I couldn't get to a keyboard, I wrote hard the previous night and caught up the following day, and if it ever seemed that it was easy to do the average I upped the average. I also did a hell of a lot of editing afterwards but the point was there **was** something there to edit. I had a more than full-time job as well. I hate to say this, but most of the successful (well, okay... **rich**) authors I know seem to put 'application' around the top of the list of How-to-do-its.

Tough but true."

"Application? Well, it means... application. The single-minded ability to knuckle down and get on with it, as they say in Unseen University library."

- The advantages of having a background in journalism.

"Yes, Dave Gemmell and Neil Gaiman were both journalists. So was Bob Shaw. So was I. It's good training because:

- 1) any tendency to writers' block is burned out of you within a few weeks of starting work by unsympathetic news editors;
- 2) you very quickly learn the direct link between writing and eating;
- 3) you pick up a style of sorts;
- 4) you get to hang around in interesting places;
- 5) you learn to take editing in your stride, and tend to be reliable about deadlines;
- 6) you end up with an ability to think at the keyboard and reduce the world to yourself and the work in hand -- you have to do this to survive in a world of ringing telephones and shouting sub-editors.

None of this makes you talented or *good*, but it does help you make the best of what you've got."

- On the use of dog Latin.

"People in the UK, even in public (i.e., private) schools, don't assume that "everyone knows Latin". Latin is barely taught anywhere anymore -- it certainly wasn't taught to me. But dog Latin *isn't* Latin, except by accident. It's simply made-up, vaguely Latin-sounding phrases, as in Nil Illegitimo Carborundum. 'Fabricati Diem, Punc' is total nonsense in Latin [no doubt there are readers out there who could construct the correct phrase that might have fallen from the lips of Dirty Hadrian]."

- On the writing of _Good Omens_.

"Neil and I had known each other since early 1985. Doing it was our idea, not a publisher's deal."

"I think this is an honest account of the process of writing _Good Omens_. It was fairly easy to keep track of because of the way we sent discs to one another, and because I was Keeper of the Official Master Copy I can say that I wrote a bit over two thirds of _Good Omens_. However, we were on the phone to each other every day, at least once. If you have an idea during a brainstorming session with another guy, whose idea is it? One guy goes and writes 2,000 words after thirty minutes on the phone, what exactly is the process that's happening?"

I did most of the physical writing because:

- 1) I had to. Neil had to keep Sandman going -- I could take time off from the DW;
- 2) One person has to be overall editor, and do all the stitching and filling and slicing and, as I've said before, it was me by agreement -- if it had been a graphic novel, it would have been Neil taking the chair for exactly the same reasons it was me for a novel;
- 3) I'm a selfish bastard and tried to write ahead to get to the good bits before Neil.

Initially, I did most of Adam and the Them and Neil did most of the Four Horsemen, and everything else kind of got done by whoever -- by the end, large sections were being done by a composite creature called Terryandneil, whoever was actually hitting the keys. By agreement, I am allowed to say that Agnes Nutter, her life and death, was completely and utterly mine. And Neil proudly claims responsibility for the maggots. Neil's had a major influence on the opening scenes, me on the ending. In the end, it was this book done by two guys, who shared the money equally and did it for fun and wouldn't do it again for a big clock."

"Yes, the maggot reversal was by me, with a gun to Neil's head (although he understood the reasons, it's just that he likes maggots). There couldn't be blood on Adam's hands, even blood spilled by third parties. No-one should die because he was alive."

- On rumours that Neil Gaiman claims to have come up with some of the ideas in Reaper Man, most notably the title and the Death storyline.

"To the best of my recollection the Reaper Man title was suggested by Faith Brooker at Gollancz (although I can't swear to this). But I know, and have gone on record about this, that the central idea of Reaper Man actually came from reading a fan letter from a lady who wrote "Death is my favourite character -- he can be my knight on a white charger any day of the week". The lady concerned can be produced to the court, m'lud.

Listening intelligently while a fellow author talks about an upcoming book isn't the same as 'suggesting the storyline and some other bits' and in fairness to Neil I doubt that he put it quite like that -- this sounds like something which has picked up a bit of spin in the telling. We've known each other for a long time, we share a similar conceptual universe -- we'd both agree happily that he has the darker end of it -- and we've often talked about what we're working on and tried out stuff on one another. And that's it, really."

- How big is his publisher's influence on what gets written?

"Question was: do the publishers force me to write DW books? (the subtext being, we'd like you to do other stuff). And the answer is, no, you can't work like that. It works the other way round -- I say I'm planning two more, they say, fine, here's a contract. The DW is sufficiently big and vague that it can cover Small Gods and Eric, so I've got a wide field to work in. But... I'll say here again... the days of twice-yearly DW books have probably gone. I'm still planning to write them regularly, in fact publishing schedules might end up bringing out two in a year, but I want to do other stuff as well. The fact is that each DW book sells more than the one before, and the backlist sales keep on rising. I don't write

DW *because* of this, but it suggests that there's a readership out there. I can't imagine how anyone can be *forced* to write a book."

- On the joint copyright notice in his novels.

[All Terry's novels are "copyright Terry and Lyn Pratchett", and people on the net were wondering about the reasons for it.]

"Copyright does not necessarily have anything to do with authorship -- an author can assign copyright wherever he or she likes. Lyn and I are a legal partnership, and so we hold copyright jointly (for various mildly beneficial reasons) in the same way that, if we ever bothered to form a limited company, *that* would hold the copyright. At random I've picked a few favourite books off the shelf, and can say that it's not unusual for copyright not to be held simply in the name of the author. I do all the writing!"

- On the various Discworld covers.

"No, Kirby's Nanny Ogg is pretty good. And he's getting better (...he's getting better...) at someone who looks about right for Magrat. But he hasn't really got a clue about Granny.

The artist who does the American book club editions -- can't recall his name -- does not, I think, do good *covers*, but he makes a very good job of getting the characters right. They're not *my* idea of the characters, but they're certainly based squarely on the plot. His Granny on the cover of Equal Rites was notable."

"The next UK paperback reprint of TCOM (they do a couple a year) will not have a Kirby cover. This is an experiment -- there's been feedback to me and to Transworld that suggests there are a large number of potential DW readers out there who think they don't like fantasy and don't get past the Kirby covers."

[Scans of both the original Josh Kirby cover and of the new cover by Stephen Player are available from the Pratchett Archives.]

"Current cover policy is to have a fairly small graphic on the front of the hardcovers but a full traditional design on the front of the paperback; I'm not too unhappy about this, because I wasn't very keen on the _Lords and Ladies_ hardcover artwork."

- On American editions of his books.

"I'm also nervy about 'translating' things into American. ("Friends, Romans, Countrymen, lend me your ears = Yo, muthers, y'knowwhatI'msayin?") I've seen what even intelligent, well-travelled American writers think is normal British conversation ("I say, good show!") and I'd hate to be guilty of that sort of thing in reverse."

"As far as _Johnny and the Dead_ and _Only You Can Save Mankind_ are concerned: well, I dunno. It was bad enough having to translate Truckers into American, and then it was published so badly by Dell in hardcover we took the paperback rights away from them (which we are looking to sell now). And the two more recent books are very British, or at least European -- I can just imagine the dog's breakfast an US editor would make of them. My agent's got 'em, but I'm not that keen to sell."

- On reference books.

"I've got Brewer's, of course <<See the annotation for p. 117/103 of The Colour of Magic>>, and if I need an instant reference it's a handy book. He also did a Reader's Companion which is even better. But Ebenezer is only the tip of an iceberg of similar books, of which the Victorians were very fond."

"Whenever I go to the States I always return with my luggage stuffed with Panati's and Straight Dope books <<See the annotation for p. 165/107 of Good Omens>> (I've seen the Straight Dope books here, but never seen an imported Panati (they've got titles like "Extraordinary Origins of Everyday Things")). I'm afraid I spend money like water in American book shops; I dunno, they just seem more inviting. The oddest book shop I've been in is Win Bundy's Singing Wind Book Ranch..."

- Likes and Dislikes.

"I *hated* the Alice books."

"I didn't like the Alice books because I found them creepy and horribly unfunny in a nasty, plonking, Victorian way. Oh, here's Mr Christmas Pudding On Legs, hohohoho, here's a Caterpillar Smoking A Pipe, hohohoho. When I was a kid the books created in me about the same revulsion as you get when, aged seven, you're invited to kiss your great-grandmother."

"May I also add that the film The Return of Captain Invincible, which is a series of bad moments pasted together with great songs and a budget of fourpence, is also a regularly-viewed video in the Pratchett household. And David Byrne's True Stories also. Flame me if you wish. I laugh with scorn at threats."

"These are modern authors whose books I will automatically buy knowing that life is going to get that little bit richer:

George McDonald Fraser (The Flashman books)
Carl Hiaassen (still to get well known over here)
Donald Westlake (a pro)
Joseph Wambaugh
Tom Robbins

But I read more and more non-fiction, biographies and stuff these days."

[About Joanna Trollope:] "An intelligent lady who writes worthwhile books for an audience largely neglected by 'real' writers, and who occasionally comes up with a bit of description I really wish I'd thought of. The current TV adaptation of The Rector's Wife is pretty awful."

[About P. J. O'Rourke:] "PJ may be many things, but fascist he is not, as becomes obvious when you read his slightly more serious writings -- but he clearly does like to wind up the kind of people who are too free with 'fascist' accusations. He's so far to the right that on many issues he's coming back at you from the left. [...] I like PJ."

"I got Corgi to republish Roy Lewis' The Evolution Man a few years ago. To the best of my knowledge it's the only fiction he's done. Like I said in my intro, it's honest, genuine sf... and one of my all-time favourite

funny books."

"If anyone can ever get hold of it, the classic funny cricket match was in the book England, Their England by A. G. McDonnell. A forgotten masterpiece."

"[Carl Hiaassen] is a writer I try to promote here at every opportunity. He hasn't written a bad book. I recommend Native Tongue or maybe Double Whammy."

- Is there any truth to the rumour that you and Neil Gaiman had a fall-out over the Good Omens film project?

"Me and Neil... oh gawd. Yes, it's true to say we didn't agree over the way the film should be going. But that's about it. There's no flying daggers -- at least, I haven't thrown any and none have hit me."

- Speaking of movies, what happened to the plans for a movie based on Mort?

"A production company was put together and there was US and Scandinavian and European involvement, and I wrote a couple of script drafts which went down well and everything was looking fine and then the US people said "Hey, we've been doing market research in Power Cable, Nebraska, and other centres of culture, and the Death/skeleton bit doesn't work for us, it's a bit of a downer, we have a prarm with it, so lose the skeleton". The rest of the consortium said, did you read the script? The Americans said: sure, we LOVE it, it's GREAT, it's HIGH CONCEPT. Just lose the Death angle, guys."

Whereupon, I'm happy to say, they were told to keep on with the medication and come back in a hundred years."

"The person also said that Americans "weren't ready for the treatment of Death as an amusing and sympathetic character". This was about 18 months/2 years before Bill and Ted's Bogus Journey."

"Currently, since the amount of money available for making movies in Europe is about sixpence, the consortium is looking for some more intelligent Americans in the film business. This may prove difficult."

It could have been worse. I've heard what Good Omens was looking like by the time Sovereign's option mercifully ran out -- set in America, no Four Horsemen... oh god."

"What you have to remember is that in the movies there are two types of people 1) the directors, artists, actors and so on who have to **do** things and are often quite human and 2) the other lifeforms. Unfortunately you have to deal with the other lifeforms first. It is impossible to exaggerate their baleful stupidity."

- + If movies are too expensive, how about some more Discworld television adaptations?

"There's some approaches. There's **always** some approaches. But too often they're from people who want to do a 'funny fantasy' and paste the Discworld label on it. I have to repeat the old mantra: Discworld isn't internally funny to the people who live there -- there's no baseball

playing frogs. And too often the approach is [sub-text] "I bet a humble print author like you would be overjoyed to be on REAL TELEVISION, eh?" They get what Nanny Ogg calls the derriere velocitie PDQ, I can tell you."

"We are talking usefully to UK TV people and, yes, there is serious interest in doing the Guards books as a sort of 'Hill Street Octarines'. It might work. Even if it doesn't, people are close enough for me to scream at them."

"IF IT ALL HAPPENS ('cos we're dealing with screen here) then there would be _Guards! Guards!_ as the pilot and _Men at Arms_ as 'the series'."

- Why does the Librarian have such troubles communicating with humans? Surely, as a highly trained, intelligent librarian he is literate, and therefore can write down what he wants to say?

"Personally, I think he does it out of spite."

- Responding to newspaper articles mentioning "Estimated wealth of sci-fi novelist Terry Pratchett: UK# 26,500,000".

"This began with some survey done by a magazine called _Business Age_. Since it's off by the national debt of Belgium my agent rang them up to find out what the hell was going on. Various factoids emerged, like frinstance their assumption that I sell pro rata as much in the States as I do here (hollow laughter from the American readers). And we suspect they fall for the common error that a mere appearance in the bestseller lists means millionaire status (in a poor week the book at number ten might not have sold 100 copies). But the big wobbler is that the estimate is of 'worth', not 'wealth' -- they've hazarded a wild guess at the value of the Discworld *rights*, as far as we can tell including film rights as well. Remember copyright lasts for 50 years and the books are consistent high backlist sellers. It's similar to pointing to a bright kid and saying 'he's worth three million quids' -- i.e., all the money she or he *might* earn during their life, at compound interest. It's fairy money. The kind Robert Maxwell had."

- + On his perennial problems with publishers in America.

"Well, I sell some [books]. I had a sort of publisher, in the same way that duckweed counts as a plant. Let's hope HarperCollins does better."

"I can only repeat: my last publishers were so good they spelled my name wrong in the books, made sure they had covers in 50 shades of mud, and kept them out of the shops. HarperCollins are bringing out _Small Gods_ in January and are talking about some kind of accelerated schedule to catch up.

I've seen the US _Small Gods_ cover, by the way. It's quite different from anything else of mine, and mainly text... looks rather posh..."

"HarperCollins have been sent the _Soul Music_ MS and are serious about publishing it this summer in an effort to 'catch up'. That means in theory that new Discworld books should be published in the US at (more or less) the same time as in the UK. But it leaves _Lords and Ladies_ and _Men at Arms_ in a kind of limbo; HC are committed to bringing them out "as soon as possible" and it's in their interests to do so, because

they've had to front advances which they can't recoup until they start selling."

"Blame publishers. HarperCollins have got Lords and Ladies, Small Gods, Men at Arms and Soul Music. I *think* Roc have got Eric. I'd be happy to see them all out in one go. As for the Map... I suspect it'll never get a US publication. It seemed to frighten US publishers. They don't seem to understand it.

"That seems to point up a significant difference between Europeans and Americans:

A European says: I can't understand this, what's wrong with me? An American says: I can't understand this, what's wrong with him?

I make no suggestion that one side or other is right, but observation over many years leads me to believe it is true."

"The last I heard, my editor was mumbling a bit over [the Johnny books]. Though he personally loved J&TD I think he thought Americans wouldn't (as in: no-one in the book is American, WWI happened on another continent that American kids couldn't find on an atlas with three tries, and it feels, ugh, European. I'm paraphrasing his far more diplomatically worded comments)."

As I understand it, Lords and Ladies and Men at Arms will come out in trade paperback "fairly soon" after Soul Music, to get them out of the way -- ie, to desperately try to catch up on the schedule. But it looks as though SM is slipping back, 'cos I saw the proofs only a week or so ago. Basically, it's the usual arrogance of US publishers towards their readers -- and counter-productive, since I know that quite a large number of UK editions find their way into the US."

"The twisted thinking is as follows. Thousands of hardcover UK Discworld books cross the Atlantic after every pub date, certainly undermining the sales or potential sales of US copies; this pattern has become established because of the long delay before US publication. HarperCollins thought the only way they could retrieve the situation was leap the gap and publish the next 'new' title as soon as possible, bringing out the other two over the next year more or less as 'new backlist titles' while also continuing to publish genuinely new Discworld books. This would mean that Lords and Ladies and Men At Arms would be late, but they'd have been late *anyway*, and titles from Soul Music on would have an American pub. date pretty close to the UK one.

That was the theory. Unfortunately, it has contained one major flaw, in that it is being put into practice. It seems to be thought that a publication date for Soul Music that is 7-8 months behind the UK one is 'contemporary', which is an interesting use of the word. Moreover, I have a horrible suspicion that they'll see two 'new' Pratchett books on their list next year and, on the basis that the left hand does not know what the left hand is doing, decide that 'Interesting Times' can be postponed until 1996 (having come out in the UK in November, 1994).

Sometimes I think I'd have done better staying with Roc, sad covers and all -- at least they were catching up..."

- Is Strata a Discworld novel or isn't it?

"_Strata_ used the idea of a Discworld but I've never thought of it as a Discworld novel within the meaning of the act. The first Discworld novel was _The Colour of Magic_. Let the message go throughout the kingdom..."

- About the Discworld album by Dave Greenslade.

"It's called _From The Discworld_. Most of the tracks are themes for the books (I particularly like the Small Gods one) but there are two songs, 'The Shades of Ankh-Morpork' and something about a wizard's staff. There is also the insidious tune of the 'Stick and Bucket Dance', even down to that special chord folk music has to have at the end so that people know they can come out now."

[The CD was released by Virgin (UK:CDV 2738), and features the following tracks:

1. A'Tuin the Turtle
2. Octarine The Colour of Magic
3. The Luggage
4. The Shades of Ankh-Morpork
5. Wyrd Sisters
6. The Unseen University/The Librarian
7. Death
8. A Wizard's Staff has a Knob on the End
9. Dryads
10. Pyramids
11. Small Gods
12. Stick and Bucket Dance
13. The One Horseman and the Three pedestrians of the Apocalypse
14. Holy Wood Dreams]

- At the end of _Wings_ you implied that the Nomes would return some day for any remaining Nomes. Do you plan to write another book where the Nomes return or one about the world the Nomes now call home?

"I won't do one about any new planets, but there may be another book about the nomes."

- On computer games.

"I have played _Elite_, _Wing Commander_, _X-Wing_ and altogether too many outer-space-shoot-em-ups. I mean, don't they all have shields, missiles and stuff?"

"Well, right now I'm storming through _Privateer_ under the callsign of Flash Bastard, whose career has progressed throughout the whole Wing Commander series."

- Are _Diggers_ and _Wings_ going to be made into TV programs as follow-ups to _Truckers_?

"Cosgrove Hall were just getting them storyboarded when Thames folded. They're still not a dead issue, but suffering as do many things when people at the top change: no-one likes to be associated with something started before their time."

"Cosgrove Hall still want to do them. They're also interested in... well,

other stuff I've done. Right now a number of other people have come out of the woodwork with money and interesting ideas -- J&tD seems like a starter, for one. But the BBC does not figure largely in current approaches."

- Why isn't the Ankh-Morpork Mappe released as a poster?

"Transworld have considered doing the Mappe as a poster. There are snags. Where does the key go? The key as a booklet attached for some reason avoids the dreaded VAT; as a poster, VAT would be on it."

- About future Discworld merchandising:

"Ankh-Morpork postcards will probably happen. There was a recent meeting to thrash out the whole T-shirts/calendars/towel and body splash thing, and they (and Discworld stationery) were near the top of the list..."

- About the continuing rumours that he will soon be sanctioning an official fan club.

"It's the word 'official' that always pulls me up. It suggests I've got some kind of control or stake and I wouldn't want that. The best I can say is that, over the past few months (after hearing that Clarecraft's Discworld collectors club membership is in the high hundreds, and [Stephen Briggs] is disappearing under scarves) is that I'm no longer killing people who say they think one would be a good idea, since there are clearly many (if you can believe this) *people out there with no net access* who want some kind of Discworld club. I'm not sure that's the answer you're looking for..."

- Do you deliver your manuscripts in digital form?

"The US publishers want discs. Gollancz tried setting from disc a few years ago and it seemed quite successful, but I think it stopped when the lad who knew how to work their Amstrad moved on. I've been set from disc once or twice by Corgi. But the instant-books you're looking for won't happen because: 1) books have to be scheduled ahead of time, for cost, sales and PR reasons 2) it's easier to squeeze a melon through the eye of a needle than it is to get a UK publisher to think in other than Gutenberg terms."

"Basically, most publishers still hanker for paper MS -- even the ones that can set from disc want a print-out too. [...] So now we're back to typos hand-set by experts (anyone who got that red and black eight page 'extract' piece with my moody pic on the front that came out about two years ago will see what a creative typesetter can do -- there is at least one really creative typo per page). Mind you, copy-editors can be bad -- it's taken me a long time to make mine understand that there is a distinct difference between Mr and Mister. Mr = minor honorific, an invisible word, Mister = John Wayne getting angry."

- A philosophical question: why are elves considered evil, while cats (who do the same nasty things) are not?

"Ahem....

There is no inconsistency. Nanny Ogg has a point of view. So has Death. So have I. But there's no such thing as 'the official Discworld opinion'

on, say, cats.

Personally, I like cats. And they are also nasty cruel bastards. Just ask that two-thirds of a shrew that's outside our back door right now."

"Okay, try this. Cats are nasty cruel bastards but that's because they are cats. As far as we know, they have no grasp of the concept of not being nasty cruel bastards. Humans, on the other hand, do."

- About the spoken-word versions of the Discworld novels.

"Transworld intended to bring out *all* the Discworld on tape eventually -- I think the first three titles are coming out RSN." [RSN = Real Soon Now]

There may be Braille/audiotape versions by people like Books For The Blind. Every so often I get requests -- as do most authors, I expect -- to allow Braille editions and special tapes, and we always say, "fine, sure, no fee, no problem". But we NEVER GET TOLD WHAT HAPPENS NEXT. So I don't know what's out there. It's a bit of a shame."

- On the subject of dedications.

"With the exception of requests, like "Can you sign it to Scrummybunikins with lots of Hugs", there are about 35 different Discworld dedications (some of which I don't have time to do with the queues being the length they are -- if you've got the Death Grin dedication in _Mort_, treasure it, because I hardly ever do it these days). As for quality of handwriting, well, mine never was good...

Far More Wishes is part of a set (Best Wishes, Better Wishes, Even Better Wishes, More Wishes, Far More Wishes, Still More Wishes, Extra Wishes, A Whole New Quantum of Wishes and -- for those people with two carrier bags full of books -- Son of Best Wishes, Bride of Best Wishes, and Return of the Killer Best Wishes for 20,000 Fathoms). Also look out for the special Boo! in _Mort_ and _Reaper Man_, our new Read it And Reap one in _Reaper Man_, the special turtle drawing in _Small Gods_, and various Now Reads Ons, Enhanced Wishes, etc, etc. Kids! Collect the Entire Set!"

[This explanation prompted FAQ maintainer Nathan Torkington to reply with:

"I can't wait to see what happens when you reach the fifty book mark, and people at the head of the queue say "just wait a sec and I'll back the car in". The dedications will probably be:

Fuck off
Go away
Read Douglas Adams
Get a life
Get a job
Don't you have anything *better* to do with your time
Son of fuck off
My god, did I really write all these damn books
Yes, by god, I *do* regret it now
Worst wishes
I don't know why I don't have a rubber stamp made
Look, just bugger off I'm fed up to the teeth with banana daiquiris

I wish I *had* said "money"
This is the last dedication
Bloody trade editions
Oh, how cute, you have the hardback and paperback editions
Oh, and the US ones too
I'm memorising your face and your adenoidal laugh
You're next, matey
Third prodigal son of a fling with the daughter of the baker to fuck off"

Terry was very impressed by this list, and so were other readers of a.f.p. Terry says that since this discussion appeared on the net he is now occasionally asked for specific dedications along these lines.]

"Book-specific ones tend to be: _Mort_ and _Reaper Man_: 'Boo!', 'HAVE FUN', the Death grin, or 'Read It And Reap'. _Small Gods_: almost always 'The Turtle Moves!' _Pyramids_: usually the 'Hi! in the Pyramid' _Wyrd Sisters_: often 'Really wyrd'..."

"Read It And Reap has now been established as a 'generic' line which doesn't *just* get used in _Reaper Man_."

- What order are the Discworld books in?

"As far as I am concerned, the Discworld books are in chronological order. Anything that suggests differently is probably because of the Trousers of Time, magical leakage from the HEM and so on..."

- It was rumoured in _Octarine_ magazine that you and Robert Rankin were not "the best of friends". Any truth to this? (By the way: I hear that Rankin likes to throw wild parties in his jacuzzi.)

"I'll nail this one right now. We don't see much of one another but we get on fine. That was _Octarine_ stirring it up. I know nothing whatsoever about parties in jacuzzis, or rubber chickens."

- More about book shop tours and signing sessions.

"Well, the tour's over, and back I come to unload a stack of emails including a few on the lines of: some signings were chaos/badly organised (I'll better add that they added: we know it wasn't your fault, you were distantly seen to be scribbling at speed...). Some interesting points were raised so, in honour of the afp'ers who queued, I thought I'd post a general reply here.

I don't organise signings. The *publishers* don't organise signings; shops clamour to get certain authors, and the publishers try to select the few dozen for this tour based on all kinds of stuff like number of shops already picked in that chain, location and so on. But the organisation of the signing itself is done by the shop. Not all of them can hack it. Believe me, I know this, and the reasons include:

- this shop's idea of a good signing hitherto is fifty people
- this shop doesn't understand about, er, a 'fan' type signing, where there's dedications and maybe some older titles and an occasional brief chat.
- the shop doesn't understand about signings *at all*, including the need for a proper table and chair for the signer, or a cup of tea. It happens. I carry my own bag of pens because most

shops would provide one Biro.

A lot of them *can* run a signing, and the problems simply are the unavoidable ones you have if 300 people all want a book signed at the same time, *and* want to say "hi".

I'm sort of stuck. I can't run the thing from the desk. Besides, I was signing for six or seven hours most days, and my brain turns to cheese. My PR lady can help a bit, and does. If we spot a handicapped person in the queue, and tactful inquiry suggests they'd welcome it, they get to the front (I have to say that, to my annoyance, the staff in some shops seemed oblivious to this aspect). If the shop runs out of a title -- it happened a few times -- she can get some from the reps secret stash.

On this tour I think that, despite my warnings, I signed everything. Most of the time people with a big stack were asked to wait until the end. I'm loathe to let shops decide how many books I'm going to sign so they're told that I'll sign everything if there's time -- otherwise, in an effort to be helpful, they'd make their own rules.

Some problems would be solved by doing fewer signings (and people'd complain). We left out too many places this time as it was.

It definitely was a busy tour. I would like to apologise to the relatives of the fan who gave me 29 books to sign in Odyssey 7, Manchester. I'm a little twitchy towards the end of a day of signing and did not mean to kill and eat him."

"With a little more leisure I realise that the aforesaid postings concerned one particular shop. They did indeed seem far more interested in shifting books than running a proper signing, and this has been carefully noted for future reference. They had also not spotted that an author, in order to sign, needs a table and a chair.

But a lot of shops seemed to do it well -- the Waterstones in Manchester, for example, seemed very good at hustling pregnant ladies, etc, to the front of the queue. In fact I think you merely had to look as though your feet hurt.

Signings that don't involve a talk are invariably advertised as 'an hour'. But there's always some extra time in the program."

"Some shops on the tour -- they have been noted -- acted as if having a shop full of people buying books was terribly inconvenient. I know that one stopped taking phone orders because the staff got fed up."

"On the latest tour I've heard that some shops have been telling people 'he'll only sign _Soul Music_'. This is shopspeak on the lines of "It's out of print" (which really means "Who cares and bugger off, you pimply person"). Shops have no say in what I'll sign or not sign. So I'll repeat:

I'll sign everything of mine -- if there's time. It's all down to queue length. If you've got an entire bag of books then generally I arrange to sign them after the queue has gone. You don't even have to buy the current title, although you may be subject to some righteous wragging if this is the case."

"The tour just finished may have been the first one in which someone brought a computer in to be signed -- a Sparc workstation, I recall."

"I'm not against flash photography! But repeated flash photography during a long day -- well, ever tried looking down at a white page after staring into a flash gun?"

"What is always very touching are the people who bring in their *already signed* books to witness the new ones being signed. It's like their first Communion or something..."

- Is the Mappe of Ankh-Morpork based on London?

"We started with a LOT of real cities -- mostly in England, mostly old. There's a lot of Oxford and some Durham and Shrewsbury and odds and ends from everywhere, including a street in Abingdon opposite the theatre that puts on the Discworld plays. I think Stephen even said somewhere that London isn't the only city with a Hyde Park, but I could be wrong. But frankly any old city with a wall and a wiggly river looks like London...."

- Do religious fanatics ever get mad at you for writing _Small Gods_?

"I may have posted something on these lines before, but a lot of mail about _Small Gods_ is split between 1) pagans who say that it really shafts the Big Beard In the Sky religions and 2) Christians who say that it is an incredibly pro-Christian book.

I suspect the latter is because Brutha displays tolerance, compassion, charity, steadfastness and faith, and these are now considered Christian virtues (i.e., virtues that modern Christians feel they should have...)"

- Annotations and References.

"If I put a reference in a book I try to pick one that a generally well-read (well-viewed, well-listened) person has a sporting chance of picking up; I call this 'white knowledge', the sort of stuff that fills up your brain without you really knowing where it came from. Enough people would've read Leiber, say, to pick up a generalised reference to Fafhrd, etc., and even more people would have some knowledge of Tolkien -- but I wouldn't rely on people having read a specific story."

"I like doing this kind of thing. There are a number of passages in the books which are 'enhanced' if you know where the echoes are coming from but which are still, I hope, funny in their own right."

"Sometimes I... well... I just write stuff which hasn't been pinched from ANYONE (shuffles feet, looks embarrassed...)."

- When will you be visiting the USA?

"The publishers keep on saying "We've got to bring you over next year". I think I've found the logical flaw in this invitation..."

*** Editorial Comments

STATISTICS

Please allow me the indulgence of a short section on my favourite subject: trivial statistics. The APF v7a.0 boasts a total of no less than 370 new or non-trivially expanded annotations. With these results, we get the following APF Growth Chart data points:

APF v1.4 had 14 entries, 160 lines and was 5 Kb large.
APF v2.0 had 78 entries, 631 lines, and was 28 Kb large.
APF v3.0 had 133 entries, 1071 lines, and was 49 Kb large.
APF v4.0 had 198 entries, 1702 lines, and was 79 Kb large.
APF v5.0 had 336 entries, 3340 lines, and was 148 Kb large.
APF v6.0 had 622 entries, 6611 lines, and was 296 Kb large.
APF v7.0 had 974 entries, 10165 lines, and was 450 Kb large.
APF v7a.0 has 1300 entries, 13680 lines, and is 615 Kb large.

Keep it up folks, keep it up...

TO ANNOTATE OR NOT TO ANNOTATE

In the early versions of the APF nearly every annotation that I received was quickly incorporated into the next version of the file. For the later versions, however, I was forced to reject literally dozens of annotations, most of which are not so very different from ones that **did** make it into the APF, and I am a bit apprehensive that people might take offence at this (particularly since I suspect they will not see the method to my madness) and will stop making an effort to supply me with annotations.

Now for one thing, quite a few annotations didn't make it into this version of the APF because I simply couldn't place them. People send me annotations that are keyed to the page numbers in their books, which more often than not are not the same editions I use. As a result, I sometimes have to spend a lot of time searching for a particular sentence or scene, and in many cases I just can't place it at all.

Another reason why annotations may be rejected is because I couldn't confirm the reference. Mind you, sometimes I'll include references that are simply so cool, or so authoritative-sounding, that even though I don't know anything about the subject myself, I feel they will enhance the file. Often however, I receive annotations that are rather vague and non-specific, and which I do not wish to include without some further confirmation. This confirmation can for instance consist of someone else mailing me the same annotation, or of me delving into encyclopedias or dictionaries and checking things myself.

And a final batch of entries are of course rejected because I thought they were either too implausible or too "obvious". Now **please** note, that as soon as I start getting the same annotation from two or more sources, then I will (in nearly all cases) accept it for the APF, regardless of what I may think about it myself.

However. As long I have received a particular annotation from one source only, I'm going to have to make what is basically a very subjective judgement call -- that is what I'm editor for. If an annotation strikes me as implausible or just not very interesting, then it's out. If I think it's valid, or if I just **like** it, then it's in. If a trivial annotation is in

the same category as many others already in the file, then it will usually be in (I am a stickler for consistency), unless I'm bored, in which case I simply want to get on with the fun stuff, and I leave it out. Sic Biscuitas Desintegrat, as they say.

The important point I want to get across here is that none of these annotations are rejected 'forever', and that everything is filed away for future reference. They may very well be used in later versions of the APF.

So what *do* I base my judgement calls on, you may rightfully ask? The answer is of course that I don't really consciously know, and that it usually just depends on my mood anyway. One important rule of thumb that I try to follow as much as possible is the following:

I do not like explaining English puns or words. As soon as another language is involved ("with milk?") -- fine. As soon as some weird old British saying is parodied ("good fences") -- cool. As soon as it is obvious that many readers are simply not getting it ("echognomics") -- no problem. But as a basic heuristic I am assuming that everybody who is able to read Terry Pratchett's books in the original language has enough command of the English language to understand puns; and enough sense to use a dictionary if she encounters an unfamiliar word. I don't want to have to explain why _Witches Abroad_ or _Equal Rites_ are funny titles.

THE APF IN OTHER FORMATS

The APF v5.0 marked the first appearance of the typeset (PostScript) version of the APF, which turned out to be a huge success, especially after the v6.0 version saw big improvements in formatting and layout. If you have access to a laser printer I definitely suggest that you give it a try.

This PostScript version is the output that results from compiling a LaTeX version of the file, which in turn is generated automatically from the plain text by using a number of software filters I've written especially for this purpose. A key property of these filters is that they are largely independent of the target language, which means that it is possible for me to generate typeset commands for a number of different formats, not just for LaTeX.

Starting with v7a.0, for instance, I now also automatically generate an HTML version of the APF, suitable for viewing on the World Wide Web, or for using as a local hypertext version of the file.

In the past, the APF has also been adapted by enterprising individuals to various other formats (AmigaGuide, Windows Help), and as my set of filters becomes more stable and powerful, I intend to generate those formats as well, and thus incorporate these secondary versions into the 'official' release.

If you know of a particular format that you'd like me to support, feel free to send me e-mail about it.

CREDITS

People who write articles to alt.fan.pratchett or who e-mail me on the subject of annotations have by now learned to live with one thing: for the

APF I will freely quote (i.e: steal) from everybody, without explicit permission or credit.

It's not only that I think long lists of contributors' names would be a bother to maintain (we're literally talking about hundreds of names here), would make the APF even larger than it already is, and would be completely uninteresting to anybody except the contributors themselves; but doing it my way also allows me to edit, change, and mutilate the texts as I see fit without worrying about folks going "but that's not what I said!".

(The only exception to this rule, by the way, is the material I quote from Terry Pratchett himself: I do not edit or change any of that, apart from choosing a selection in the first place, fixing typos or obvious mistakes, and adapting punctuation to conform to the rest of the APF. In other words: What You See Is What He Said.) Another rule that applies throughout the APF is that whenever you see the pronoun 'I' in an annotation, then it will **always** be me, the editor, speaking (unless explicitly noted otherwise, e.g. in Terry's and other people's quotes).

Apart from all the folks who contributed annotations, there are heaps of people who have gone out of their way to help me get the APF into its current form, and thanking them is certainly something that I don't mind spending a few paragraphs on. So here is the APF Hall Of Fame:

Nathan Torkington, for the original a.f.p. Frequently Asked Questions list. The idea for the APF can be traced back directly to his FAQ.

Sander Plomp, for the logs of early alt.fan.pratchett newsgroup traffic, and for coming up with the idea of making a LaTeX version of the APF.

Robert Collier, for all his help with designing and creating the HTML version of the APF.

Paulius Stepanas, for his help with the double page numbers -- the "conversion function" **will** be a part of APF v9.0, I promise.

Trent Fisher and David Jones, for helping me out with Perl and LaTeX programming, respectively.

Andy "&." Holyer, for his help with the Summary, for finding me a copy of Brewer's, and for being an utter fountain of inspiration.

My faithful group of proofreaders, who have been with me since APF v6.0 and still show no signs of getting fed up: Ingo Brandauer, Andy Holyer, Debbie Pickett, Paulius Stepanas and Nathan Torkington.

And last, but not least, Terry Pratchett, for giving us something to annotate in the first place; for giving me permission to use quotes from his articles in the APF; and for having to put up with increasing numbers of fans who, perhaps because of the APF, have begun to think he is incapable of writing anything truly original. They should know better.

THE PRATCHETT ARCHIVES

You have now finished reading the APF. You understand that this document is updated every now and again, and you are perhaps wondering: was this the most recent version of the APF? And if not, where do I find the latest

release? And how can I get my hands on these PostScript and World Wide Web versions?

The answers to all these questions can be found on the Terry Pratchett Archive Site, accessible through the L-Space Web.

The Terry Pratchett Archive Site, maintained by yours truly, is an anonymous FTP site that makes a host of Pratchett-related resources available to the Internet community. The L-Space Web, maintained by Rob Collier, is a World Wide Web site dedicated to the same thing, but a bit wider in scope, and more user-friendly.

Some of the files available from the Pratchett Archives and L-Space Web are:

- The Pratchett Quote File (PQF), a collection of almost 500 one-liners, catchphrases, general quotes, pieces of dialogue, and running gags, all culled from Terry's novels and other writings.
- The latest versions of the various alt.fan.pratchett Frequently Asked Questions lists (FAQs): there are FAQs about the newsgroup itself, about the Discworld CD-ROM game, about Discworld Merchandising, etc.
- The Discworld short story Theatre of Cruelty, which Terry once wrote for a bookshop magazine, and which is currently unavailable in print.
- Andrew Millard's comprehensive set of rules for playing the Cripple Mr Onion card game.
- Many scanned pictures and images: photos, ads, all the book covers, etc.

In order to get your hands on these goodies, try any of the following access methods, in order of descending user-friendliness:

Point your favourite Web Browser to the L-Space Web at

<http://www.lspace.org/>

Commit anonymous FTP to the Pratchett Archives at

<ftp://ftp.lspace.org/pub/pratchett/>

You can also send e-mail to the Archive server at the address:

archives@lspace.org

In the body of the message, put the text:

```
begin
send help
index
end
```

Finally, there is a 'read-only', very low-volume mailing list available for the Pratchett Archives, to which I post occasional messages about updates to the Archives, or about new APF and PQF versions, etc.

In order to subscribe to this list, just send e-mail to

pratchett-announce-request@lspace.org

with the word "subscribe" in the Subject line.

DISTRIBUTING THE APF

It's really very simple: I have by now spent **very** considerable amounts of time trying to make this document a useful resource for fans of Terry Pratchett's work, and I would be delighted to see the APF reach as many of those fans as possible, period.

So feel free to distribute the APF among your friends, to mail copies to your colleagues, or to put it up on bulletin boards, archive sites or whatever other advanced means of communication you have available to you.

All I ask is that you (a) only distribute the APF for free, and in its entirety (for obvious reasons, I should hope), and (b) **let me know** if you put it up for permanent retrieval somewhere, e.g. a bulletin board or archive site, so that I can keep you personally informed of new versions as they get released. Don't you just hate those archive sites that store outdated versions of files?

THE NEXT VERSION OF THE APF

Once, in a very distant past, it was my intention to update and post the APF regularly, at periodic intervals. For the first few months of its existence, when updating the APF simply meant spending one or two evenings at home behind the computer, this was certainly not an unworkable scheme.

But then I kept getting more and more annotation e-mail, the traffic on alt.fan.pratchett increased, I got the idea for a typeset version, then the WWW version came along, Terry continued to release new books, real life work kept intruding (a question of priorities, I know, but still, those thesis advisors can be so **unreasonable** sometimes) -- and pretty soon there was no way that I could keep up the pretence of regularity. So I didn't, and the gaps between versions started to be measured in months.

Now, as I said in the preface, there **will** be an APF v9.0, but just don't expect it until next year. Once again I hope, however, that with v7a.0 I have given you all something substantial enough to last you until then.

See you in '97.
